

## **JD Edwards World**

Sales Order Management - ECS Guide

Release A9.3.x

**E21951-03**

April 2013

E21951-03

Copyright © 2013, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

---

---

# Contents

<b>Preface</b> .....	xix
Audience .....	xix
Documentation Accessibility .....	xix
Related Documents .....	xix
Conventions .....	xix

## **1 Overview to Sales Order Management - ECS**

1.1	ECS Sales Order Management Process Flow .....	1-2
1.2	System Integration .....	1-3
1.2.1	Integration with Accounting and Distribution Systems .....	1-3
1.3	Features of ECS Sales Order Management.....	1-4
1.3.1	Basic Order Entry .....	1-4
1.3.2	Sales Order Information .....	1-5
1.3.3	Credit Orders.....	1-5
1.3.4	Additional Orders.....	1-6
1.3.5	Order Release .....	1-6
1.3.6	End of Day Processing .....	1-6
1.3.7	Pricing.....	1-7
1.3.8	Templates.....	1-7
1.3.9	Preferences.....	1-7
1.3.10	Invoice Cycles.....	1-8
1.3.11	System Setup .....	1-8
1.3.12	Advanced and Technical Operations.....	1-8
1.4	Menu Overview .....	1-9

## **Part I Daily**

## **2 Basic Order Entry**

2.1	Objectives .....	2-1
2.2	About Basic Order Entry (ECS).....	2-1
2.2.1	What Is Interactive Sales Order Entry? .....	2-1
2.2.2	What Is Batch Sales Order Entry?.....	2-1
2.2.3	Before You Begin.....	2-2

### 3 Work with Interactive Sales Orders

3.1	Working with Interactive Sales Orders (ECS) .....	3-1
3.1.1	What You Should Know About.....	3-2
3.2	Entering Header Information (ECS).....	3-3
3.2.1	Before You Begin.....	3-3
3.2.2	What You Should Know About.....	3-3
3.3	Entering Detail Information (ECS) .....	3-10
3.3.1	What You Should Know About.....	3-14
3.4	Entering Additional Order Information (ECS).....	3-15
3.5	Entering a Kit Item (ECS).....	3-21
3.5.1	Before You Begin.....	3-21
3.5.2	What You Should Know About.....	3-22
3.6	Entering an Order from a Template (ECS).....	3-22
3.6.1	Before You Begin.....	3-22
3.6.2	What You Should Know About.....	3-23
3.7	Entering Substitute and Associated Items (ECS) .....	3-23
3.7.1	Before You Begin.....	3-24
3.7.2	What You Should Know About.....	3-25
3.7.3	Processing Options .....	3-25

### 4 Work with Batch Sales Orders

4.1	Working with Batch Sales Orders (ECS).....	4-1
4.1.1	What You Should Know About.....	4-1
4.2	Entering Batch Orders (ECS) .....	4-2
4.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	4-3
4.2.2	Processing Options .....	4-4
4.3	Creating a Recurring Order (ECS).....	4-4
4.3.1	What You Should Know About.....	4-6
4.4	Processing Batch Orders (ECS) .....	4-6
4.4.1	Reviewing the Batch Order Activity Register (ECS) .....	4-7
4.4.2	Reviewing the Batch Order Creation Exception Report (ECS) .....	4-7
4.4.3	What You Should Know About.....	4-8
4.4.4	Processing Options .....	4-8

### 5 Sales Order Information

5.1	Objectives .....	5-1
5.2	About Sales Order Information (ECS) .....	5-1

### 6 Work with Item Information

6.1	Working with Item Information (ECS) .....	6-1
6.2	Copying Item Information to Sales Orders (ECS).....	6-1
6.3	Reviewing Price and Availability Information (ECS).....	6-3
6.3.1	What You Should Know About.....	6-4
6.3.2	Processing Options .....	6-4
6.4	Understanding Inventory Commitments (ECS).....	6-4
6.4.1	Item Availability Definition .....	6-5



6.4.2	Commitment Types .....	6-5
6.4.3	Backordered Items .....	6-6
6.4.4	What You Should Know About.....	6-7
6.5	Locating Quantity Information (ECS).....	6-8
6.5.1	What You Should Know About.....	6-11
6.5.2	Processing Options .....	6-12
6.6	Reviewing Supply and Demand Information (ECS) .....	6-12
6.6.1	What You Should Know About.....	6-14
6.6.2	Processing Options .....	6-14
6.7	Reposting Sales Orders (ECS) .....	6-14
6.7.1	What You Should Know About.....	6-15
6.7.2	Processing Options .....	6-15

## **7 Work with Customer and Sales Information**

7.1	Working with Customer and Sales Information (ECS) .....	7-1
7.2	Reviewing Customer Account Information (ECS) .....	7-1
7.2.1	Processing Options .....	7-2
7.3	Reviewing Sales Orders by Customer (ECS) .....	7-2
7.3.1	What You Should Know About.....	7-5
7.3.2	Processing Options .....	7-6
7.4	Generating Order Status Reports (ECS) .....	7-6
7.4.1	Generating the Open Orders by Item Report (ECS) .....	7-6
7.4.2	Generating the Open Orders by Customer Report (ECS).....	7-7
7.4.2.1	Processing Options.....	7-8
7.4.3	Data Sequence for Open Orders by Customer Report .....	7-8
7.4.4	Generating the Held Orders Report (ECS).....	7-8
7.4.5	Generating the Backorders to Fill Report (ECS).....	7-9
7.4.5.1	What You Should Know About.....	7-9
7.4.5.2	Processing Options.....	7-9
7.4.6	Data Sequence for Backorders to Fill Report .....	7-10
7.5	Reviewing Sales History Information (ECS).....	7-10
7.5.1	Before You Begin.....	7-10
7.5.2	What You Should Know About.....	7-12
7.5.3	Processing Options .....	7-12
7.6	Generating Sales History Reports (ECS) .....	7-12
7.6.1	What You Should Know About.....	7-13
7.6.2	Generating the Sales Ledger Detail Report (ECS).....	7-13
7.6.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	7-13
7.6.2.2	Processing Options.....	7-14
7.6.3	Generating the Sales Analysis Summary Report (ECS) .....	7-14
7.6.3.1	Before You Begin .....	7-14
7.6.3.2	Processing Options.....	7-14
7.7	Reviewing Billing Information (ECS).....	7-14
7.7.1	What You Should Know About.....	7-16
7.7.2	Processing Options .....	7-17

## **8 Credit Orders**

8.1	Objectives .....	8-1
8.2	About Credit Orders (ECS).....	8-1

## **9 Enter a Credit Order**

9.1	Entering a Credit Order (ECS) .....	9-1
9.1.1	Before You Begin.....	9-1
9.1.2	What You Should Know About.....	9-1
9.2	Entering a Credit Order Manually (ECS) .....	9-2
9.3	Creating a System-Generated Credit Order (ECS).....	9-4
9.3.1	Before You Begin.....	9-4
9.3.2	Setup to Enable System-Generated Credit Orders .....	9-5
9.3.3	What You Should Know About.....	9-5

## **10 Additional Orders and Order Release**

10.1	Objectives .....	10-1
10.2	About Additional Orders and Order Release (ECS).....	10-1
10.2.1	What Is Order Release? .....	10-2
10.2.2	What Is a Quote Order? .....	10-2
10.2.3	What Is a Blanket Order? .....	10-2
10.2.4	What Is a Direct Ship Order? .....	10-2
10.2.5	What Is a Transfer Order? .....	10-3
10.2.6	What Is an Interbranch Sales Order? .....	10-3
10.2.7	What Is a Sales Order with Manual Invoice? .....	10-3

## **11 Work with Order Release**

11.1	Working with Order Release (ECS).....	11-1
11.2	Releasing Orders on Hold (ECS) .....	11-1
11.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	11-3
11.2.2	Processing Options .....	11-3
11.3	Releasing Backorders (ECS).....	11-3
11.3.1	Releasing Backorders Online (ECS) .....	11-3
11.3.2	What You Should Know About.....	11-4
11.3.3	Processing Options .....	11-5
11.3.4	Releasing Backorders in a Batch (ECS) .....	11-5
11.3.5	Processing Options .....	11-5

## **12 Work with Quote Orders**

12.1	Working with Quote Orders (ECS) .....	12-1
12.1.1	What You Should Know About.....	12-1
12.2	Entering a Quote Order (ECS).....	12-2
12.3	Converting a Quote Order into a Sales Order (ECS) .....	12-3
12.3.1	What You Should Know About.....	12-3
12.4	Copying a Quote Order to Create a Sales Order (ECS).....	12-3
12.4.1	Before You Begin.....	12-3

12.4.2	What You Should Know About.....	12-4
12.5	Releasing a Quote Order (ECS).....	12-4
12.5.1	What You Should Know About.....	12-5
12.5.2	Processing Options .....	12-5
<b>13</b>	<b>Work with Blanket Orders</b>	
13.1	Working with Blanket Orders (ECS).....	13-1
13.1.1	What You Should Know About.....	13-1
13.2	Creating a Blanket Order (ECS) .....	13-1
13.3	Creating a Sales Order from a Blanket Order (ECS).....	13-2
13.3.1	Before You Begin.....	13-3
13.3.2	What You Should Know About.....	13-3
13.4	Entering a Sales Order from a Blanket Order (ECS).....	13-3
13.4.1	Before You Begin.....	13-3
13.4.2	What You Should Know About.....	13-4
13.5	Releasing a Blanket Order (ECS) .....	13-5
13.5.1	What You Should Know About.....	13-6
<b>14</b>	<b>Enter a Transfer Order</b>	
14.1	Entering a Transfer Order (ECS).....	14-1
14.1.1	Sales Order.....	14-1
14.1.2	Purchase Order .....	14-1
14.1.3	Costs.....	14-2
14.2	Setting up Transfer Orders .....	14-2
14.2.1	AAI Setup for Transfer Orders .....	14-3
14.2.2	Before You Begin.....	14-6
14.2.3	Changes to a Transfer Sales Order or Purchase Order .....	14-7
14.2.4	Receipt Routing.....	14-7
14.2.5	What You Should Know About.....	14-7
14.2.6	Processing Options .....	14-9
<b>15</b>	<b>Enter a Direct Ship Order</b>	
15.1	Entering a Direct Ship Order (ECS).....	15-1
15.1.1	What You Should Know About.....	15-2
15.1.2	Processing Options .....	15-4
<b>16</b>	<b>Enter an Interbranch Sales Order</b>	
16.1	Entering an Interbranch Sales Order (ECS).....	16-1
16.2	Applying Markup Costs for Interbranch Sales (ECS).....	16-2
16.2.1	Before You Begin.....	16-3
16.2.2	What You Should Know About.....	16-5
16.3	Printing an Interbranch Invoice .....	16-7
16.3.1	Before You Begin.....	16-7
16.3.2	What You Should Know About.....	16-8
16.4	Updating Interbranch Sales Information.....	16-8

16.4.1	Example: Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable Entries .....	16-8
16.4.2	Example: Accounts Receivable Entries.....	16-9
16.4.3	Before You Begin.....	16-10
16.4.4	What You Should Know About.....	16-10
16.4.5	What You Should Know About Processing Options.....	16-11
16.5	Consignment Sales.....	16-11
16.5.1	Set up and Process for Consignment Sales .....	16-11
<b>17</b>	<b>Enter a Sales Order with Manual Invoice</b>	
17.1	Entering a Sales Order with Manual Invoice (ECS).....	17-1
17.1.1	Before You Begin.....	17-1
17.1.2	Processing Options .....	17-3
<b>18</b>	<b>Update Status Codes</b>	
18.1	Updating Status Codes (ECS).....	18-1
18.1.1	Before You Begin.....	18-1
18.1.2	What You Should Know About.....	18-3
18.1.3	Processing Options .....	18-3
<b>19</b>	<b>End of Day Processing</b>	
19.1	Objectives .....	19-1
19.2	About End of Day Processing (ECS) .....	19-1
19.2.1	How Can You Keep Sales Information Accurate? .....	19-1
19.2.2	When Do You Run the Cycle Billing Program? .....	19-2
19.2.3	What Is Periodic Invoicing? .....	19-2
19.2.4	When Do You Run the Update Customer Sales Program? .....	19-2
19.2.5	Before You Begin.....	19-3
<b>20</b>	<b>Work with Billing Cycles</b>	
20.1	Working with Billing Cycles (ECS) .....	20-1
20.2	Creating the Invoice Cycle Preference .....	20-1
20.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	20-3
20.3	Setting Up Invoice Cycle Calculation Rules.....	20-3
20.3.1	What You Should Know About.....	20-6
20.4	Running Cycle Billing (ECS) .....	20-7
20.4.1	Before You Begin.....	20-10
20.4.2	What You Should Know About.....	20-10
20.4.3	Reviewing the Cycle Billing Transaction Report (ECS) .....	20-12
20.4.4	Reviewing the Cycle Billing Exception Report (ECS) .....	20-13
20.4.5	Processing Options .....	20-13
20.5	Printing Periodic Invoices (ECS).....	20-13
20.5.1	Before You Begin.....	20-14
20.5.2	What You Should Know About.....	20-15
20.5.3	Processing Options .....	20-15
20.6	Printing Interrupted Invoice Batches (ECS).....	20-15

## **21 Update Customer Sales**

21.1	Updating Customer Sales (ECS) .....	21-1
21.2	Running the Sales Update (ECS) .....	21-1
21.2.1	Before You Begin.....	21-2
21.2.2	What You Should Know About.....	21-2
21.2.3	Reviewing the Summarized/Detail Invoice Journal (ECS) .....	21-3
21.2.4	Reviewing the Sales Update Error Report (ECS) .....	21-4
21.2.5	Reviewing the Sales Journal (ECS) .....	21-5
21.2.6	Processing Options .....	21-5
21.3	Reviewing and Approving Journal Entries (ECS).....	21-6
21.3.1	Reviewing Journal Entries- for ECS Sales Order Management .....	21-6
21.3.2	Approving Journal Entries for ECS Sales Order Management.....	21-7
21.3.3	What You Should Know About.....	21-8
21.4	Posting Journal Entries for ECS Sales Order Management .....	21-8
21.4.1	Processing Options .....	21-9
21.5	Printing Unposted Transactions for ECS Sales Order Management .....	21-9
21.5.1	Processing Options .....	21-9

## **Part II Periodic**

## **22 Pricing**

22.1	Objectives .....	22-1
22.2	About Pricing (ECS).....	22-1

## **23 Set Up a Base Pricing Structure**

23.1	Setting Up a Base Pricing Structure (ECS) .....	23-1
23.1.1	Before You Begin.....	23-1
23.2	Setting Up Customer Price Groups (ECS) .....	23-2
23.2.1	Setting Up Simple Customer Price Groups .....	23-2
23.2.2	Setting Up Complex Customer Price Groups.....	23-4
23.2.3	What You Should Know About.....	23-6
23.3	Setting Up Item Price Groups (ECS) .....	23-6
23.3.1	Setting up Simple Item Price Groups.....	23-6
23.3.2	Setting Up Complex Item Price Groups .....	23-7
23.4	Generating Price Group Relationships .....	23-8
23.4.1	Processing Options .....	23-9
23.5	Defining the Base Price Preference Hierarchy (ECS).....	23-9
23.5.1	What You Should Know About.....	23-10

## **24 Work with Base Pricing**

24.1	Working with Base Pricing (ECS).....	24-1
24.1.1	What You Should Know About.....	24-1
24.2	Defining Base Prices (ECS) .....	24-2
24.2.1	Before You Begin.....	24-2
24.2.2	What You Should Know About.....	24-5

24.3	Updating Base Prices (ECS) .....	24-6
24.3.1	Changing Existing Prices (ECS) .....	24-6
24.3.2	Creating Future Prices (ECS) .....	24-7
24.3.3	Processing Options .....	24-7
24.4	Converting Price Levels (ECS) .....	24-8
24.4.1	Processing Options .....	24-8

## **25 Define Price Adjustments**

25.1	Defining Price Adjustments (ECS) .....	25-1
25.1.1	Before You Begin.....	25-1
25.1.2	What You Should Know About.....	25-2
25.2	Defining Inventory Pricing Rules (ECS) .....	25-2
25.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	25-6
25.3	Assigning Rules to Customers and Customer Groups (ECS) .....	25-6
25.3.1	What You Should Know About.....	25-7

## **26 Work with Repricing**

26.1	Working with Repricing (ECS) .....	26-1
26.2	Updating Prices for an Item (ECS) .....	26-1
26.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	26-2
26.2.2	Defining Repricing Groups (ECS) .....	26-2
26.2.3	Before You Begin.....	26-2
26.2.4	Processing Basket and Order Repricing (ECS).....	26-4
26.2.5	What You Should Know About.....	26-5
26.2.6	Processing Options .....	26-5
26.3	Updating Prices for a Customer (ECS) .....	26-5
26.3.1	What You Should Know About.....	26-6
26.3.2	Processing Options .....	26-6

## **Part III Setup**

### **27 Order Templates**

27.1	Objectives .....	27-1
27.2	About Order Templates (ECS) .....	27-1

### **28 Work with Order Templates**

28.1	Working with Order Templates (ECS).....	28-1
28.1.1	What You Should Know About.....	28-2
28.2	Creating a Standard Template (ECS) .....	28-2
28.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	28-4
28.3	Creating a Customer-Specific Template (ECS).....	28-5
28.3.1	Before You Begin.....	28-5
28.3.2	What You Should Know About.....	28-6
28.3.3	Processing Options .....	28-6
28.4	Updating an Existing Template (ECS) .....	28-7
28.5	Creating a System-Generated Template (ECS).....	28-7

28.5.1	Before You Begin.....	28-8
28.5.2	Processing Options .....	28-8

## 29 Preferences

29.1	Objectives .....	29-1
29.2	About Preferences (ECS).....	29-1
29.2.1	How Does the System Use Preferences? .....	29-2
29.2.2	What Are the Preference Fields? .....	29-3

## 30 Understand Preferences

30.1	Understanding Preferences (ECS) .....	30-1
30.1.1	Before You Begin.....	30-1
30.1.2	What You Should Know About.....	30-2
30.1.3	Using Profiles by Customer/Item .....	30-2
30.1.4	Adding a note about a preference .....	30-2
30.2	Entering Standard Preference Information (ECS).....	30-2
30.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	30-5
30.3	Entering Specific Preference Information (ECS).....	30-6
30.3.1	Understanding the Container Deposit/Rental Preference .....	30-8
30.3.1.1	Before You Begin .....	30-8
30.3.1.2	What You Should Know About.....	30-8
30.3.2	Understanding the Customer Currency (ECS) Preference .....	30-8
30.3.2.1	Before You Begin .....	30-9
30.3.3	Understanding the Document Distribution (ECS) Preference.....	30-9
30.3.4	Understanding the Document Set (ECS) Preference .....	30-11
30.3.4.1	What You Should Know About.....	30-12
30.3.5	Understanding the End Use Preference .....	30-12
30.3.6	Understanding the Freight (ECS) Preference .....	30-12
30.3.6.1	Before You Begin .....	30-13
30.3.6.2	What You Should Know About.....	30-14
30.3.7	Understanding the Grade and Potency Preference .....	30-14
30.3.7.1	What You Should Know About.....	30-15
30.3.8	Understanding the Inventory Commitment Preference .....	30-15
30.3.8.1	Before You Begin .....	30-17
30.3.9	Understanding the Invoice Cycle Preference .....	30-17
30.3.9.1	What You Should Know About.....	30-18
30.3.10	Understanding the Line of Business Preference .....	30-18
30.3.11	Understanding the Load/Promise Date (ECS) Preference.....	30-18
30.3.11.1	What You Should Know About.....	30-21
30.3.12	Understanding the Next Order Status (ECS) Preference.....	30-21
30.3.12.1	Before You Begin .....	30-21
30.3.13	Understanding the Payment Terms (ECS) Preference .....	30-21
30.3.14	Understanding the Price Adjustment Schedule Preference .....	30-22
30.3.15	Understanding the Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS) Preference.....	30-22
30.3.15.1	Before You Begin .....	30-23
30.3.16	Understanding the Print Messages (ECS) Preference .....	30-23

30.3.16.1	Before You Begin .....	30-24
30.3.17	Understanding the Product Allocation (ECS) Preference.....	30-24
30.3.17.1	Before You Begin .....	30-24
30.3.17.2	What You Should Know About.....	30-25
30.3.18	Understanding the Quality (ECS) Preference.....	30-25
30.3.18.1	Before You Begin .....	30-25
30.3.19	Understanding the Revenue Cost Center (ECS) Preference.....	30-25
30.3.19.1	Before You Begin .....	30-26
30.3.20	Understanding the Sales Commission (ECS) Preference.....	30-26
30.3.20.1	Before You Begin .....	30-26
30.3.21	Understanding the User Defined Price Code Preferences.....	30-26

## **31 Set Up Preferences**

31.1	Setting Up Preferences (ECS) .....	31-1
31.2	Activating Preferences (ECS) .....	31-1
31.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	31-4
31.3	Setting Up the Preference Master (ECS) .....	31-4
31.3.1	Defining the Order of Preferences (ECS).....	31-4
31.3.2	Defining the Display of Specific Preferences (ECS).....	31-6
31.3.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	31-8
31.3.3	Defining the Display of Specific Preference Fields (ECS).....	31-8
31.4	Assigning Customers and Items to Groups (ECS) .....	31-9
31.4.1	Before You Begin.....	31-10
31.4.2	Assigning a Customer to a Customer Group (ECS) .....	31-10
31.4.3	Assigning an Item to an Item Group (ECS) .....	31-11
31.5	Arranging the Preference Hierarchy (ECS).....	31-12
31.5.1	Example: Preference Hierarchy for Payment Terms .....	31-14

## **32 Invoice Setup**

32.1	Objectives .....	32-1
32.2	About Invoice Setup (ECS) .....	32-1

## **33 Define Related Addresses**

33.1	Defining Related Addresses (ECS) .....	33-1
33.1.1	Before You Begin.....	33-1
33.2	Entering Related Addresses (ECS) .....	33-1
33.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	33-4
33.3	Defining the Invoicing Address (ECS).....	33-4
33.4	Defining Default Address Types (ECS).....	33-5

## **34 Set Up Invoice Cycles**

34.1	Setting Up Invoice Cycles (ECS).....	34-1
34.1.1	What You Should Know About.....	34-1
34.2	Setting Up Invoice Cycle Calculation Rules (ECS) .....	34-2
34.2.1	Example: Scheduled Invoice Date Calculation.....	34-2
34.3	Creating Invoice Cycle Preferences (ECS).....	34-5



34.3.1	What You Should Know About.....	34-8
<b>35</b>	<b>System Setup</b>	
35.1	Objectives .....	35-1
35.2	About System Setup (ECS) .....	35-1
<b>36</b>	<b>Set Up Constants</b>	
36.1	Setting Up Constants (ECS) .....	36-1
36.1.1	Before You Begin.....	36-1
36.2	Defining Branch/Plant Constants (ECS) .....	36-2
36.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	36-8
36.3	Defining Item Availability (ECS) .....	36-8
36.3.1	What You Should Know About.....	36-10
36.4	Defining System Constants (ECS) .....	36-10
36.5	Defining Batch Control Constants (ECS).....	36-12
36.6	Defining Locations (ECS) .....	36-13
36.6.1	What You Should Know About.....	36-15
<b>37</b>	<b>Set Up Customer Billing Instructions</b>	
37.1	Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions (ECS) .....	37-1
37.1.1	Before You Begin.....	37-1
37.1.2	Entering Order Processing Information .....	37-1
37.1.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	37-4
37.1.3	Entering Shipping Information.....	37-4
37.1.4	Entering Freight Information.....	37-6
37.1.5	Entering Commission Information .....	37-7
37.1.5.1	What You Should Know About.....	37-8
37.1.6	Entering Billing Information .....	37-8
37.1.7	Sales Order Information from Customer Billing Instructions.....	37-9
37.1.7.1	What You Should Know About.....	37-10
<b>38</b>	<b>Set Up Order Line Types</b>	
38.1	Setting Up Order Line Types (ECS) .....	38-1
<b>39</b>	<b>Set Up Order Activity Rules</b>	
39.1	Setting Up Order Activity Rules (ECS).....	39-1
39.1.1	Before You Begin.....	39-2
39.1.2	What You Should Know About.....	39-4
<b>40</b>	<b>Set Up Order Hold Information</b>	
40.1	Setting Up Order Hold Information (ECS) .....	40-1
40.1.1	Before You Begin.....	40-1
40.2	Defining Order Hold Codes (ECS) .....	40-2
40.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	40-3

40.3	Setting Up Minimum and Maximum Order Amounts (ECS) .....	40-4
40.4	Setting Up Order Hold Codes for Credit Checking (ECS).....	40-5
40.4.1	Credit Limit .....	40-6
40.4.2	Aging .....	40-6
40.5	Setting Up Order Hold Codes for Margin Checking (ECS).....	40-8
40.5.1	What You Should Know About.....	40-9

## **41 Set Up Commission Information**

41.1	Setting Up Commission Information (ECS).....	41-1
41.1.1	Before You Begin.....	41-2
41.1.2	What You Should Know About.....	41-2
41.2	Setting Up a Sales Group (ECS) .....	41-2
41.2.1	Before You Begin.....	41-3
41.2.2	What You Should Know .....	41-5
41.3	Assigning Commission Information (ECS).....	41-5
41.3.1	What You Should Know About.....	41-7
41.4	Setting Up Additional Commission Information (ECS).....	41-7
41.4.1	Before You Begin.....	41-8
41.4.2	What You Should Know About.....	41-11
41.5	Setting Up Variable Commission Percentages within a Group (ECS) .....	41-11
41.5.1	Before You Begin.....	41-11
41.5.2	What You Should Know About.....	41-12
41.6	Reviewing Commission Information.....	41-12
41.6.1	What You Should Know About.....	41-15

## **42 Set Up Branch Sales Markups**

42.1	Setting Up Branch Sales Markups (ECS) .....	42-1
42.1.1	Before You Begin.....	42-1
42.1.2	What You Should Know About.....	42-5
42.1.3	Processing Options .....	42-5

## **43 Set Up Automatic Accounting Instructions**

43.1	Setting Up Automatic Accounting Instructions (ECS) .....	43-1
43.1.1	AAIs Used in the ECS Sales Order Management System.....	43-1
43.1.2	Before You Begin.....	43-3
43.1.3	What You Should Know About.....	43-5

## **Part IV Advanced & Technical**

### **44 Overview to Advanced and Technical Operations**

44.1	Objectives .....	44-1
44.2	About Advanced and Technical Operations (ECS).....	44-1

### **45 Purge Data**

45.1	Purging Data for ECS Sales Order Management .....	45-1
------	---	------

45.1.1	What You Should Know About.....	45-2
45.1.2	Before You Begin.....	45-3
45.2	Running General Purges for ECS Sales Order Management .....	45-3
45.2.1	Creating a New DREAM Writer Version for a Purge .....	45-4
45.2.2	What You Should Know About.....	45-7
45.2.3	Processing Options .....	45-7
45.3	Running Special Purges (ECS) .....	45-7
45.3.1	Running the Sales Order Header Purge (ECS).....	45-8
45.3.1.1	What You Should Know About.....	45-8
45.3.1.2	Processing Options.....	45-8
45.3.2	Running the Sales Order Text Line Purge (ECS).....	45-8
45.3.3	Running the Extended Text Purge (ECS) .....	45-8
45.3.3.1	What You Should Know About.....	45-9
45.3.3.2	Processing Options.....	45-9
45.3.4	Running the Batch Order Files Purge (ECS) .....	45-9
45.3.4.1	Processing Options.....	45-9
45.3.5	Running Move Sales Order Detail to History (ECS) .....	45-9
45.3.5.1	What You Should Know About.....	45-9
45.3.5.2	Processing Options.....	45-9

## **46 Work with the Subsystem**

46.1	Working with the Subsystem (ECS) .....	46-1
46.1.1	Before You Begin.....	46-1
46.2	Defining the Subsystem (ECS) .....	46-2
46.2.1	What You Should Know About.....	46-4
46.3	Starting Jobs in the Subsystem (ECS).....	46-4
46.3.1	What You Should Know About.....	46-4
46.4	Stopping Jobs in the Subsystem (ECS).....	46-5
46.4.1	What You Should Know About.....	46-5
46.4.2	Processing Options .....	46-5
46.5	Running the Subsystem in Sleeper .....	46-5

## **Part V Processing Options**

### **47 Daily Processing Options**

47.1	Sales Order Entry (P4211) .....	47-2
47.2	Recurring Batch Order Entry (P4001Z).....	47-8
47.3	Batch Edit - Creation (P40211Z) .....	47-8
47.4	Check Price & Availability (P40721) .....	47-11
47.5	Item Availability (P41202) .....	47-11
47.6	Supply & Demand (P4021) .....	47-12
47.7	Repost Sales Orders & Release Future Commits (P42995) .....	47-15
47.8	Credit Check Processing (P42050) .....	47-15
47.9	Customer Service Inquiry (P42045).....	47-16
47.10	Open Sales Orders by Customer (P42620) .....	47-17
47.11	Print Backorders to Fill (P42590).....	47-17

47.12	Sales Ledger & Credit Orders from History (P42025) .....	47-18
47.13	Sales Ledger Detail (P42600) .....	47-19
47.14	Sales Analysis Summary (P42611) .....	47-19
47.15	Online Invoice (P42230) .....	47-19
47.16	Release Held Orders (P42070) .....	47-21
47.17	Release Backorders (P42117) .....	47-21
47.18	Release Backorders - Batch (P42118) .....	47-23
47.19	Order Release (P420111) .....	47-25
47.20	Direct Ship Order Entry (P4243) .....	47-26
47.21	Transfer Order Entry (P4242) .....	47-28
47.22	Bulk Load Confirmation - Manual Invoice (P49510) .....	47-31
47.23	Packaged Load Confirmation (P49530) .....	47-34
47.24	Sales Order Speed Release (P76A42040) .....	47-37
47.25	Cycle Billing - Final (P49700) .....	47-38
47.26	Periodic Invoice (P49870) .....	47-38
47.27	Daily/Periodic Invoice (P49880) .....	47-39
47.28	Sales Update (P42800) .....	47-41
47.29	Print Sales Journal (P42810) .....	47-45
47.30	General Ledger Post (P09800) .....	47-46
47.31	General Journal By Batch (P09301) .....	47-48

## **48 Periodic Processing Options**

48.1	Customer Price Group Generation (P40932) .....	48-1
48.2	Item Price Group Generation (P40931) .....	48-1
48.3	Base Price Report (P41830) .....	48-2
48.4	Sales Price Level Conversion - Proof (P41816) .....	48-3
48.5	Order Repricing for Standard Pricing (P421301) .....	48-3
48.6	Update Sales Cost, Price, or Exchange Rate (P42950) .....	48-4

## **49 Setup Processing Options**

49.1	Order/Supplier Template Revisions (P4015) .....	49-1
49.2	Customer Template Rebuild (P42815) .....	49-1
49.3	Branch Relationship Revisions (P3403) .....	49-2

## **50 Advanced & Technical Processing Options**

50.1	Batch File Purge (P00PURGE) .....	50-1
50.2	Purge Sales Order Header File (F4201) (P4201P) .....	50-1
50.3	Extended Text Line Deletion - F4314 (P4314P) .....	50-2
50.4	Recurring Batch Order Entry (P4001Z) .....	50-2
50.5	Purge Details to History (P42996) .....	50-2
50.6	Start/Stop Subsystem (P40420) .....	50-3

## **A Understand Preference Fields (ECS)**

A.1	Understanding Preference Fields (ECS) .....	A-1
-----	---	-----

**B Functional Servers**

B.1	About Functional Servers .....	B-1
B.1.1	Example: Voucher Processing Functional Server .....	B-2

**Index**



---

---

# Preface

Welcome to the JD Edwards World Sales Order Management - ECS Guide.

## Audience

This document is intended for implementers and end users of JD Edwards World Sales Order Management - ECS system.

## Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc>.

### Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info> or visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs> if you are hearing impaired.

## Related Documents

You can access related documents from the JD Edwards World Release Documentation Overview pages on My Oracle Support. Access the main documentation overview page by searching for the document ID, which is 1362397.1, or by using this link:

<https://support.oracle.com/CSP/main/article?cmd=show&type=NOT&id=1362397.1>

## Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

Convention	Meaning
<b>boldface</b>	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.
<i>italic</i>	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
monospace	Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.





---

## Overview to Sales Order Management - ECS

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 1.1, "ECS Sales Order Management Process Flow,"](#)
- [Section 1.2, "System Integration,"](#)
- [Section 1.3, "Features of ECS Sales Order Management,"](#)
- [Section 1.4, "Menu Overview."](#)

Energy and Chemical Solutions (ECS) sales order management involves much more than taking an order and shipping it. Today's requirements include sophisticated order management, inventory allocation, kitting, and promotional pricing. The ECS Sales Order Management system allows you to address these issues. It also provides added solutions to meet the specific needs of energy and chemical industries.

You can enhance customer service by using the ECS Sales Order Management system to create order templates, standing or blanket orders, and quote orders. The ECS Sales Order Management system provides additional customer service support through online displays that provide:

- Pertinent order, inventory, and financial information
- Net profitability of a product line when promotions, discounts, and allowances are applied

Pricing is another complicated issue. You must manage pricing efficiently to handle special promotions, allowances, and effective dates. The ECS Sales Order Management system allows you to set up a flexible base pricing structure. You can then define price adjustments and use the repricing feature to revise and update prices when necessary.

The ECS Sales Order Management system provides many features:

- Extensive user defined information
- Flexible pricing and discounting, which supports promotions, contracts, and allowances
- Recurring order and order template processing
- Customer and item preference profiles
- Online inventory availability and available-to-promise information
- Multiple templates for a single customer
- Comprehensive order and line status tracking

## 1.1 ECS Sales Order Management Process Flow

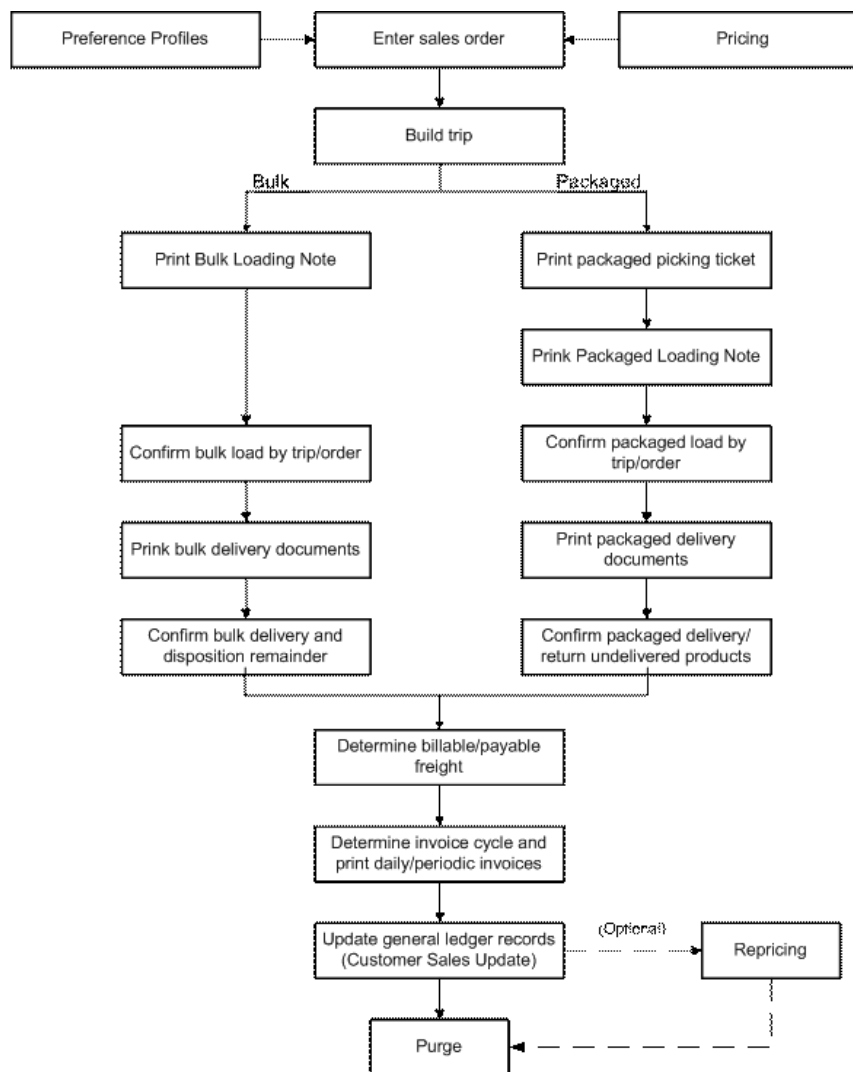
The ECS Sales Order Management system is closely integrated with the Load and Delivery Management system. After you enter a sales order, you process it through the Load and Delivery Management system to:

- Build trips
- Load and deliver bulk and packaged items
- Calculate freight charges

You then use the ECS Sales Order Management system to calculate scheduled invoice dates and print invoices. You also use this system to update all tables associated with the sales order and customer and to update the general ledger.

The following graphic illustrates the process flow of the ECS Sales Order Management and Load and Delivery Management systems.

**Figure 1–1 Process Flow of the ECS Sales Order and Load Delivery Management Systems**



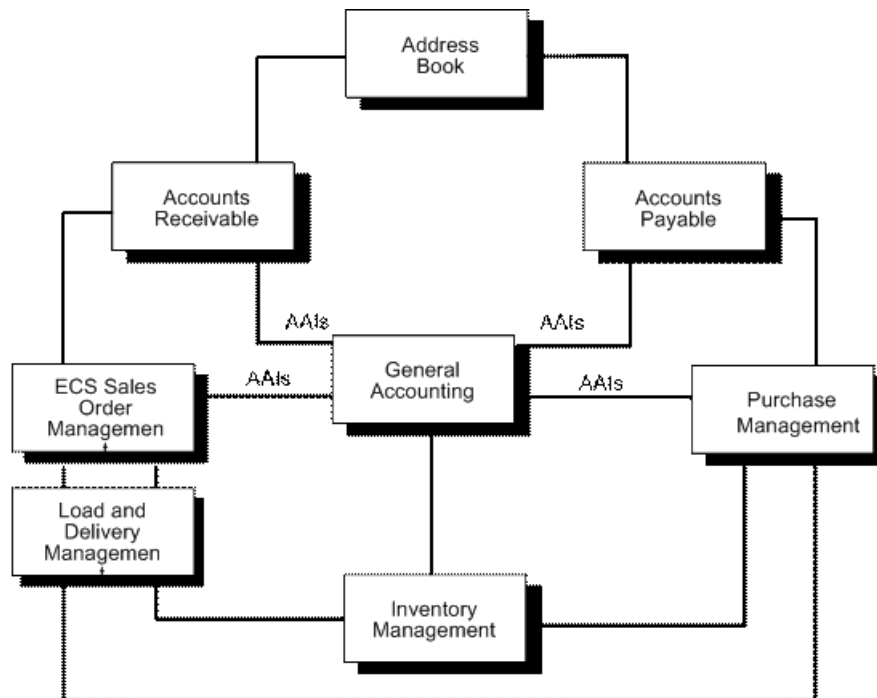
## 1.2 System Integration

The ECS Sales Order Management system works hand-in-hand with other JD Edwards World distribution/logistics and manufacturing systems. Supply and demand components must balance to ensure that this takes place. The key is integration and the proactive use of distribution and logistics information.

### 1.2.1 Integration with Accounting and Distribution Systems

The following graphic illustrates how the ECS Sales Order Management system integrates with general accounting and other distribution systems.

**Figure 1–2 Integration of the ECS Sales Order Management System**



#### **ECS Sales Order Management**

The system retrieves item prices and costs from the Inventory Management system for sales orders.

The system updates the general ledger and creates accounts receivable entries for invoices and records inventory, cost of goods sold, revenue, and tax transactions for use in cash receipts processing.

#### **Load and Delivery Management**

At load and delivery confirmation, the system retrieves cost information and relieves inventory from the Inventory Management system. This retrieval information is based on any sales orders that are load and delivery confirmed as reported by the ECS Sales Order Management system.

In addition, the system updates the general ledger based on the following scenarios:

Action	Description
Load confirm only with an invoice date in the future	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ System creates in-transit entries</li><li>■ Cycle Billing creates deferred COGS, revenue, and accounts receivable entries</li></ul>
Load confirm only without a future invoice date	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ System creates in-transit entries</li></ul>
Load and delivery confirm with an invoice date in the future	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Cycle Billing creates inventory, deferred COGS, and Accounts Receivable entries</li></ul>

### **General Accounting**

The hub of the integration circle is the JD Edwards World General Accounting system. The system enables you to track sales order accounting.

### **Address Book**

The ECS Sales Order Management system works with the Address Book system to retrieve up-to-date customer billing and warehouse address information.

### **Inventory Management**

The Inventory Management system stores item information for the ECS Sales Order Management, Purchase Management, and manufacturing systems. It also stores sales and purchasing costs and quantities available by location and tracks holds for locations from which items should not be sold. Any change in inventory valuation, count variances, or movement updates the general ledger.

### **Purchase Management**

The Purchase Management system supports direct ship order and transfer order processing. You can use the system to release receipts to backordered items.

### **Advanced Pricing**

Optionally, you can use the Advanced Pricing system in conjunction with the ECS Sales Order Management system. This system integrates with many of the price-related programs in the ECS Sales Order Management system and provides additional pricing, preference, reporting, and setup functionality.

### **Advanced Warehouse Management**

Optionally, you can use the Advanced Warehouse Management system in conjunction with the ECS Sales Order Management system. This system integrates with many of the programs related to items and provides additional reporting, picking, and setup functionality.

## **1.3 Features of ECS Sales Order Management**

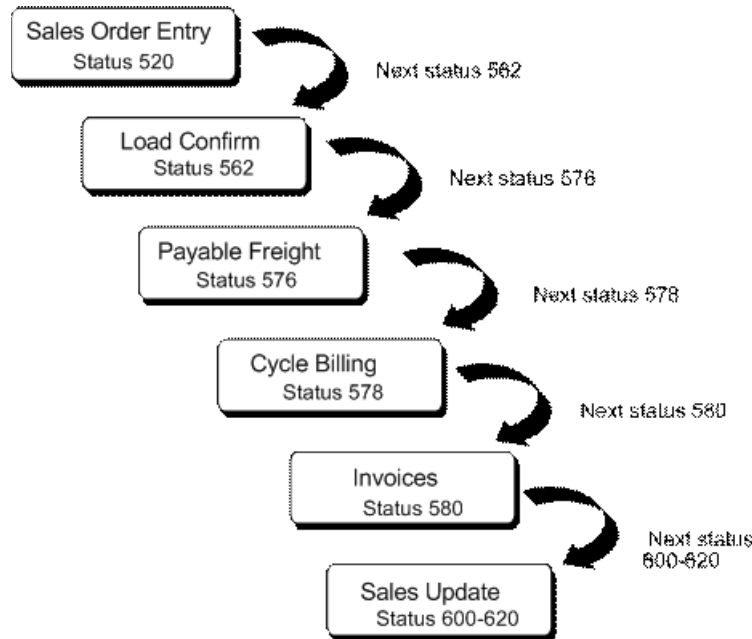
### **1.3.1 Basic Order Entry**

Basic order entry allows you to record information about your customers and the items they have ordered. When you enter a sales order, the system automatically enters pertinent information currently stored in the customer, item, preference, and pricing records. Sales order processing begins as soon as you complete order entry.

### Processing Steps and Status Codes

Each step of the order process has a status code that you define in the order activity rules. The system uses each status code to track an order through the sales order process. For example, an order that is load confirmed has a status code of 562. The following example illustrates the relationship between processing steps and status codes.

**Figure 1–3 Relationship Between Processing Steps and Status Codes**



The process that you define for your sales orders may include additional steps, depending on the types of customers that you have.

### 1.3.2 Sales Order Information

You can review and analyze sales order information and generate reports to track the status of sales orders and invoices. For example, you can review the present status of any order, such as an order that is on hold. This also allows you to accurately plan for future needs.

When entering or reviewing a sales order, you can quickly access item information, such as item number, availability, quantity cost-breaks, and so on. This is helpful when you are speaking directly to the customer.

You can also quickly access information about customer accounts and open and closed sales orders. For example, you can use the Check Credit program to compare a customer's total accounts receivable and open orders with their credit limit. You can also review sales history information and billing information that doesn't print on the invoice that the customer receives.

### 1.3.3 Credit Orders

You use credit orders to accept returned items from a customer and to issue credit to the customer. When you enter credit information manually, the system applies the current unit price for the credited item. When you have the system create a credit

order, the system retrieves the credit information based on the unit price that the customer actually paid instead of today's current or average cost.

### 1.3.4 Additional Orders

The Sales Order Management system provides the following additional orders to accommodate specific ordering situations:

- Quote orders
- Blanket orders
- Direct ship orders
- Transfer orders
- Interbranch sales orders
- Sales orders with manual invoice

You enter these additional orders in the same way that you enter basic sales orders. However, the system processes each type of additional order differently. Some additional orders, such as blanket and quote orders, are prerequisites to actual sales orders. That is, you must enter these orders before you can enter sales orders from them.

### 1.3.5 Order Release

You might have orders on hold for several reasons. For example, you might place orders on hold that do not meet margin requirements. When an order is on hold, it must be released back into the processing cycle for any additional processing to take place.

The system can place an order or order line on hold if you do not have the quantity to fill the order or order line. This type of hold is a backorder. You release backorders when inventory becomes available.

### 1.3.6 End of Day Processing

You perform end of day processing to complete the order processing cycle. Performing end of day processing consists of running batch programs to:

- Calculate individual billing cycles for customers
- Print periodic invoices that are due
- Update all tables and records related to customer sales
- Post journal entries resulting from the order processing cycle

You should run the Update Customer Sales program each day to keep the most accurate sales information. You update your sales information on a daily basis to do the following:

- Keep accounts receivable (A/R) records current
- Provide daily activity reports
- Keep general ledger (G/L) accounts current for inventory, cost of goods sold (COGS), sales, and freight
- Keep inventory on-hand balances accurate
- Keep interim sales and commission reports accurate

### 1.3.7 Pricing

For each item that you sell, you must define the price at which you want to sell it. You use ECS Sales Order Management pricing to define a base pricing structure. The system uses the base pricing structure that you define to retrieve prices when you enter items on an order and to calculate price adjustments and updates. You can define base prices for any combination of items, item groups, customers, or customer groups.

After you define base prices, you can set up the following additional types of price calculations:

- Price adjustments for groups of items
- Contract pricing, which applies special pricing for an item to a single customer or customer group
- Trade discount pricing, which is a discount percentage on all items for a specific customer
- Cash discount pricing, which you can apply to individual sales order detail lines

You can use repricing to set up additional discounts and markups or to recalculate sales orders.

### 1.3.8 Templates

With some advance preparation and setup, you can significantly speed up the order entry process. One way to do this is to create and assign order templates for your customers. Templates speed the order entry process by reducing repetition.

An order template displays frequently ordered items and quantities. You can create the following two types of templates:

- **Standard templates**

A standard template applies to all customers. You can assign a standard template to display every time you enter an order.

- **Customer-specific templates**

Customer-specific templates include a particular customer's most frequently ordered items. You can assign a customer-specific template to display only when you enter orders for that customer.

### 1.3.9 Preferences

You can use preferences to customize the way sales orders are processed. For ECS sales order processing, JD Edwards World has provided 22 preferences. You can customize these preferences to meet your specific business requirements.

Typically, you create preferences when you have consistent business requirements that differ from the default values for the ECS Sales Order Management system. For example, you can create preferences to suit the needs of:

- Your customer's specific requirements
- Your company's policies
- Regulatory agencies' rules

Setting up and using each preference requires careful thought. Your business purpose for using preferences should be considered against the efficient use of the system's processing time. For example, you should not use preferences for occasional variances.

In these instances, you can more efficiently use the system resources by manually entering exception information in the applicable fields of the customer or item form.

### 1.3.10 Invoice Cycles

You set up invoice cycles to apply different cycle calculation rules and schedules to different customer and item combinations. For example, one customer might prefer an invoice at the end of the month for all shipments made during that month, and another customer might want a weekly invoice for specific items. To set up invoice cycles, you set up invoice cycle calculation rules and create Invoice Cycle preferences.

After you confirm orders for delivery, you process them through the Cycle Billing program. The Cycle Billing program calculates scheduled invoice dates based on the invoice cycle preference, invoice cycle calculation rules, and scheduled invoice date ranges.

### 1.3.11 System Setup

You can customize the ECS Sales Order Management system to fit your company's needs and to ensure that you meet customer demand.

Before you use the ECS Sales Order Management system to process sales orders, you must perform the following system setup tasks:

- Set up constants that provide the system with default information for day-to-day transactions within a branch/plant
- Set up customer billing instructions, which are rules the system uses in processing a customer's order
- Set up order line types, which are codes that determine how the system processes a detail line in an order
- Set up order activity rules to establish the sequence of allowable steps that an order takes from beginning to end
- Define the codes that the system uses to place sales orders on hold
- Define branch sales markups, which are transfer costs that apply to interbranch sales
- Set up commission information for a specific salesperson or a group of salespeople
- Set up automatic accounting instructions (AAIs), which provide the ECS Sales Order Management system with accounting information and general ledger relationships for interacting with the General Accounting system

### 1.3.12 Advanced and Technical Operations

Advanced and technical operations for the ECS Sales Order Management system include:

- Purging data
- Working with subsystems

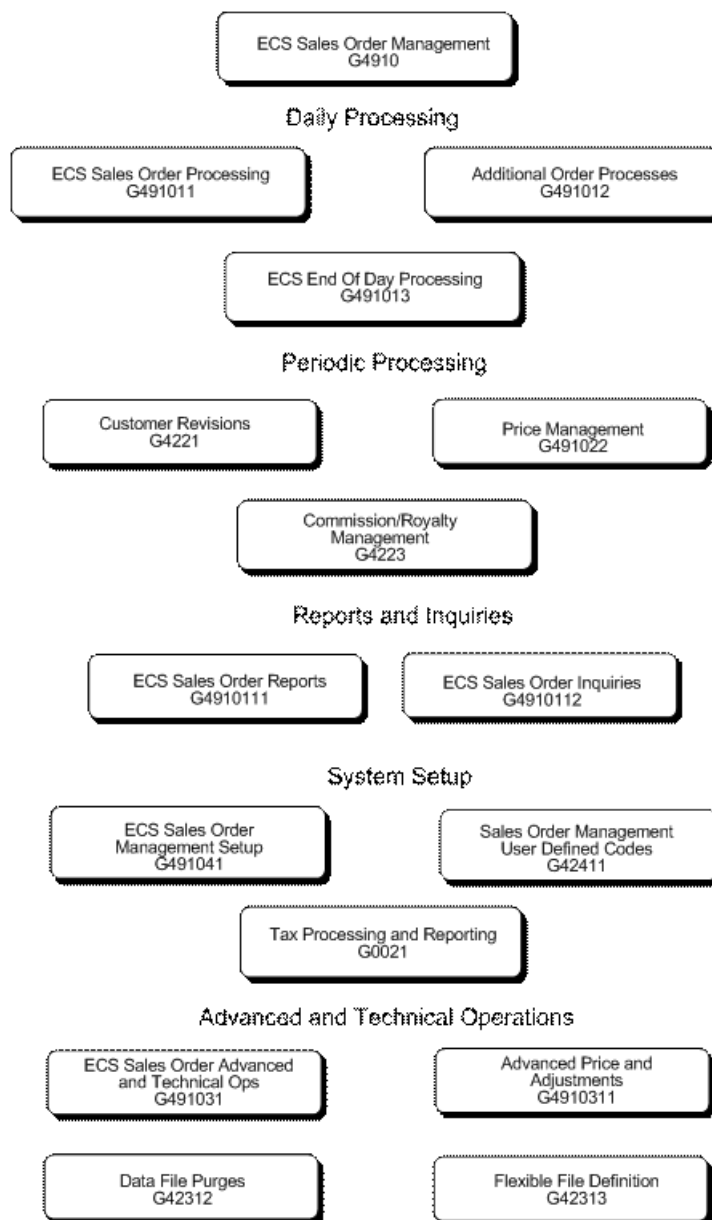
You can use these procedures to keep your system and operations running smoothly and efficiently.



## 1.4 Menu Overview

The following diagram identifies the commonly used menus for the JD Edwards World ECS Sales Order Management system.

**Figure 1–4 Menus of the JD Edwards World ECS Sales Order Management System**





# Part I

---

## Daily

This part contains these chapters:

- Chapter 2, "Basic Order Entry,"
- Chapter 3, "Work with Interactive Sales Orders,"
- Chapter 4, "Work with Batch Sales Orders,"
- Chapter 5, "Sales Order Information,"
- Chapter 6, "Work with Item Information,"
- Chapter 7, "Work with Customer and Sales Information,"
- Chapter 8, "Credit Orders,"
- Chapter 9, "Enter a Credit Order,"
- Chapter 10, "Additional Orders and Order Release,"
- Chapter 11, "Work with Order Release,"
- Chapter 12, "Work with Quote Orders,"
- Chapter 13, "Work with Blanket Orders,"
- Chapter 14, "Enter a Transfer Order,"
- Chapter 15, "Enter a Direct Ship Order,"
- Chapter 16, "Enter an Interbranch Sales Order,"
- Chapter 17, "Enter a Sales Order with Manual Invoice,"
- Chapter 18, "Update Status Codes,"
- Chapter 19, "End of Day Processing,"
- Chapter 20, "Work with Billing Cycles,"
- Chapter 21, "Update Customer Sales."



---

## Basic Order Entry

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 2.1, "Objectives,"](#)
- [Section 2.2, "About Basic Order Entry \(ECS\)."](#)

### 2.1 Objectives

- To enter sales orders interactively
- To enter sales orders through batch processing

### 2.2 About Basic Order Entry (ECS)

Basic order entry allows you to record information about your customers and the items they have ordered. When you enter a sales order, the system automatically enters pertinent information currently stored in the customer, item, preference, and pricing records. You can enter sales orders interactively or through batch processing.

Basic order entry consists of:

- Working with interactive sales orders
- Working with batch sales orders

#### 2.2.1 What Is Interactive Sales Order Entry?

You enter sales orders interactively when you need to process individual orders immediately. After you complete the required fields for the sales order, the system retrieves default values from the Address Book (F0101), Customer Master (F0301), and Item Master (F4101) tables. Sales order processing begins as soon as you complete the order entry.

#### 2.2.2 What Is Batch Sales Order Entry?

You use batch sales order entry when you need to enter a large quantity of sales orders quickly. You also enter batch sales orders when you want to process a group of sales orders at the same time, such as at the end of the day. A batch is a group of similar records or transactions that the system treats as a single unit during processing.

You can also create recurring sales orders in batch mode. A recurring order is one that you enter regularly. For example, if a customer submits the same order on a periodic basis, you can create a recurring order to automate the process.

Batch order entry is faster than interactive order entry. When you enter orders in batch mode, the system does not immediately update and edit the fields, as it does when you enter orders interactively. You enter only the required information for an order and submit the orders to batch processing. The system then edits and processes the orders as a group.

## 2.2.3 Before You Begin

- Verify that the following information has been set up prior to entering sales orders:
  - Address information for each customer in the Address Book table (F0101). See *Entering Basic Address Information (P01051)* in the *JD Edwards World Address Book and Electronic Mail Guide*.
  - Master information for each customer in the Customer Master table (F0301). See *Entering Customers* in the *JD Edwards World Accounts Receivable Guide*.
  - Billing instructions for each customer in the Customer Master table (F0301). See [Section 37.1, "Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions \(ECS\)."](#)
  - Item information in the Item Master (F4101) and Bulk Item Master (F41011) tables. See *Entering Item Master Information* in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*.
  - Branch/plant constants in the Branch/Plant Constants table (F41001). See [Section 36.2, "Defining Branch/Plant Constants \(ECS\)."](#)
  - Item and branch/plant information in the Item Branch table (F4102) and the Item Location table (F41021) for each item that you stock. See *Entering Branch/Plant Information* in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*.
  - Preferences for customer and item combinations. See [Chapter 30, "Understand Preferences"](#) and [Chapter 31, "Set Up Preferences."](#)
  - Commission codes and commission rate information. See [Section 41.1, "Setting Up Commission Information \(ECS\)."](#)
  - Multi-currency, if you are processing orders using different currencies. See *Set Up Multi-Currency* in the *JD Edwards World Multi-Currency Guide*.
  - Default location and printers for your terminal or user profile in the Default Location and Printers table (F40095). See *Setting Up Default Location Information* in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*.

---

## Work with Interactive Sales Orders

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 3.1, "Working with Interactive Sales Orders \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 3.2, "Entering Header Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 3.3, "Entering Detail Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 3.4, "Entering Additional Order Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 3.5, "Entering a Kit Item \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 3.6, "Entering an Order from a Template \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 3.7, "Entering Substitute and Associated Items \(ECS\)."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Processing

From ECS Sales Order Processing (G491011), choose Enter Orders (Page Mode)

## 3.1 Working with Interactive Sales Orders (ECS)

You enter sales orders to record information about your customers and the items they have ordered. When you enter a sales order interactively, the system automatically enters pertinent information currently stored in the customer, item, preference, and pricing records. The system then processes the order as soon as you complete the order entry.

You can enter a sales order in one of two ways:

- Enter customer, order processing, invoice, accounts receivable, and shipping information on the order header. Header information relates to an entire order. The system maintains this information in the Sales Order Header table (F4201).
- Enter the detailed item, price, shipping, accounts receivable, and commission information for each sales order line. Detail information relates to individual lines in a sales order. The system maintains this information in the Sales Order Detail table (F4211).

When you complete the required fields, the system enters default information from the Sales Order Header (F4201), Item Master (F4101), Item Location (F41021), Address Book (F0101), and Customer Master (F0301) tables.

You can also enter kit items on a sales order. You use kit items to group related items so that you can enter less information on the order. The end product, or "parent" item,

is not stocked as an inventory item. You enter kit items on a sales order in the same way you enter individual items.

You can simplify sales order entry by using order templates. A template is a system-generated "best guess" as to what your customer will order. A template includes your customer's most frequently ordered items.

As you are entering detail information, you can substitute items for backordered items. You can also identify cross-reference information for "associated" items. Associated items are commonly sold in conjunction with other items.

### 3.1.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Sold To and Ship To addresses</b>	<p>You can define a default address for a customer if the address to which you send the invoice (Sold To) is different from the address to which you send the shipment (Ship To). You can instruct the system to automatically fill in the Ship To address whenever you enter the Sold To address.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 33.4, "Defining Default Address Types (ECS)."</a></p>
<b>Canceling and deleting sales orders</b>	<p>If you have made an error or need to remove an order, you can:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Cancel, but not delete, an entire order. All of the order lines on the Sales Order Entry form display "Closed" and have a next status of 999 (complete and ready to purge).</li> <li>■ Cancel individual order lines. The lines that you cancel display "Closed" and have a next status of 999.</li> </ul> <p>You must use a purge program to remove an order from the system. See <a href="#">Chapter 45, "Purge Data."</a></p>
<b>Locating an item</b>	<p>When entering a sales order, you can locate key item information, such as the item number and available quantities, in one of the following ways, depending on how you set the prompting control processing options for the Sales Order Entry program:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ You can search the Item Master table, choose a displayed item, and return its quantity to the sales order detail line.</li> <li>■ You can search the Item Location table, enter the quantity you want to order for any displayed item, and return it to the sales order detail line.</li> <li>■ You can perform a query search on all of the related tables, choose a displayed item, and return its quantity to the sales order detail line. This search method is useful if you know at least part of the description of an item.</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">Section 6.2, "Copying Item Information to Sales Orders (ECS)."</a></p>
<b>Duplicating an order</b>	<p>You can streamline sales order entry by duplicating sales orders. You set the processing options for order duplication default values to control order duplication. You can:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Copy both the order header information and the detail order information</li> <li>■ Change the customer number in the Ship To or Sold To fields and duplicate only the detail order information</li> <li>■ Choose to omit specific lines from the duplicated order</li> </ul>



## 3.2 Entering Header Information (ECS)

You enter header information that applies to the entire sales order, not just specific sales order lines. To enter header information, complete the following tasks:

- Enter order information
- Enter invoice information
- Enter accounts receivable information
- Enter shipping information
- Enter commission information

When you finish entering header information, you can enter detail information for each item on the sales order.

If you choose to enter only detail information, you must set the appropriate prompting control processing option to not display the order header. You can set the processing options to use default values for some header information.

### 3.2.1 Before You Begin

- Set the prompting control processing option to display the Enter Orders (Page Mode) form before the Sales Order Entry form

### 3.2.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Changing header default information</b>	On the Header File Defaults window, you can specify the fields that you want to carry over from the Enter Orders (Page Mode) form to the Sales Order Entry form. You are limited to those fields that are common to both forms. You can also have any information that you change in the header automatically replace detail information.
<b>Adding a message to a sales order</b>	<p>You access the Associated Text Window to attach a message to an entire sales order. You can add a message in any of the following ways:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create your own text</li> <li>■ Copy text from existing messages</li> <li>■ Use a predefined text message</li> </ul> <p>After you add the text message, "See Memo" appears in the sales order header. You can specify on which documents this message prints, such as pick slips and invoices.</p>

**Figure 3–1 Enter Orders (Page Mode) screen**

**To enter order information**

On Enter Orders (Page Mode)

1. Complete the following fields:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Sold To
  - Ship To
  - Mark-For (optional)
2. Review the following fields and make any necessary changes:
  - Order Date
  - Cancel Date
  - Order Number
  - Order Type
  - Hold Code
  - Requested
  - Customer PO
  - Price Pickslip
  - Ordered By
  - Taken By

Field	Explanation
Branch/Plant	<p>Identifies a separate entity within a business for which you want to track costs. For example, a business unit might be a warehouse location, job, project, work center, or branch/plant. The Business Unit field is alphanumeric.</p> <p>You can assign a business unit to a voucher, invoice, fixed asset, and so on, for purposes of responsibility reporting. For example, the system provides reports of open A/P and A/R by business units, to track equipment by responsible department.</p> <p>Business unit security can prevent you from locating business units for which you have no authority.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The system uses this value for Journal Entries if a value is not entered in the AAI table.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>This is the branch/plant that originates the order.</p>
Sold To	A number that identifies an entry in the Address Book system. Use this number to identify employees, applicants, participants, customers, suppliers, tenants, special mailing addresses, and so on.
Ship To	The address number of the location to which you want to ship this order. The address book provides default values for customer address, including street, city, state, zip code, and country.
Date - Order/Transaction	The date that an order was entered into the system. This date determines which effective level is used for inventory pricing.
Cancel Date	The date that the order should be canceled if the goods have not been sent to the customer or the goods have not been received from the supplier. This is a memo-only field and does not cause the system to perform any type of automatic processing.
Order Type	<p>A user defined code (system 00/type DT) that identifies the type of document. This code also indicates the origin of the transaction. JD Edwards World has reserved document type codes for vouchers, invoices, receipts, and time sheets, which create automatic offset entries during the post program. (These entries are not self-balancing when you originally enter them.)</p> <p>The following document types are defined by JD Edwards World and should not be changed:</p> <p>P – Accounts Payable Documents</p> <p>R – Accounts Receivable Documents</p> <p>T – Payroll Documents</p> <p>I – Inventory Documents</p> <p>O – Order Processing Documents</p> <p>J – General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing Documents</p>
Hold Code	<p>User defined code (table 42/HC) that identifies why the order is on hold.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>A value in this field prevents the system from processing an order.</p>
Date - Requested	The date that an item is to arrive or that an action is to be complete.

Field	Explanation
Customer P.O.	An alphanumeric value used as a cross-reference or secondary reference number. Typically, this is the customer number, supplier number, or job number.
Price Pickslip	Code that indicates whether price information will appear on the customer's pick list, purchase order, or sales order. Valid codes are:  Y – Yes, which is the default  N – No.
Ordered By	SALES ORDER SYSTEM: An optional entry field intended for the name of the customer placing the order.  PURCHASING SYSTEM: The name of the person entering the order. If you do not enter anything in this field, the system enters the IBM User ID of the person who is signed on to the system.
Taken By	SALES ORDER ECS SYSTEM: The system uses the signon ID to identify the individual taking the customer's order.

### To enter invoice information

On Enter Orders (Page Mode)

Complete the following fields:

- Invoice Copies
- Print Message

Field	Explanation
Invoice Copies	Number of invoice copies that the customer requires. The system will print the number of invoices specified in this field. The system always prints at least one invoice.
Print Message	A code that you assign to each print message. Examples of text messages are engineering specifications, hours of operation during holiday periods, and special delivery instructions.

### To enter accounts receivable information

On Enter Orders (Page Mode)

Complete the following fields:

- Trade Discount
- Payment Terms
- Payment Instrument
- Tax Code
- Tax Area
- Account Number
- Tax Certificate Number
- Expiration Date
- Authorization Number

Field	Explanation
Trade Discount	Percentage by which the system reduces the price of each item. This is the only discount that will be applied. You can override it if you enter a price. Enter the percentage as a whole number (that is, 5 for 5%).
Payment Terms	<p>A code that specifies the terms of payment, including the percentage of discount available if the invoice is paid within a certain amount of time. A blank code usually indicates the most frequently used payment term. You define the specifications for each type of payment term using the Payment Terms Revisions program (P0014). For example:</p> <p>blank – Net 15  1 – 1/10 net 30  2 – 2/10 net 30  N – Net 30  P – Prox 25th  Z – Net 90</p> <p>This code prints on customer invoices.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>These terms originate from the customer information for the sold to address.</p>
Payment Instrument	<p>The user defined code (system 00, type PY) that specifies how payments are made by the customer. For example:</p> <p>C – Check  D – Draft  T – Electronic funds transfer</p>
Tax Expl Code 1	<p>A user defined code (00/EX) that controls how a tax is assessed and distributed to the general ledger revenue and expense accounts. You assign this code to a customer or supplier to set up a default code for their transactions.</p> <p>Do not confuse this with the taxable, non-taxable code. A single invoice can have both taxable and non-taxable items. The entire invoice, however, must have one tax explanation code.</p>
Tax Rate/Area	<p>A code that identifies a tax or geographic area that has common tax rates and tax distribution. The tax rate/area must be defined to include the tax authorities (for example, state, county, city, rapid transit district, or province), and their rates. To be valid, a code must be set up in the Tax Rate/Area table (F4008).</p> <p>Typically, U.S. sales and use taxes require multiple tax authorities per tax rate/area, whereas VAT requires only one simple rate.</p> <p>The system uses this code to properly calculate the tax amount.</p> <p>If you use Vertex, the GeoCode appears in this field. The system retrieves the GeoCode based on the customer's city, state, and zip code.</p>
Account Number	The first of three fields available to record credit card transactions. This field allows you to record the customer's account number with the credit card company or bank.
Tax Certificate Number	A number that identifies a license or certificate that tax authorities issue to tax-exempt individuals and companies.

Field	Explanation
Expiration Date	This field is to record the account number and expiration date of credit cards used by your customers who make purchases from you. It is for information purposes only.
Authorization Number	This field lets you record the authorization number provided by the credit card company or bank which issued the card.

### To enter shipping information

On Enter Orders (Page Mode)

Complete the following fields:

- Carrier Number
- Route
- Stop
- Zone

Field	Explanation
Carrier Number	<p>The address number for the preferred carrier of the item. The customer or your organization might prefer a certain carrier due to route or special handling requirements.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>For ECS Sales Order Management</p> <p>The Confirm Bulk Load and Confirm Packaged Load programs in Load and Delivery Management override the preferred carrier with the owner of the vehicle.</p>
Route	<p>The route field is a user defined code (system 42, type RT) that represents the delivery route on which the customer resides. This field is one of several factors used by the freight summary facility to calculate potential freight charges for an order.</p> <p>For picking, use the route code with the stop and zone codes to group all of the items that are to be loaded onto a delivery vehicle for a specific route.</p> <p>You set up a default for each of these fields on the Customer Billing Instruction form.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>For ECS Sales Order Management</p> <p>The Load and Delivery Management system does not use the Route field to calculate billable or payable freight. The system can use the Zone field for this calculation.</p>

Field	Explanation
Stop	<p>The stop code is a user defined code (system 42, type SP) that represents the stop on a delivery route. This field is one of several factors used by the freight summary facility to calculate potential freight charges for an order.</p> <p>For picking, you can use the stop code with the route and zone codes to group all items that are to be loaded onto a delivery vehicle for a specific route.</p> <p>You set up the default for each of these fields on the Customer Billing Instructions form.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>For ECS Sales Order Management</p> <p>The Load and Delivery Management system does not use the Stop field to calculate billable or payable freight. The system can use the Zone field for this calculation.</p>
Zone	<p>The zone field is a user defined code (system 40, type ZN) that represents the delivery area in which the customer resides. This field is one of several factors used by freight summary facility to calculate potential freight charges for an order.</p> <p>For picking you can use the zone code with the route and stop codes to group all item that are to be loaded onto a delivery vehicle for a specific route.</p> <p>You set up the default for each of these fields on the Customer Billing Instructions form.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>For ECS Sales Order Management</p> <p>The Load and Delivery Management system does not use the Route and Stop fields to calculate billable or payable freight. The system can use the Zone field for this calculation.</p>

### To enter commission information

On Enter Orders (Page Mode)

Complete the following fields:

- Commission Code 1
- Commission Rate 1
- Commission Code 2
- Commission Rate 2

Field	Explanation
Commission Code 1	<p>The first of two eight-character codes used to designate the salespeople who should receive credit for a sale to the customer. This code is first created in either the Address Book or through the Related Salespersons program.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>You set up the default on the Customer Billing Instructions form.</p>
Rate - Commission 1	<p>The first of two percentages to be applied to either the gross sales amount or the gross margin for an order or order line in computing your commission liability. This percent can default from Billing Instructions or be entered directly to the order.</p>

Field	Explanation
Commission Code 2	The second of two eight-character codes used to designate the salespeople who should receive credit for a sale to the customer. This code is first created in either the Address Book or through the Related Salespersons program.
Rate - Commission 2	The second of two commission percentages to be applied to either the gross sales amount or the gross margin for an order or order line in computing your commission liability. This percent can come in from the Billing Instructions or be entered in the sales order.

### 3.3 Entering Detail Information (ECS)

After you enter header information, you enter detail information that applies to individual sales order lines, such as items, quantities, and prices. Some of the detail information carries over from the heading information, including the following:

- Customer and shipping address numbers
- Branch/plant and order information, such as order number and order date
- Requested date and customer purchase order number

If you choose not to use the order header, you can enter all of the necessary information for the sales order on the Sales Order Entry form. You must set the appropriate prompting control processing option for the Sales Order Entry program to display only the Sales Order Entry form. You can also set the processing options to use default values for some header information.

#### To enter detail information

On Enter Orders (Page Mode)

1. Access Sales Order Entry.

**Figure 3–2 Sales Order Entry screen**



2. On Sales Order Entry, complete the following fields to enter item information:
  - Detail Branch/Plant
  - Quantity
  - Item
3. Complete the following fields to enter item information or leave blank to accept default values:
  - Unit of Measure
  - Unit Price
  - Pricing Unit of Measure
  - Mode of Transport
  - Duty Status
  - Line of Business
  - Requested
  - Promised
4. Access the fold area.

**Figure 3–3 Sales Order Entry (Fold Area) screen**

5. Complete the following fields to enter item information for each branch/plant in which the item is stored or leave blank to accept default values:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Accounting Branch/Plant
  - Location
  - Lot
  - Description 1

6. Complete the following fields to enter price information for each sales order line or leave blank to accept default values:
  - Extended Price
  - Taxable
  - Price Codes
7. Complete the following fields to enter detail order information for each sales order line or leave blank to accept default values:
  - Last Status
  - Next Status
  - Print Message
8. Complete the following fields to enter date information for each sales order line or leave blank to accept default values:
  - Requested Date
  - Load Date
  - Promised Date
  - Cancel
9. Complete the following fields to enter quantity information for each sales order line or leave blank to accept default values:
  - S (Scheduled to Ship)
  - B (Backordered)
  - C (Cancelled)

Field	Explanation
Quantity	<p>The quantity of units affected by this transaction.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>For credit orders, the quantity changes to a negative amount once the order is accepted.</p>
Item	<p>A number that the system assigns to an item. It can be in short, long, or 3rd item number format.</p>
Unit of Measure	<p>A user defined code (system 00/ type UM) that indicates in what quantity an inventory item is expressed; for example, CS (case) or BX (box).</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you leave this field blank, the system uses the default unit of measure from the Basic Item Master Data form.</p> <p>For bulk items, all weights must have a conversion to kilograms, and all volumes must have a conversion to M3. In addition, all weight and volume units of measure must be identified with a W or V in the Special Handling Code of the Sales Order/Unit of Measure user defined codes.</p>

Field	Explanation
Unit Price	<p>The list or base price to be charged for one unit of this item. In sales order entry, all prices must be set up in the Base Price table (F4106).</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If this item is not set up on the Basic Item Master Data form, you must type a price in this field. This price overrides all other prices.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If you enter the extended price, the system can calculate the unit price.</p>
Pricing Unit of Measure	A code (system 00/type UM) that indicates the unit of measure in which you usually price the item.
Mode of Transport	A user defined code (system 00, type TM) describing the nature of the carrier being used to transport goods to the customer, for example, by rail, by road, and so on.
Duty Status	A user defined code (system 40, type DS) identifying the duty status of an order line. You should only specify this value for duty reporting. The system supplies a default value based on the End Use preference. You can override this value at order entry.
Line of Business	A user defined code (system 40, type LB) identifying a customer's line of business.
Date - Promised Shipment	The promised shipment date for either a sales order or purchase order. The Supply and Demand Programs use this date to calculate Available to Promise information. This value can be automatically calculated during sales order entry. This date represents the day that the item can be shipped from the warehouse.
Accounting Branch/Plant	<p>A business unit is an accounting entity required for management reporting. It can be a profit center, department, warehouse location, job, project, work center, branch/plant, and so forth.</p> <p>This business unit is from the business unit entered on the header of a sales/purchase order for reporting purposes.</p> <p>This data is always right justified on entry (for example, CO123 would appear as _____CO123). A security mechanism has been provided to inhibit users from entering or locating business units outside the scope of their authority.</p>
Location	A code that identifies inventory locations in a branch/plant. You define the format of the location identifier by branch/plant (P410012).
Lot	<p>A number that identifies a lot or a serial number. A lot is a group of items with similar characteristics.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you use lot processing, the system uses the default from the branch/plant item information or you can enter a lot code.</p>
Description 1	<p>A brief description of an item, a remark, or an explanation.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Once you enter the item number, the description defaults from the Item Master file. If you enter a non-stock item in the Item field, you must enter the description or the system uses the default line type description.</p>
Amount - Extended Price	The number of units multiplied by the unit price.

Field	Explanation
Taxable	A code that indicates whether the item is subject to sales tax when you sell it. The system calculates tax on the item only if the customer is also taxable.
Price Code 1	<p>User defined code (system 40, type P1) you can use to control pricing adjustments. You can associate this code with a preference profile.</p> <p>When you specify a price code 1 in the preference, it fills or overrides this field in the sales order detail.</p>
Last Status	A code (system 40/type AT) specifying the last step in the processing cycle that this order line has successfully completed.
Next Status	A user defined code (system 40/type AT) indicating the next step in the order flow of the line type.
Load Date	The date that the product from an order line is loaded onto a vehicle for delivery.
S - Quantity Shipped	<p>The number of units committed for shipment in Sales Order Entry, using either the entered or the primary unit of measure defined for this item.</p> <p>In the Manufacturing system and Work Order Time Entry, this field can indicate completed or scrapped quantities. The quantity type is determined by the type code entered.</p>
B - Units - Qty Backordered/Held	<p>The number of units backordered in Sales Order Management or in Work Order Processing, using either the entered or the primary unit of measure defined for this item.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The branch/plant information, branch/plant constants, and billing instructions that allow backorders must be set to Y (Yes). If no backorders are allowed, the system cancels orders without sufficient quantity. You can enter a number in this field.</p>
C - Units - Qty Canceled/Scrapped	<p>The number of units canceled in Sales Order or Work Order Processing, using either the entered or the primary unit of measure defined for this item.</p> <p>In manufacturing, this can also be the number of units scrapped to date.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>A number that indicates the quantity canceled if backorders are not allowed or the Partial Shipments field is set to N (No) on the Customer Billing Instructions form. You can enter a number in this field.</p>

### 3.3.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Adding a message to an order line	You access the Associated Text Window to attach a message to a detail sales order line. You can specify on which documents this message prints, such as pick slips and invoices. You can also add a message by accessing the Text Line Entry window and entering a line type for the text message.

Topic	Description
<b>Viewing item flash messages</b>	Flash messages for order lines contain information, such as engineering change orders, that people need to know when selling an item. If a flash message exists for an order line, the system highlights the Quantity and Item fields. You can choose an option in either of these fields to view the flash message.
<b>Reviewing quantity information</b>	When you order items that are not available in the quantity that you need on the promised date, the Supply/Demand Inquiry form might display, depending on how you set the processing options. You can also display this form manually.  See <a href="#">Section 6.6, "Reviewing Supply and Demand Information (ECS)."</a>
<b>Reviewing price information</b>	You can access and review price information on the Check Price and Availability form before selecting a price for an item.  See <a href="#">Section 6.3, "Reviewing Price and Availability Information (ECS)."</a>
<b>Entering Mark-For addresses</b>	You can set the Mark-For Address processing options in Sales Order Entry ECS - Detail to display the Mark-For Address.  You use the Mark-For address to specify the location of the final destination of the order. In the retail industry, you can use this address to distinguish from the Ship To address, which can often represent a Distribution Center rather than a retail outlet.  You can only enter customers that you have set up in the Address Book Master and Customer Billing Instructions. If you enter a Mark-For address, the system assesses the tax based on the information that you set up in the Customer Billing Instructions for the Mark-For address instead of the Sold To address.
<b>Service Warranty Management</b>	A processing option determines if service warranties are assigned to sales lines by batch. The DREAM writer version can be specified.  See Work with Service and Warranty Management information in the <i>JD Edwards World Sales Order Management Guide</i> .

### 3.4 Entering Additional Order Information (ECS)

After you have entered header and detail information, you can enter additional order information for each individual sales order line, if necessary. You can enter the following additional information:

- Accounts receivable and price information
- Shipping information
- Code and order information
- Sales and commission information
- Item information

The system automatically enters most of the information on the Order Detail Information form. You can review this information and make changes or additions as necessary.

#### To enter additional order information

On Sales Order Entry

1. Access Order Detail Information for the order detail line that you want to change.

**Figure 3–4 Order Detail Information screen**

2. On Order Detail Information, review or complete the following fields for shipping information:
  - Ship To
  - Shipping Commodity
  - Shipping Condition
  - Carrier Number
  - Apply Freight
  - Rate Code
  - Route
  - Stop
  - Zone
  - MOT
3. Review or complete the following fields for accounts receivable and price information:
  - Cash Discount %
  - G/L Offset
  - Subledger
  - Subledger Type
4. Review or complete the following fields for code and order information:
  - Priority Code
  - Reason Code

- Original Order
  - Original Order Type
  - Original Order Line Number
  - Related Order
  - Related Order Type
  - Related Order Line Number
5. Review or complete the following fields for sales and commission information:
- Sales Catalog Sections
  - Family
  - Sales Category
  - Apply Commission
  - Salesperson Code 1
  - Salesperson Code 1 Commission Rate
  - Salesperson Code 2
  - Salesperson Code 2 Commission Rate
6. Review or complete the following fields for item information:
- Extended Weight
  - Weight Unit of Measure
  - Extended Volume
  - Volume Unit of Measure

Field	Explanation
Shipping Commodity	<p>A user defined code (system 41/type E) that represents an item property type or classification, such as international shipment handling. The system uses this code to sort and process like items.</p> <p>This field is one of three classification categories available primarily for inventory and shipping purposes.</p>
Shipping Condition	<p>A code (table 41/C) that represents an item property type or classification, such as special shipping conditions. The system uses this code to sort and process like items.</p> <p>This field is one of three classification categories available primarily for inventory and shipping purposes.</p>
Rate Code	<p>The user defined code (system 41/type RT) for freight rate. This designates the amount that the customer is charged for postage, freight, or other miscellaneous expenses for an order.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>For ECS Sales Order Management</p> <p>The Load and Delivery Management system does not use this field to calculate billable or payable freight.</p>
Mode of Transport	<p>A user defined code (system 00, type TM) describing the nature of the carrier being used to transport goods to the customer, for example, by rail, by road, and so on.</p>

Field	Explanation
Cash Discount %	A discount which is passed forward from the manufacturer or mill to the customer based upon the payment terms of the supplier. Enter 10 percent as 10.00
G/L Offset	<p>A code that identifies the general ledger class that you want the system to use when it searches for the account to which it will post the transaction. If you do not want to specify a class code, you can enter **** (four asterisks) in this field.</p> <p>The table of Automatic Accounting Instructions (AAIs) allows you to predefine classes of automatic offset accounts for the Inventory, Purchasing, and Sales Order Management systems. G/L categories might be assigned as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ IN20 – Direct Ship Orders</li> <li>■ IN60 – Transfer Orders</li> <li>■ IN80 – Stock Sales</li> </ul> <p>The system can generate accounting entries based upon a single transaction. As an example, a single sale of a stock item can trigger the generation of accounting entries similar to these:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales-Stock (Debit) xxxxx.xx</li> <li>■ A/R Stock Sales (Credit) xxxxx.xx Posting Category: IN80</li> <li>■ Stock Inventory (Debit) xxxxx.xx</li> <li>■ Stock COGS (Credit) xxxxx.xx</li> </ul> <p>Although this field is four characters, only the last two characters of the Category and the last character of the Document Type are used to find the AAI.</p>
Subledger - G/L	A code that identifies a detailed auxiliary account within a general ledger account. A subledger can be an equipment item number, an address book number, and so forth. If you enter a subledger, you must also specify the subledger type.
Subledger Type	<p>A user defined code (00/ST) that is used with the Subledger field to identify the subledger type and subledger editing. On the User Defined Codes form, the second line of the description controls how the system performs editing. This is either hard-coded (as shown in the second line of description) or can be user defined. For example:</p> <p>A – Alphanumeric field, do not edit</p> <p>N – Numeric field, right justify and zero fill</p> <p>C – Alphanumeric field, right justify and blank fill</p>
Priority Code	<p>A code that tells the system to handle this customer's orders on a priority basis. Use this value to set up print pick slips so you can choose to print them on a priority basis. This code is assigned from the Customer Billing Instructions.</p> <p>This field is informational only and can be used in DREAM Writer selection to expedite order lines.</p> <p>In addition, the backorder print report and automatic batch release program can be sequenced by this code to release those orders with the highest priority first.</p>
Reason Code	A user defined code (system 42/type RC) that explains the purpose for a transaction. For example, you can use a code to indicate a transaction that involves returned items, such as goods that were damaged in shipment or the overshipment of goods.



Field	Explanation
Original Order	<p>The original document number. This can be a voucher, an invoice, unapplied cash, a journal entry number, and so on. Matching document numbers are also used to identify related documents in the Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable systems. The document number (DOC) is always the original document number. The matching document number (DOCM) is the check, adjustment, or credit to be applied against the original document.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The original document number for the release of a blanket order.</p>
Original Order Type	<p>This code defines the order type. It is verified in user defined codes (system 40, type OT). Reserved document types have been defined for voucher entry, invoice entry, receipts entry, and time sheet entry. Because the offsetting entries for document types are created automatically during the post program, they will not be self-balancing on original entry. The reserved document types are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ PR – Purchase Requisition Orders</li> <li>■ PQ – Purchase Quote</li> <li>■ PO – Purchase Order</li> <li>■ PD – Purchase Order - Direct Ship</li> <li>■ PB – Purchase Order - Blanket</li> <li>■ SQ – Sales Quote</li> <li>■ SO – Sales Order</li> <li>■ SD – Sales Order - Direct Ship</li> <li>■ SB – Sales Order - Blanket</li> </ul>
Original Order Line Number	<p>A number identifying which line on the original order that the current line matches.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The system assigns decimal values to kits and text.</p>
Related Order	<p>A number that identifies a secondary purchase order, sales order, or work order associated with the original order. This is for information only.</p>
Related Order Type	<p>A user defined code (system 00, type DT) that indicates the document type of the secondary or related order. For example, a purchase order might be document type OP and might have been created to fill a related work order with document type WO.</p>
Related Order Line Number	<p>A number of the detail line on the related order for which the current order was created. For example, on a purchase order created to fill open sales orders, this is the line number of the sales order on which the item you are ordering appears.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The system assigns decimal values to kits and text.</p>
Sales Catalog Section	<p>One of ten category codes to be used for sales coding purposes. These codes can represent such things as color, material content, or use.</p>

Field	Explanation
Apply Commission (Y/N)	Used to indicate whether the sales value or gross margin earned in this order detail line should be included in the calculation of commission for the salesperson(s) responsible for this order.
Salesperson Code 1	<p>The first of two salespeople who have responsibility for or can receive a commission on sales to this customer.</p> <p>You create this code by using the Address Book system or the Related Salesperson form.</p>
Salesperson Code 1 Commission Rate	<p>The percentage commission rate that the system uses in computing commission liability on sales made by salesperson 01.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The percentage commission rate that the system applies to the gross sales amount or the gross margin for an order. The system uses this value to compute commission liability. You set up the default on the Customer Billing Instructions form.</p>
Salesperson Code 2	<p>The second of two salespeople who have responsibility for or can receive a commission on sales to this customer.</p> <p>You create this code by using the Address Book system or the Related Salespersons form.</p>
Salesperson Code 2 Commission Rate	<p>The percentage commission rate that the system uses in computing commission liability on sales made by salesperson 02.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The percentage commission rate that the system applies to the gross sales amount or the gross margin for an order. The system uses this value to compute commission liability. You set up the default on the Customer Billing Instructions form.</p>
Extended Weight	The weight of one unit in the primary unit of measure.
Weight Unit of Measure	<p>The unit of measure that indicates the weight of an individual item. Typical weight units of measure are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ GM – Gram</li> <li>■ OZ – Ounce</li> <li>■ LB – Pound</li> <li>■ KG – Kilogram</li> <li>■ CW – Hundredweight</li> <li>■ TN – Ton</li> <li>■ KG – Kilogram</li> <li>■ CW – Hundredweight</li> <li>■ TN – Ton</li> </ul>
Extended Volume	The cubic units occupied by one inventory item. The definition of the unit itself (cubic feet, yards, meters, and so on) is defined in the volume unit of measure.

Field	Explanation
Volume Unit of Measure	<p>The unit of measure for the cubic space occupied by an inventory item. Typical volume unit of measures are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ML – Milliliter</li> <li>■ OZ – Fluid Ounce</li> <li>■ PT – Pint</li> <li>■ LT – Liter</li> <li>■ CF – Cubic Foot</li> <li>■ CM – Cubic Meter</li> <li>■ CY – Cubic Yard</li> <li>■ CF – Cubic Foot</li> <li>■ CY – Cubic Yard</li> <li>■ CM – Cubic Meter</li> </ul>

## 3.5 Entering a Kit Item (ECS)

You use kit items to package items together or to create an end item that has been assembled from multiple inventory items. This allows you to enter less information on the sales order. You enter kit items on a sales order in the same way you enter individual items.

Kit items are comprised of two or more component items attached to a "parent" item number. The parent item is not stocked as an inventory item. For example, you might combine the two component items, unleaded gas and additive A, to create the parent item, super unleaded octane 97, which is not stocked as an inventory item.

When you enter an item number for a kit on a sales order, the Kit Window form displays. You can review the pre-selected items and quantities that make up the kit. You can also select any optional items that you want to include on the sales order.

### 3.5.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that kit items have been set up. See Entering Item Master Records for Kits in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*.
- Verify that a bill of material has been set up for each parent item. See Entering a Bill of Material in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*.
- Verify that the kit processing options are set to display the kit component items on the sales order.

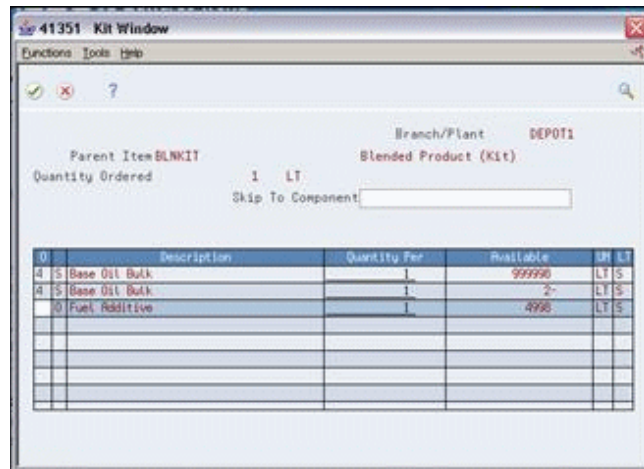
#### To enter a kit item

On Sales Order Entry

1. Complete the following fields for the parent item:
  - Quantity
  - Item

The Kit Window appears with the associated component items selected.

**Figure 3–5 Kit Window screen**



2. On the Kit Window, select any optional components that you want to add to the order.

### 3.5.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Changing kit orders	You can change quantity and price information for both parent and component items on the kit order. The system recalculates kit pricing. Any price changes affect only the current order. You make permanent price changes in the branch/plant record.

## 3.6 Entering an Order from a Template (ECS)

To save time and eliminate repetition in order entry, you can enter an order from a template that contains frequently ordered items. Templates can be standard or customer-specific.

You enter information from a template in two ways:

- Copy all of the items and quantities from the customer's template onto a new sales order
- Manually override a customer's default template by adding, deleting, or changing item or quantity information

### 3.6.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that templates have been created and assigned. See [Chapter 28, "Work with Order Templates."](#)
- Verify that the order template processing option is set to permit order template processing for either the Sold To customer number or the Ship To customer number.

#### To enter an order from a template

On Sales Order Entry

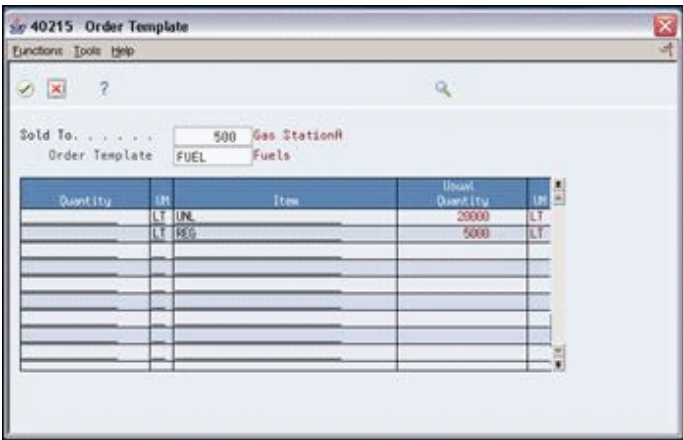
1. Complete the following fields:

- Branch/Plant
- Sold To
- Ship To

Alternatively, you can complete these same fields on the Enter Orders (Page Mode) form.

If one or more default templates are assigned to the customer, the Order Template window appears.

Figure 3–6 Order Template screen



2. On the Order Template window, choose all of the item information on the template.
3. Accept the item information.  
The system returns the item information to the sales order.
4. For each of the items now listed on the sales order, complete the following field or leave blank for any item that you do not want to include:
  - Quantity
5. Enter additional items and quantities on the sales order, if needed.

3.6.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Using additional templates	If you have not assigned a default template to your customer or you want to use a different template, you can access the Valid Order Templates window from the Sales Order Entry form. Then, follow the normal procedure for entering an order from a template.

3.7 Entering Substitute and Associated Items (ECS)

As you are entering detail information, you can substitute items for backordered items, if the customer accepts substitute items. Substituting an item on a sales order cancels any quantities for the original item that are on backorder. After you add a substitute item, the original order line displays a "Canceled by Substitution" status,

and the new order line displays a "Sold as a substitute" status. Order lines show the split between the original and the substituted items.

If your company normally sells certain items in conjunction with each other, you can enter "associated" items on your sales order. You can set up the system to prompt you to ask the customer whether they want to add the associated items when you enter the original item. For example, if a customer regularly orders 10W30 oil in conjunction with 20W40 oil, you can set up the system to display the Substitute/Associated Items window when this customer orders one of these two items.

### 3.7.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that the cross-reference table for substitute and associated items has been set up. See *Setting Up Item Cross-References in the JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*.
- Verify that the cross-reference information processing options have been set for substitute and associated items.
- Verify that the customer has been set up to accept substitute items in the customer billing instructions. See [Chapter 41, "Set Up Commission Information."](#)

#### To enter substitute and associated items

On Sales Order Entry

1. Complete the following fields to enter an item:
  - Quantity
  - Item
2. Access the Substitute/Associated Item window.

**Figure 3–7 Substitute/Associated Items screen**

42260 - Substitute/Associated Items

Functions Tools Help

X-Reference Type: A  
Brn/Plt: DEPOT1

Original Item 301  
Original Qty  
Original Price .0000

Quantity	UN	Item	Unit Price	** ALL ITEMS **
	CN	401	1.0000	60.70
	CN	401	1.0000	60.70

3. On the Substitute/Associated Item window, complete the following fields for each substitute and associated item:
  - Quantity
  - Price

### 3.7.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Reviewing commitment information</b>	<p>If the quantity that you need for a sales order line is committed across several branch plants, you can review the following information on Inventory Commitment:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Soft-committed quantities display branch/plant information only.</li><li>■ Hard-committed quantities display branch/plant and location information.</li></ul>
<b>Substituting partial quantities on sales orders</b>	<p>If there is only partial availability for an item, you can use a substitute item to provide the quantity that you need to complete an order. Order lines show the split between the original and substituted items.</p>

### 3.7.3 Processing Options

See [Section 47.1, "Sales Order Entry \(P4211\)."](#)





---

## Work with Batch Sales Orders

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 4.1, "Working with Batch Sales Orders \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 4.2, "Entering Batch Orders \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 4.3, "Creating a Recurring Order \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 4.4, "Processing Batch Orders \(ECS\)."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose **Additional Order Processes**

From Additional Order Processes (G491012), choose **Recurring & Batch Order Entry**

## 4.1 Working with Batch Sales Orders (ECS)

You use the Recurring and Batch Order Entry program to enter a large quantity of sales orders quickly or to process a group of sales orders at the same time, such as at the end of the day.

You can also use this program to create recurring sales orders in batch mode. A recurring order is one that you enter regularly. For example, if a customer submits the same order on a periodic basis, you can create a recurring order to automate the process. You can have the system re-enter the order on a weekly, monthly, or yearly basis.

During batch processing, a DREAM Writer program edits and transfers the information in the batch tables to the sales order tables and produces sales orders.

To initiate batch processing automatically, you set the appropriate processing option and identify the batch program in the subsystem.

### 4.1.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Entering sales orders from non-JD Edwards World systems	You can use the Batch Edit and Creation program to update tables in the ECS Sales Order Management system with orders that have been entered on a non-JD Edwards World system.



**Figure 4–2 Batch Order Additional Detail screen**

4001Z1 Batch Order Additional Detail

Functions Tools Help

Screen Mode Display

Order No 113895 30 Line 1.000

Brn/Plt Desc Unleaded Fuel

Location

Lot/SN

Ln Ty 3 Unit Cost .0000

Line Sts 520 540 Pr UN LT Req Date

Weight 100.0000 UOM Item Group

Volume 100.0000 Rsn Level

Orig Ord Line Tax Rate

Rel Ord Line Tax ID

4. On Batch Order Additional Detail, toggle to the update mode.
5. Complete any optional fields.
6. Return to Recurring and Batch Order Entry
7. Do one of the following:
  - Submit the order for processing using F21 from the Recurring & Batch Order Entry program (P4001Z), if you have not set the processing options to automatically submit the order. When you use the F21 key you will see the message "Submitted" on the screen underneath the "Order Number" text. Once the job has completed you can go to your spooled file to review the reports R40211Z1 and R40211Z.
  - Processing option #7 behind the Recurring & Batch Order Entry program (P4001Z) may be flagged to use the subsystem to call P40211Z.
  - Process the sales orders later by running the Batch Edit and Creation program (P40211Z) separately.

Regardless of when you process the orders, the Edit and Creation program edits the information and creates the sales orders. If there are no errors, the system adds information to the Sales Order Header table and the Sales Order Detail table.

### 4.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Processing batch sales orders individually	You can process each order individually. To do so, submit the order from the Recurring & Batch Order Entry form. When you submit a batch sales order, "Submitted" appears on the form. This message indicates that the system has submitted the order to a batch job for editing and creation.
The Recurring & Batch Order Entry form	Because the system inserts some information on the sales order after processing, the Recurring & Batch Order Entry form displays only the fields you need to complete for batch mode. For example, no fold area is available.

Topic	Description
Entering Mark-For address and reference information	<p>You can set the Mark-For Address processing options in Sales Order Entry - Detail to display the Mark-For Address.</p> <p>You can set the processing options in Batch and Recurring Order Entry to suppress the Mark-For address.</p> <p>You use the Mark-For address to specify the location of the final destination of the order. In the retail industry, this address is used in addition to the Ship To address.</p> <p>You can only enter customers that you have set up in the Address Book Master and Customer Billing Instructions. If you enter a Mark-For address, the system assesses the tax based on the information that you set up in the Customer Billing Instructions for the Mark-For address instead of the Sold To address.</p>
Import/Export	This program supports Import/Export functionality. See <i>JD Edwards World Technical Tools Guide</i> for more information.

## 4.2.2 Processing Options

See [Section 47.2, "Recurring Batch Order Entry \(P4001Z\)."](#)

## 4.3 Creating a Recurring Order (ECS)

You can streamline order entry and avoid manually re-entering orders that contain the same information by creating recurring orders. You specify how often the order recurs and when you want the system to stop generating the order.

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose **Additional Order Processes**

From **Additional Order Processes (G491012)**, choose **Recurring & Batch Order Entry**

### To create a recurring order

On **Recurring & Batch Order Entry**

1. Complete the following fields:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Ship To
  - Quantity
  - Item
2. Access Order Heading Information.

**Figure 4–3 Recurring Order Information screen**

3. On Order Heading Information, access Recurring Order Information.

**Figure 4–4 Recurring Order Information (Change) screen**

4. On Recurring Order Information, complete one or more of the following fields:
  - Order Frequency
  - Next Order Date
  - Days of the Week
  - Suspend Date

Field	Explanation
Frequency - Order	Indicates how often a recurring order is automatically generated.
Date - Next Order	The next date that a recurring order is to be processed.

Field	Explanation
Date - Suspend	The date when a recurring order is no longer to be processed.

### 4.3.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Specifying order frequency dates</b>	<p>You can define the frequency that the system uses to process orders:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If you specify a daily frequency (D), you can indicate which day of the week the system should process the order.</li> <li>■ If you specify a weekly (W) or monthly (M) frequency, the system calculates the future dates to process orders based on the Next Order Date that you enter.</li> </ul>
<b>Batch Order Edit/Creation</b>	A separate version of the Batch Order Edit/Creation program (P40211Z) should be retained for use only with recurring orders.
<b>Kit processing</b>	Kits can be processed with this program so long as the kit is defined in the Item Master file (F4101) with a stocking type of K. The relationship between the kit item and its components in the Bill of Materials file (F3002) must also be set up. Since this is a batch program, all components must be set up as standard components for the items to successfully be written to the Sales Order. Options and Features will not work.
<b>Purging files</b>	You may want to purge records that have been processed from the batch receiver files (F4001Z and F4011Z) to reduce processing time. Use the Purge Batch Receiver program (P4001ZP) from menu G00234 to purge the records.
<b>Importing orders from an external system</b>	The Z files can be used to import data from external systems. You can use a Universal File Converter or any data mapping program to populate F4001Z and F4011Z. For information on minimum required fields, refer to the chapter on Inbound 850 orders in the Electronic Commerce Guide. The functionality of the Batch Sales Order Edit/Creation and the EDI Inbound PO Edit/Creation (850I) versions of P40211Z are very similar, but note that they use different based on files in the DREAM writer versions.

## 4.4 Processing Batch Orders (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose **Additional Order Processes**

From **Additional Order Processes (G491012)**, choose **Batch Edit and Creation**

After you enter batch sales orders, use the Batch Edit and Creation program to process the orders. The system edits the information you entered and creates all orders at one time. To ensure the integrity of the data, the system creates sales orders for batch orders only after the editing process is complete.

The Batch Edit and Creation program generates two reports. To verify that sales orders have been created or that all errors have been corrected, you can review the following reports:

Report	Description
Batch Order Creation Activity Register (R40211Z1)	This report lists the orders that were created by the Batch Edit and Creation program. If no orders were created the report is not produced.
Batch Order Creation Exception report	This report lists any errors that were detected by the Batch Edit and Creation program. If any batch order appears on the Batch Order Creation Exception Report, you must correct the order and rerun the Batch Edit and Creation program to create the sales order.

#### 4.4.1 Reviewing the Batch Order Activity Register (ECS)

This report lists the orders created by the Batch Edit and Creation program.

**Figure 4–5 Batch Order Activity Register report**

File . . . . . : R40211Z1				Display Spooled File				Page/Line 1/1		
Control . . . . .								Columns 1 - 130		
Find . . . . .										
*.....1.....+.....2.....+.....3.....+.....4.....+.....5.....+.....6.....+.....7.....+.....8.....+.....9.....+.....0.....+.....1.....+.....2.....+.....3										
40211Z1				JD Edwards World				Page No. . . . 1		
				Batch Order Activity Register				Date - . . . 14.02.		
Order		Sold To/ Ty Ship To		Name		Line	Item Number	Description	Quantity	Extension
-----										
115631 SZ		501 Potomac Hotel				1,000	301	10W30-1LT Can	34	
		501 Potomac Hotel								
115632 SZ		501 Potomac Hotel				1,000	301	10W30-1LT Can	44	
		501 Potomac Hotel								
115633 SZ		501 Potomac Hotel				1,000	301	10W30-1LT Can	55	
		501 Potomac Hotel								
-----										
Bottom										
F3=Exit F12=Cancel F19=Left F20=Right F24=More keys										

#### 4.4.2 Reviewing the Batch Order Creation Exception Report (ECS)

This report lists any errors detected by the Batch Edit and Creation program. If any batch order appears on the Batch Order Creation Exception report, you must correct the order and rerun the Batch Edit and Creation program to create the sales order.

**Figure 4–6 Batch Order Creation Exception report**

Display Spooled File										Page/Line	1/1
File . . . . . : R40211Z										Columns	1 - 130
Control . . . . .											
Find . . . . .											
*.....1.....+.....2.....+.....3.....+.....4.....+.....5.....+.....6.....+.....7.....+.....8.....+.....9.....+.....0.....+.....1.....+.....2.....+.....3										Page	1
40211Z										Date	14.02.
Batch Order Creation Exception											
EDI	Tr	Trans	Sales	SO	Trading Partner	Number	Line	Fid in	Description	Field Value	
Order	Ty	ID	Order	Ty	Name						
2046	SO		115578	S3	Corporate Office Sys	4242	1,000	SZITM	Item Number - Short	13	
					Corporate Office Sys	4242					
2306	SO		2306	SO	Cloud Nine Health Su	4245		SYTXAL	Error Message 2394 Warning: No Base Price in Effect		
					Cloud Nine Health Su	4245			Tax Rate/Area		
									Error Message 0272 Tax Area Invalid		
									SYTXAL Tax Rate/Area		
2307	SO		2307	SO	Cloud Nine Health Su	4245		SYTXAL	Error Message 4913 Tax Explanation Code Invalid		
					Cloud Nine Health Su	4245			Tax Rate/Area		
									Error Message 0272 Tax Area Invalid		
									SYTXAL Tax Rate/Area		
2311	SO		2311	SO	Cloud Nine Health Su	4245		SYTXAL	Error Message 4913 Tax Explanation Code Invalid		
									Tax Rate/Area		
F3=Exit F12=Cancel F19=Left F20=Right F24=More keys										More...	

### 4.4.3 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
EDSP - Processed Y/N flag	<p>After the system creates the sales orders for a regular batch order entry, it marks the field Processed Y/N (EDSP), in the batch receiver files (F4001Z and F4011Z) as processed. Any record that has been processed cannot be reprocessed.</p> <p>For recurring sales orders, the EDSP field remains blank in the receiver files to allow the system to automatically recreate sales orders repeatedly.</p>
Checking batch orders for discrepancies and discrepancy holds	<p>You can set the order hold code processing options in the Batch Edit and Creation program to check electronically transmitted information for the following discrepancies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Price tolerance</li><li>■ Freight terms</li><li>■ Payment terms</li></ul> <p>See Receiving Inbound Documents in the <i>JD Edwards World Electronic Commerce Guide</i>.</p> <p>If there is a discrepancy in the transmission, the system creates the order and places the order on a discrepancy hold. For example, the system places an order on hold if the transmitted extended price differs substantially from the system-generated price. You can review the hold warning in the Batch Order Creation Exception report. You can release the order using the Release Held Orders program.</p>

### 4.4.4 Processing Options

See [Section 47.3, "Batch Edit - Creation \(P40211Z\)."](#)



---

## Sales Order Information

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 5.1, "Objectives,"](#)
- [Section 5.2, "About Sales Order Information \(ECS\)."](#)

### 5.1 Objectives

- To review item information
- To review open and closed sales orders and invoices
- To review customer account information
- To print and review order status reports and sales reports

### 5.2 About Sales Order Information (ECS)

You review and analyze sales order information to track the status of sales orders and invoices and accurately plan for future needs. For example, you can monitor quantity information about how many items on a sales order are backordered. Or, you can review the present status of any order, such as orders that are on hold.

Complete the following tasks:

- Work with item information
- Work with customer and sales information

When entering or reviewing a sales order, you can quickly access item information, such as item number, availability, quantity cost-breaks, and so on. This is helpful when you are speaking directly to the customer. In previous releases, when a location with a lot number was selected from Item Search, the item, branch, and location were loaded into the original screen from which the Item Search was called. The lot number was not carried back, which forced the user to write down or memorize the lot number and then manually type it into the screen that was being used. Now the lot number is also loaded from the Item Search to the original screen, which streamlines the search process and minimizes errors resulting from manual entry of lot numbers.

You can access information about customer accounts and open and closed sales orders. For example, you can use the Check Credit program to compare a customer's total accounts receivable and open orders with their credit limit. You can also review sales history information and billing information that doesn't print on the invoice that the customer receives. The Credit Check program includes the ability to display customer credit information by currency. If you operate in a multi-currency

environment, you can specify the currency to use when displaying customer credit information.

You can generate several reports that allow you to review customer and sales information, including:

- Open Orders by Item
- Open Orders by Customer
- Held Orders
- Backorders to Fill
- Sales Order Detail Ledger
- Sales Analysis Summary

---

## Work with Item Information

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 6.1, "Working with Item Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 6.2, "Copying Item Information to Sales Orders \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 6.3, "Reviewing Price and Availability Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 6.4, "Understanding Inventory Commitments \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 6.5, "Locating Quantity Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 6.6, "Reviewing Supply and Demand Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 6.7, "Reposting Sales Orders \(ECS\)."](#)

### 6.1 Working with Item Information (ECS)

When entering or reviewing a sales order, you can quickly access item information, such as item number, availability, quantity cost-breaks, and so on. This is helpful when you are speaking directly to the customer.

You can also access additional item information that helps you accurately plan for future needs, such as summary availability and supply and demand for an item. For example, you can locate information about how many items are on demand, available in supply, and available to be promised.

**See Also:**

- [Locating Item Information and Locating Quantity Information in the \*JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide\*.](#)

### 6.2 Copying Item Information to Sales Orders (ECS)

**Navigation**

**From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Processing**

**From ECS Sales Order Processing (G491011), choose Enter Orders (Page Mode)**

When entering a sales order, you might need to locate key item information, such as the item number, and copy it to the sales order. Depending on how you set the prompting control processing options for the Sales Order Entry program, you can locate item information in one of the following ways:

- **Single item search** - search the Item Master table and display a specific item
- **Multiple item search** - search the Item Location table and display multiple items

- Full item search - search all related tables with a general query (that is, a description of the item rather than the item number)

### To copy item information to sales orders

On Sales Order Entry

**Figure 6–1 Enter Orders screen**

1. Access the Item Search window.

**Figure 6–2 Item Search screen**

2. On Item Search, complete one or more of the following fields to define your search:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Search Text

- Item Number
3. Complete the following field to copy the item or items you want to the sales order and press Enter:
- Quantity

## 6.3 Reviewing Price and Availability Information (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Inquiries

From ECS Sales Order Inquiries (G4910112), choose Check Price & Availability

You use the Check Price & Availability program to locate information about the pricing and availability of specific inventory items. This program displays information from the Item Location (F41021) and the Price by Customer (F4208) tables.

### To review price and availability information

On Check Price & Availability

**Figure 6–3 Check Prices & Availability screen**

40721 Check Price and Availability Bu

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
More Details  
Return Price  
Display Summary Avail  
Display Supply and Dem  
Display Billing Instructo  
Address Number Categ  
Item Category Codes  
Clear Screen

40721 Check Price and Availability

Business Unit DEP01  
Price Date 08/10/17  
Adj. Schedule ECS

Address Number 500 Gas StationA  
Ship To 500 Gas StationA  
Item Number FUEL BOOST fuel additive  
Quantity 1 BT  
Pricing UOM BT  
Quantity Avail 669 Weight per. BT LB  
Committed Cost per BT 1.0000  
Quantity on P.O. Profit Margin (%) 60.00

Q	Seq	Adj	Name	Description	Factor	Value	Basis	Unit Price
				Base Price				2.5000

Total: 2.5000

Opt: 1=Adj Breaks 5=Audit Trail F6=Return Price F8=Sum. Avl. F24=More

Complete the following fields to locate the item:

- Item Number
- Branch/Plant
- Customer Number
- Customer Price Group

Field	Explanation
Customer Price Group	<p>A user defined code (system 40, type PC) that identifies a customer group. You can group customers with similar characteristics, such as comparable pricing.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>To view special item pricing levels that you set up for a group of customers, enter a value in this field. If you type information for this field, the Customer Number field must remain blank.</p>
Ship Ascending Date	Ship Ascending Date functionality is not currently available for ECS or the Sales Batch program.

### 6.3.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Accessing Check Price & Availability from a sales order	<p>You can quickly access the Check Price &amp; Availability form from the sales order detail line on the Sales Order Entry form to obtain quantity cost-break information.</p> <p>You can also manually adjust a price and copy the price to a sales order when you access this form from the sales order detail line.</p> <p>If you have set up quantity price breaks using inventory pricing rules, you will not be able to review those on this form.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 26.2, "Updating Prices for an Item (ECS)."</a></p>

### 6.3.2 Processing Options

See [Section 47.4, "Check Price & Availability \(P40721\)."](#)

## 6.4 Understanding Inventory Commitments (ECS)

The availability of inventory items is determined by the types of obligations or commitments against those items. For example, you might have 100 of item ABC sitting in the warehouse, 75 of which have been promised to a particular customer. By keeping track of these obligations the system makes you aware that there are only 25 of the items remaining in stock to promise to another customer.

You can specify how the system tracks obligations against inventory items by setting up inventory commitments. The following are the four types of commitments used in the Sales Order system:

- Soft Commitments
- Hard Commitments
- Future Commitments
- Other Quantities 1 and 2

The primary purpose of tracking commitments is to enable you to determine the availability of your items. A commitment is simply a value that the system maintains for each item, based on the branch, location, and lot/serial number in which it exists. In contrast, the on-hand quantity of an item represents the actual physical quantity in the warehouse. Commitment quantities for inventory items are stored in the Item Location file (F41021) which contains a record for each item, branch, location, and lot/serial number combination.

## 6.4.1 Item Availability Definition

The way the inventory commitments are factored into the calculation of availability is determined at the branch/plant level. The Item Availability Definition program (P41001) is where you define whether and how each commitment type affects the calculation of the On-hand quantity.

## 6.4.2 Commitment Types

### Soft Commitments

A soft commitment for an item is automatically created by default at sales order entry, unless another commitment type is applicable. Soft commitments are always logged against the primary location of the item.

If the processing option 46 behind ECS Sales Order Entry (P4211) is set to check availability, upon entering a sales order, the system looks at all locations in which the item exists, to determine whether there is enough quantity to fill the order. If sufficient quantity is found, the system then creates a soft commitment against the primary location. The location field can be viewed in the fold area (F4) of the sales detail line.

### Hard Commitments

A hard commitment occurs when a specific location is indicated from which items will be drawn to fulfill a sales order. Items can be hard committed by you, by entering a secondary location onto an order detail line during ECS Sales Order Entry (P4211). You can also have items automatically hard committed by this program by setting processing option 49 to 3.

Processing options are also available to hard commitments items in the following programs:

- Transfer Orders (P4242)
- Release Backorders Online (P42117)
- Release Backorders in Batch (P42118)
- Print Acknowledgements/Invoices (P42565)
- Re-commit Future Orders (P42995)

When you set a processing option to hard commit items, the system selects a location from which to hard commit inventory, based on the commitment method defined for each item in Item Branch/Plant Information program (P41026). There are three different commitment methods:

- The normal commitment method for inventory (default). The system commits inventory from the primary location, then from secondary locations. The system uses locations with the most inventory and moves to the location with the least. The system commits backorders to the primary location
- The inventory commitment method by lot number. The system commits inventory by lot number, starting with the lowest lot number and committing orders to available lots
- The inventory commitment method by lot expiration date. The system commits inventory from the locations with the earliest expiration date first. The system considers only locations with expiration dates greater than or equal to the sales order or parts list requested date.

If the normal commitment method is being employed and there is not enough quantity available at any single location to fill an order, the system splits the sales order detail line into multiple lines, each containing the location from which a portion of the quantity has been filled.

Depending on the setup, a hard commitment can be logged against a primary or a secondary location. For example, some clients only maintain one location for each item, resulting in all on-hand quantities and commitments (soft, hard, and so on) being logged against the primary location. Other clients set up the primary location as a "phantom" location where no actual on-hand quantity is maintained. Since all on-hand quantities are only stored at secondary locations, hard commitments can only be logged against these locations.

When the items on a sales order line change from a soft commit to a hard commit, the system reduces the soft committed quantity in the Item Location file (F41021) and increases the hard committed quantity at the appropriate location(s). When items are relieved from inventory at Confirm Shipments or Sales Update, the system clears the hard commit quantity from F41021 and decreases the on-hand quantity. There should be no committed quantity for a sales order detail line once the inventory has been relieved.

### **Future Commitments**

When a customer requests the delivery of an order on a future date, you might want to future commit the sales order quantities. Usually, most customers set their Item Availability Definitions so that future committed quantities do not decrease the on-hand quantities.

To determine if an order line should be future committed, the system looks at the Specific commitment days (COMH) field defined in the Branch/Plant Constants. This value in days is added to the current date and compared with the Scheduled Pick Date (PDDJ) for the order line. If the Scheduled Pick Date is greater than the calculated date, the order line will be future committed. Setting the Specific commitment days to 999 turns off the future commit function.

Future commitments are always logged against the primary location for an item, unless you type a secondary location in the sales order detail line.

As part of the Repost Active Sales Orders program (P42995), future committed orders are soft or hard committed if they fall within the calculated time frame.

### **Other Quantities 1 and 2**

Usually, you commit order quantities to the Other Quantity 1 or 2 bucket when you do not want certain order types such as blanket or quote orders to decrease on-hand quantities.

Processing options behind Sales Order Entry direct the system to use these commitment types. The program then adds the committed quantities to either the Other Quantity 1 (OT1P) or Other Quantity 2 (OT2P) field on the Item Location file (F41021). On the Sales Order Detail file (F4211) the quantity is added to the Other Quantity (1/2) field (OTQY).

## **6.4.3 Backordered Items**

You can have the system automatically backorder items on a sales order, based on item availability, by setting processing option 46 behind Sales Order Entry. The options are:

- Enter '1' to be notified of an automatic backorder or cancel



- Enter '2' to be notified but not create the backorder or cancel
- Enter '3' to create the backorder or cancel automatically and update the order without issuing the warning
- If left blank, no availability checking is done

You can also manually backorder quantities for a sales order detail line in Sales Order Entry by pressing F4 to open the fold and entering the quantity in the B (backorder) field.

Backordered quantities are soft committed and are maintained as a separate value in the Item Location file (F41021).

Backordered quantities are always logged against the primary location for an item, unless you manually enter a secondary location on the Sales Order Detail line.

## 6.4.4 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Commit field on the Sales Order Detail file (F4211)</b>	<p>This Commit field (COMM) on the Sales Order Detail file is used to designate the commitment status of the item. It can contain an S, H or C:</p> <p>S – Indicates that the quantity is soft committed.</p> <p>H – Indicates that the quantity was hard committed manually (that is, a secondary location was typed into the sales order detail line).</p> <p>C – Indicates that the quantity was hard committed by the Batch Inventory Commitment program (P42997). This is the program that is called when the processing option to hard commit inventory has been set during the various steps through the sales order process.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The field can also contain a K which is used to designate a kit master line. This has no impact on commitments.</p>
<b>Negative commitments</b>	<p>To prevent commitments from becoming negative, ensure that availability checking is switched on in the processing options for ECS Sales Order Entry (P4211) and ECS Transfer Orders (P4242).</p> <p>Also, note that a credit order creates negative commitments.</p>
<b>Refreshing the commitments in the Item Location file (F41021)</b>	<p>If you think your commitments may have become corrupt you can run a version of the Repost Active Sales Orders program (P42995) to rebuild the commitment quantities. You must remember that this program does not update on-hand quantities.</p> <p>This program has a separate version that is used to recommit future orders. Please ensure that you keep these versions separate and you do not attempt to set the processing options to run both functions in the same version.</p>

Topic	Description
<b>Setting up availability checking</b>	<p>At the Item/Branch level (F4102) set the Check Availability Y/N field (CKAV) to Y. This overrides anything written in the equivalent field on the Item Master file (F4101). Even though many programs have processing options that turn on availability checking, it does not perform unless this flag is set in the Item Branch/Plant Information program (P41026).</p> <p>If the ECS Sales Order Entry program (P4211) is set to soft commit, the system checks availability against the total quantity available at all locations and then logs the soft commit against the primary location. If the P4211 is set to hard commit, or you type a secondary location in the sales order detail line, the system checks availability against that particular location only, and hard commits against that location.</p>
<b>Hard commitments and soft commitments</b>	<p>Hard commitments and soft commitments are stored in different buckets on the Item Location file (F41021).</p> <p>In general, there are no precedence between hard and soft commitments, however there is one scenario when a hard commitment would be made in preference to a soft commitment. If an item is stored in multiple locations and the primary location is a phantom against which all soft commitments are logged, you could have 10 items soft committed against the primary location with 10 items on-hand at a secondary location giving an overall quantity of zero available. When a new sales order is entered for a quantity of 10, the user could type the secondary location which has the quantity of 10 in the fold of the detail line. This restricts the availability checking to that specific location only, resulting in a hard commitment against that location. There would not be available on-hand quantity to satisfy the existing soft commitment.</p>
<b>Transferring inventory that is hard committed against an order to another order</b>	<p>To transfer inventory that is hard committed against an order to another order, you essentially de-commit the hard commitment from one order then go into the second order and hard commit the quantity you just made available.</p> <p>In other words, you Inquire on the Sales Order on which you want to de-commit inventory in Sales Order Entry (P4211). Clear the secondary location from the location field and press Enter. This causes the system to default in the primary location. The hard commitment is relieved and a soft commitment is created for the order. Now inquire on the new order that you want to hard commit, and type the secondary location in the Location field and press Enter. This creates a hard commit for the new order.</p>
<b>Negative on-hand quantity</b>	<p>Negative on-hand quantities can result when blanket orders are over-released, or sales order are over-shipped.</p>

## 6.5 Locating Quantity Information (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Inquiries

From ECS Sales Order Inquiries (G4910112), choose Summary Availability

You use the Summary Availability program to review quantity information and determine your current and future inventory needs. You can view information on the number of items in any of the following categories:

- On-hand

- Held
- Hard and soft committed
- Available
- On purchase and work orders
- On backorders

You can locate all of the items in a particular location within a branch/plant and review detailed information for each item.

### To locate quantity information

On Summary Availability

**Figure 6–4 Summary Availability screen (Release A9.3 Update)**

41202 Summary Availability

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Addition Selections Criteria  
Exit Program  
Values List  
Open Purchase Orders  
Create / View Lot Master  
Item Master  
Configured Item Segments  
Weights and Measures  
Manufacturing Values Entry  
Message Review  
Item Search  
Create / View Location Master  
Customer Service Inquiry  
Scheduling Workbench  
Supply and Demand Inquiry  
Price and Availability Inquiry  
Item / Location Information  
Item Cross Reference  
Bill of Material Inquiry  
Clear Screen  
Lot Availability

41202 Summary Availability

Item Number: ADD  
Branch/Plant: \*  
S/D: D  
U/M: LT  
Lot Pot: -

Location	On Hand	Committed	Available	On Receipt
DEPOT1	5000		5000	
DEPOT2	5000		5000	
Totals:	10000		10000	

Opt: 1=Detail Availability 2=Branch/Plant Information F24=More Keys

1. Complete the following fields:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Item Number
2. Complete the following optional fields:
  - S/D
  - U/M
  - Lot Grade
  - Lot Potency
3. Review quantity information in the following fields:
  - Location
  - On Hand
  - Committed

- Available
  - On Receipt
4. Access the fold area.

**Figure 6–5 Summary Availability (Fold Area) screen (Release A9.3 Update)**

41202 Summary Availability

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Addition Selections Criteria  
Exit Program  
Values List  
Open Purchase Orders  
Create / View Lot Master  
Item Master  
Configured Item Segments  
Weights and Measures  
Manufacturing Values Entry  
Message Review  
Item Search  
Create / View Location Master  
Customer Service Inquiry  
Scheduling Workbench  
Supply and Demand Inquiry  
Price and Availability Inquiry  
Item / Location Information  
Item Cross Reference  
Bill of Material Inquiry  
Clear Screen  
Lot Availability

41202 Summary Availability

Item Number: TKADD  
Fuel Additive

Branch/Plant: #  
S/D: D  
U/M: LT

Lot Pot: -

Item	Location	On Hand	Committed	Available	On Receipt
P TKADD	DEPOT1	5000		5000	

Hard Commit SO+WO (in WMS).  
Soft Commit SO+WO.  
Hard Commit to WO (not in WMS).  
Future Commit

Qty on PO  
Qty on WO  
PO/WO Routing  
Backordered

Branch Plant: DEPOT1  
Lot Status: Lot Potency  
Lot/SN: Lot Grade  
Lot Effective Date: Based On Date  
% Life Remaining: Days Until Expire  
Memo Lot 1: Memo Lot 2

Opt: 1=Detail Availability 2=Branch/Plant Information F24=More Keys

5. Review quantity information for each location in which an item is stored in the following fields:
- Hard Commit on Sales Order
  - Quantity on Purchase Order
  - Soft Commit on Sales Order/Work Order
  - Quantity on Work Order
  - Hard Commit on Work Order
  - Future Commit
  - Backordered

Field	Explanation
From Grade	<p>A code (system 40, type LG) that indicates the minimum grade acceptable for an item.</p> <p>The system displays a warning message if you try to purchase or issue items that have a grade below the minimum grade acceptable. The system does not allow you to sell items that have a grade below the minimum acceptable level.</p>

Field	Explanation
From Potency	<p>A number that indicates the minimum potency, or percentage of active ingredients, acceptable for an item.</p> <p>The system displays a warning message if you try to purchase or issue items that fall below the minimum acceptable potency. The system does not allow you to sell items that fall below the minimum acceptable potency.</p>
Quantity - Hard Committed	The number of units committed to a specific location and lot.
Quantity on Purchase Order-primary units	The number of units specified on the purchase order in primary units of measure.
Quantity Soft Committed	The number of units soft committed to sales orders or work orders in the primary units of measure.
Quantity on Work Order Receipt	The number of units on work orders in primary units of measure.
Quantity - Work Order Hard Commit	The number of units hard committed to work orders in the primary unit of measure.
Quantity on Future Commit	The quantity on sales order whose requested shipment date is beyond the standard commitment period that has been specified in the Inventory Constants for that branch. As an example, if you normally ship most orders within 90 days, then an order for an item with a requested ship date a year from now would have its quantity reflected in this field.
Quantity on Backorder	The number of units backordered in primary units of measure.

## 6.5.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Locating detailed quantity information</b>	<p>You can locate detailed quantity information about an item in a specific storage area and verify the size and type of commitments against that quantity.</p> <p>See <i>Locating Detailed Quantity Information</i> in the <i>JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide</i>.</p>
<b>Locating quantity information by lot</b>	<p>You can review the number of items that are in a particular lot, as well as the activity dates, item quantities, and hold statuses that pertain to the lot.</p> <p>See <i>Locating Quantity Information by Lot</i> in the <i>JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide</i>.</p>
<b>Locating on-hand quantity information</b>	<p>You can review a transaction to determine how much of an item, in both quantity and cost amounts, that you have in any specific branch, location, or lot as of a particular date.</p> <p>See <i>Locating On-Hand Quantity Information</i> in the <i>JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide</i>.</p>
<b>Lot Effective Date (Release A9.3 Update)</b>	The date on which a lot becomes available. The system uses this date for availability and commitment processing to indicate that the lot is available on or after the date that you specify. You can enter the effective date for a lot when you first move inventory into the lot or you can leave the field blank to have the system calculate the effective date. The system calculates the effective date for a lot using the value set up for Effective Days in the Item Branch file (F4102) or using the current date if the value is zero.

## 6.5.2 Processing Options

See [Section 47.5, "Item Availability \(P41202\)."](#)

## 6.6 Reviewing Supply and Demand Information (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Inquiries

From ECS Sales Order Inquiries (G4910112), choose Supply/Demand Inquiry

You use the Supply/Demand Inquiry program to monitor information about how many items are on demand, available in supply, and available to be promised. Information about the supply and demand for an item helps you accurately plan for future needs. For example, this information can help you plan warehouse resources around receipts and order picking. It also allows you to give customers an expected order ship date.

The Supply/Demand Inquiry program displays information from the Item Location (F41021), Sales Order Detail (F4211), and Purchase Order Detail (F4311) tables.

### To review supply and demand information

On Supply/Demand Inquiry

**Figure 6–6 Supply/Demand Inquiry screen**

4021W Supply/Demand Inquiry

Functions Options Tools Help

Item No: UNL Unleaded Fuel

Brn/Plt: DEPOT1

U/H LT: Leadtime Level ... Fixed

Trans Qty	Available	Pmk Date	Description
14841795	14841795	06/18/07	On Hand Balance
14999947	29032642	06/18/07	On Hand Balance
	29032642	06/18/07	Available to Promise
100	29032642	06/18/07	Sales Order
100000	29032642	06/01/17	Purchase Order
	100000	06/01/17	Available to Promise
1000000	87902642	09/27/17	Purchase Order
	1000000	09/27/17	Available to Promise

- Complete the following fields to locate the item:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Item Number
- Complete the following fields to limit the items that display:
  - Unit of Measure
  - Thru Date

3. Review supply and demand information in the following fields:
  - Demand
  - Supply
  - Available
  - Promise Date
  - Order Number
  - Type
  - Customer/Supplier Name
4. Access the fold area.

**Figure 6–7 Supply/Demand Inquiry (Fold Area) screen**

Item No: UNL Unleaded Fuel  
 Brn/Plt: DEPOT1  
 U/M: LT Leadtime Level: Fixed

Trans Qty	Available	Pm Date	Description
* 14841795	14841795	06/10/07	On Hand Balance
Cust/Suppl			On Hand Balance 0r
* 14590947	29032742	06/10/07	On Hand Balance
Cust/Suppl			On Hand Balance 0r
	29032642	06/10/07	Available to Promise
Cust/Suppl			Available to Promise 0r
- 100	29032642	06/06/07	Sales Order
Cust/Suppl	500		Gas Station# 0r 113995 SO
* 100000	29032642	06/01/17	Purchase Order
Cust/Suppl	600		A-2 Fuels, Inc. 0r 11722 OP
	100000	06/01/17	Available to Promise
Cust/Suppl			Available to Promise 0r
* 1000000	30932642	09/27/17	Purchase Order
Cust/Suppl	3594		Other Oil Company Depot 0r 11740 OP

5. Review item supply and demand information for each location and lot in the branch/plant in the following fields:
  - Customer/Supplier
  - Record Type
  - Parent Work Order
  - Parent

Field	Explanation
Demand	The quantity subtracted from the available balance as a result of the record processed. Typically, the sources of demand are safety stock, sales orders, or work order parts lists. When using system forecasting, you can set up a processing option to include quantities used for forecast demands.

Field	Explanation
Supply	The quantity added to the available balance as a result of the record processed on each line. Sources of supply are typically on-hand inventory, purchase order receipts, or manufacturing work orders. A processing option allows for the inclusion of planned order receipts when using MPS/MRP/DRP.
Available	The quantity available can be on-hand balance minus commitments, reservations, and backorders. Availability is user defined and can be set up on Branch/Plant Constants form.
Customer/Supplier Name	<p>The text that names or describes an address. This 40-character alphabetic field appears on a number of forms and reports. You can enter dashes, commas, and other special characters, but the system cannot search on them when you use this field to search for a name.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The customer or supplier name on a sales or purchase order.</p>

### 6.6.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Supply and demand inclusion rules	<p>If you are using the Manufacturing and Distribution Planning system in conjunction with the Inventory Management system, you should set up the supply and demand inclusion rules.</p> <p>See <i>Setting Up MRP Supply and Demand Inclusion Rules in the JD Edwards World Manufacturing and Distribution Planning Guide</i>.</p>
Available to promise	<p>The highlighted "Available to Promise" lines indicate your company's uncommitted available inventory. This inventory is available for sale or distribution within a specified period until the next replenishment orders are scheduled to arrive.</p> <p>The two methods of determining Available to Promise are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Standard - the system considers customer demand for all periods and assumes that customers will consume the quantity within that period. The system also assumes that there will be no carryover into the next period.</li> <li>Cumulative - the system keeps a running total of the standard Available to Promise and does not assume that customers will consume the quantity within a period.</li> </ul> <p>You must set the appropriate processing option to choose which method you want the system to use.</p>

### 6.6.2 Processing Options

See [Section 47.6, "Supply & Demand \(P4021\)."](#)

## 6.7 Reposting Sales Orders (ECS)

#### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose End of Day Processing

From ECS End of Day Processing (G491013), choose Repost Active Sales Orders



If your data has been corrupted due to a loss of power or some other occurrence, you can restore sales order information. You can set up a DREAM Writer version of the Repost Active Sales Orders program to have the system restore sales orders and recalculate related quantity and commitment information.

The program does not restore or recalculate information for the following:

- Orders with kit components and non-inventory items
- Orders that are on hold
- Orders with incomplete header information
- Canceled detail lines
- Detail lines with invalid line types

You can also have the system clear and then recalculate the following quantity information for items, depending on how you set the processing options:

- Committed quantity - includes any committed quantities on held orders
- Total quantity on an individual sales order
- Total quantity for all sales orders

### 6.7.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Recalculating sales orders that have future commitments	<p>You can set up a separate DREAM Writer version of the Repost Active Sales Orders program to have the system recalculate future commitments and print a report that lists each detail line that has future-committed items. This is helpful if you want updated information about future commitments.</p> <p>You can also have the system perform the following, depending on how you set the processing options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Check customer credit limits on future sales orders</li> <li>■ Hard commit items on future sales orders</li> <li>■ Put future sales orders on hold for review</li> <li>■ Update item quantities in the Item Location table with information from the Sales Order Detail table</li> <li>■ Update order totals in the Sales Order Header table with information from the Sales Order Detail table</li> </ul>

### 6.7.2 Processing Options

See [Section 47.7, "Repost Sales Orders & Release Future Commits \(P42995\)."](#)



---

## Work with Customer and Sales Information

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 7.1, "Working with Customer and Sales Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 7.2, "Reviewing Customer Account Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 7.3, "Reviewing Sales Orders by Customer \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 7.4, "Generating Order Status Reports \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 7.5, "Reviewing Sales History Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 7.6, "Generating Sales History Reports \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 7.7, "Reviewing Billing Information \(ECS\)."](#)

### 7.1 Working with Customer and Sales Information (ECS)

You can access information about customer accounts and open and closed sales orders. For example, you can use the Check Credit program to compare a customer's total accounts receivable and open orders with their credit limit. You can also review billing information that doesn't print on the invoice that the customer receives, such as the status of any related orders. This is helpful when you need to provide information to a customer during order entry.

You can generate reports to review customer and sales information. You can also access and review sales history information.

### 7.2 Reviewing Customer Account Information (ECS)

#### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Inquiries

From ECS Sales Order Inquiries (G4910112), choose Check Credit

You can use the Check Credit program to review information about a customer's account and credit status. You can compare the customer's total accounts receivable and open orders to the customer's current credit limit assigned in the Customer Master table (F0301) to determine if the credit limit has been exceeded.

You can access the following types of information, based on existing sales orders:

- Accounts receivable, for example, any balances that are currently due
- Customer information, for example, customer ABC ranking and invoice and payment information

- Open sales orders, for example, order dates and amounts

#### To review customer account information

On Check Credit

**Figure 7–1 Check Credit screen**

Complete the following fields:

- Parent number
- Customer

## 7.2.1 Processing Options

See [Section 47.8, "Credit Check Processing \(P42050\)."](#)

## 7.3 Reviewing Sales Orders by Customer (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Inquiries

From ECS Sales Order Inquiries (G4910112), choose Customer Service

You use the Customer Service program to review sales order, customer, and item information in the Sales Order Detail (F4211) or Sales Order Detail History (F42119) tables. You can review the following information:

- Open sales order information
- Closed sales order information
- Information at the sales order, customer, and item levels

### To review sales orders by customer

On Customer Service

**Figure 7-2 Customer Service screen**

42045 - Customer Service - B

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
 Display Error Message  
 Display Functions  
 Exit Program  
 More Details  
 Rebate Volume History  
 Display Text Messages  
 Display Customer or Site  
 Exit to Name Search  
 Comp. Prod. Inquiries (C)  
 Price Adjustment (Curs)  
 Display Quantity Amount  
 Last Customer Shipmen  
 Display Amounts in As-I  
 Configurator Segments  
 Item Flash Message (C)  
 Clear Screen  
 Export Subtle

42045 Customer Service

Branch/Plant DEP01  
 Status 540 Thru 999 St  
 Date: Thru  
 Date Range - Based On

Order No. SO  
 Invoice No.  
 Orig Order No.  
 Sold To 500 Gas StationA  
 Ship To  
 Item Number  
 Customer PO  
 Ticket Number

O. Hd	Order	Ty	Sold To	Description	Quantity	Request
	113095	SO	Gas StationA	Unleaded Fuel	100	08/00/07
	9501	SO	Gas StationA	200 LT Full Contai	10	01/25/17
	9501	SO	Gas StationA	200 LT Full Contai	5	01/25/17
	9499	SO	Gas StationA	100 LT Full Contai	10	01/26/17
	9499	SO	Gas StationA	100 LT Full Contai	5	01/26/17
	9506	SO	Gas StationA	100 LT Empty Conta	10	02/01/17
	9506	SO	Gas StationA	100 LT Full Contai	5	02/01/17
	9506	SO	Gas StationA	200 LT Empty Conta	10	02/01/17
	9506	SO	Gas StationA	200 LT Full Contai	5	02/01/17
	9514	SO	Gas StationA	100 LT Full Contai	15	03/02/17

Opt: 1=SO Entry 2=Text 5=Details F15=Qty/Amount/Price F24=More Keys

1. Complete the following fields to locate a sales order:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Order Number
2. Complete the following optional fields to locate orders based on associated orders:
  - Invoice Number
  - Original Order Number
  - Customer PO
3. Complete the following optional fields to locate orders based on customer addresses:
  - Sold To
  - Ship To
4. Complete the following optional fields to locate orders based on status:
  - Status
  - Thru
  - Status Range - Based On
5. Complete the following optional fields to locate orders based on dates:
  - Date
  - Thru
  - Date Range - Based On
6. Access the fold area.

**Figure 7-3 Customer Service (Fold Area) screen**

7. Review the following fields:

- Line Number
- Item Number

Field	Explanation
Document	<p>A number that identifies the original document, such as a voucher, invoice, unapplied cash, journal entry, and so on. On entry forms, you can assign the original document number or let the system assign it through Next Numbers.</p> <p>Matching document (DOCM) numbers identify related documents in the Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable systems. Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Automated/Manual Payment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Original document - Voucher</li> <li>Matching document - Payment</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ A/R Original Invoice <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Original document - Invoice</li> <li>■ Receipt Application <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Original document - Invoice</li> <li>Matching document - Receipt</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Credit Memo/Adjustment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Original document - Invoice</li> <li>Matching document - Credit Memo</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Unapplied Receipt <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Original document - Receipt</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li></ul>

Field	Explanation
Original Order Number	The original document number. This can be a voucher, an invoice, unapplied cash, a journal entry number, and so on. Matching document numbers are also used to identify related documents in the Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable systems. The document number (DOC) is always the original document number. The matching document number (DOCM) is the check, adjustment, or credit to be applied against the original document.
Original Order Type	<p>This code defines the order type. It is verified in user defined codes (system 40, type OT). Reserved document types have been defined for voucher entry, invoice entry, receipts entry, and time sheet entry. Because the offsetting entries for document types are created automatically during the post program, they will not be self-balancing on original entry. The reserved document types are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ PR – Purchase Requisition Orders</li> <li>■ PQ – Purchase Quote</li> <li>■ PO – Purchase Order</li> <li>■ PD – Purchase Order - Direct Ship</li> <li>■ PB – Purchase Order - Blanket</li> <li>■ SQ – Sales Quote</li> <li>■ SO – Sales Order</li> <li>■ SD – Sales Order - Direct Ship</li> <li>■ SB – Sales Order - Blanket</li> </ul>

### 7.3.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Searching with an asterisk	<p>You can use an asterisk (*) as a wildcard character in any of the fields to have the system search on all values for the field. When searching for items, you can enter the first few letters or numbers of the item number followed by an asterisk (*) to have the system locate all items that start with the values you enter. For example, if you enter 10*, the system displays all numbers that begin with 10.</p>
Viewing different formats	<p>You can toggle between several different types of information displayed on this form, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Customer information</li> <li>■ Status information</li> <li>■ Quantity associated with the order</li> <li>■ Item amount</li> <li>■ Unit price</li> </ul>

Topic	Description
<b>Locating order detail information</b>	<p>You can access Order Detail Information to review all of the detail information associated with each line of a sales order, such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Address numbers</li><li>■ Order dates</li><li>■ Hold codes</li><li>■ Priority codes</li><li>■ Prices</li><li>■ Payment instruments</li><li>■ Messages</li></ul>
<b>Locating additional information</b>	<p>From the Customer Service form, you can choose several options to locate additional types of information related to sales orders, such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Online invoices</li><li>■ Customer credit, billing, and address</li><li>■ Item availability</li><li>■ Supply and demand</li><li>■ Item cross-reference</li><li>■ A/R ledger</li></ul>

### 7.3.2 Processing Options

See [Section 47.9, "Customer Service Inquiry \(P42045\)."](#)

## 7.4 Generating Order Status Reports (ECS)

### Navigation

**From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Reports**

**From ECS Sales Order Reports (G4910111), choose an option**

You generate order status reports to review information about open orders, held orders, and backorders.

Complete the following tasks to review the status of sales orders:

- Generate the Open Orders by Item report
- Generate the Open Orders by Customer report
- Generate the Held Orders report
- Generate the Backorders to Fill report

### 7.4.1 Generating the Open Orders by Item Report (ECS)

You generate the Open Orders by Item report to review the number of open orders for an item and determine how to fill them using availability information.

This report prints the detail line items within each of your sales orders and sorts the information by item number (inventory). It prints the on-hand quantities for each item within a warehouse location for a particular job.

You can generate different versions of this report to review:



- Open orders for direct ship items.
- Backordered items that allow substitutes. These are useful for improving the response time to your customer.

This report includes backordered items. To prevent backordered items from appearing on this report, you must release them as soon as possible.

**Figure 7-4 Open Sales Orders by Item report**

Display Spooled File									
File . . . . .	R42632						Page/Line	1/1	
Control . . . . .							Columns	1 ~ 130	
Find . . . . .									
*.....1.....2.....3.....4.....5.....6.....7.....8.....9.....0.....1.....2.....3									
42632	JD Edwards World						Page	-	1
Open Sales Orders by Item									
Branch - Depot 1									
Item Number/ Description	Ty	Order No	Customer or Vendor Name/ Number		Promised Date	UM	On Order	On P/O	Avail On Recpt
UNL									
Unleaded Fuel	S3	114918	Gas StationA		18.08.06	CN	1000		
			500						
	S3	114946	Gas StationA		23.08.06	CN	1		
			500						
	S3	114953	Gas StationA		23.08.06	LT	1		
			500						
	S3	114956	Gas StationA		23.08.06	LT	1		
			500						
	S3	114957	Gas StationA		23.08.06	LT	1		
			500						
	S3	114960	Gas StationA		24.08.06	LT	1		
F3=Exit F12=Cancel F19=Left F20=Right F24=More keys									
									More...

## 7.4.2 Generating the Open Orders by Customer Report (ECS)

You generate the Open Orders by Customer report to review the quantity ordered and the quantity available to ship by order lines for outstanding sales orders. You use this report to review the following:

- Orders that have been picked but not shipped
- Orders that have been picked but not billed
- Open orders that exceed the customer's requested ship date

You can generate different versions of this report to review:

- Open orders and their total amount
- Open orders beyond a specific date
- Open orders for a specific document type or line type

This report includes backordered items. To prevent backordered items from appearing on this report, you must release them as soon as possible.

**Figure 7-5 Open Sales Orders by Customer report (1 of 2)**

Display Spooled File									
File	.....	R42620						Page/Line	1/53
Control	.....	HI						Columns	1 = 130
Find	.....	Fabio,							
*.....1.....2.....3.....4.....5.....6.....7.....8.....9.....0.....1.....2.....3									
Order Number									
Line Number									
The Following Report Distributions were Entered:									
** None Selected **									
42620	JD Edwards World							Page	2
Open Sales Orders by Customer									
Date - 12.02.08									
DEPOT1-Depot 1									
Customer Name/	Ord No/	Item Number/	Date	Quantities	Extended				
Number	Date Ty	Item Description	Promised UM	Ordered	To Ship	Open	Amount	Open	
-----									
Gas StationA	114685	SO MILK JUG	20.07.06 EA	8	8	8	240,00		
500	20.07.06	Full jug	20.07.06 EA	4-	4-	4-	300,00		
	20.07.06	Empty jug							
	114689	SO MILK JUG	20.07.06 EA						
				Order Total			60,00		
				8	8	8	240,00		
-----									
More...									
F3=Exit	F12=Cancel	F19=Left	F20=Right	F24=More keys					

**Figure 7–6 Open Orders by Customer report (2 of 2)**

Display Spooled File									
File . . . . .	R42620							Page/Line	2/21
Control . . . . .	HI							Columns	1 - 130
Find . . . . .	Fabio,								
*.....1.....2.....3.....4.....5.....6.....7.....8.....9.....0.....1.....2.....3									
	20.07.06 Full jug	20.07.06 EA	4-	4-	4-				300,00
	114689 SO JUG								
	20.07.06 Empty jug								
	114690 SO EC100	20.07.06 EA	8-	8-	8-				60,00
	20.07.06 100 LT Empty Container								240,00
	114690 SO EC200	20.07.06 EA	4	4	4				300,00
	20.07.06 200 LT Empty Container								
	114690 SO MILK JUG	20.07.06 EA	8	8	8				80,00
	20.07.06 Full jug								
	114788 SO EC100	07.08.06 EA	100-	100-	100-				140,00
	07.08.06 100 LT Empty Container								5.000,00
	114791 SO FC100	07.08.06 EA	5	5	5				5.000,00
	07.08.06 100 LT Full Container								50,00
									More...
F3=Exit F12=Cancel F19=Left F20=Right F24=More keys									

#### 7.4.2.1 Processing Options

See [Section 47.10, "Open Sales Orders by Customer \(P42620\)."](#)

### 7.4.3 Data Sequence for Open Orders by Customer Report

The following data sequence is mandatory:

- Order type
- Company
- Branch or warehouse
- Customer
- Transaction date
- Order number
- Line number

### 7.4.4 Generating the Held Orders Report (ECS)

You generate the Held Orders report to review a list of all sales orders that are on hold for the following reasons:

- Credit
- Profit margin
- Partial order hold
- Price review

Figure 7-7 Held Orders report

File . . . . . : R42590										Display Spooled File										Page/Line 1/1									
Control . . . . .																				Columns 1 - 130									
Find . . . . .																													
*...+...1...+...2...+...3...+...4...+...5...+...6...+...7...+...8...+...9...+...0...+...1...+...2...+...3																													
42590										JD Edwards World										Page -									
										Backorders To Fill										Date - 12.02.									
																				Branch - DEFO									

### 7.4.6 Data Sequence for Backorders to Fill Report

The following data sequence for this report is mandatory:

- Branch/plant
- Second item number
- Requested
- Priority processing code

## 7.5 Reviewing Sales History Information (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Inquiries

From ECS Sales Order Inquiries (G4910112), choose Sales Ledger Inquiry

You review sales history information to track sales orders and determine when an order was entered or printed. You can also use this information for internal audit purposes.

You use the Sales Ledger Inquiry program to review information in the Sales Order Detail Ledger table (F42199), which is a flexible file. Flexible files contain history records of specific field information that you want to review, such as order entry dates.

The system writes information to the Sales Order Detail Ledger table based on the order activity rules. You can determine which status codes will write an entry to the table. For example, you might want to record information to the table during sales order entry, invoicing, and sales update.

### 7.5.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that the ledger flag is set to Y in the status codes that you want the system to use to record an entry in the Sales Order Detail Ledger table. See [Chapter 39.1, "Setting Up Order Activity Rules \(ECS\)."](#)
- Verify that flexible file information has been defined. See Creating a Flexible Format in the *JD Edwards World General Accounting II Guide*.

### To review sales history information

On Sales Ledger Inquiry

Figure 7-9 Sales Ledger Inquiry screen

**Oracle JD Edwards World**

Tools Help

42025 Sales Ledger Inquiry

Branch/Plant: DEPOT1  
 Status: 500 Thru 600 St 1  
 Date: Thru  
 Date Range - Based On

Order Number:   
 Invoice No:   
 Sold To: 500 Gas StationA  
 Ship To:   
 Item Number:   
 Customer PO:

Order	Ty	Customer	Description	Ordered	Shipped
0674	33	Gas StationA	Unlead Fuel for	50,000.00	50,000.00
0674	33	Gas StationA	Unlead Fuel for	50,000.00	50,000.00
0675	33	Gas StationA	Unlead Fuel for	100,000.00	100,000.00
0675	33	Gas StationA	Unlead Fuel for	100,000.00	100,000.00
0676	33	Gas StationA	Unlead Fuel for	74,500.00	74,500.00
0676	33	Gas StationA	Unlead Fuel for	74,500.00	74,500.00
0677	33	Gas StationA	Unlead Fuel for	6,250.00	6,250.00
0677	33	Gas StationA	Unlead Fuel for	6,250.00	6,250.00
0678	33	Gas StationA	Unlead Fuel for	50,000.00	50,000.00
0678	33	Gas StationA	Unlead Fuel for	50,000.00	50,000.00

Opt: 1=S.O. 5=Detail 6=Credit Memo F15=Amounts/Quantities F24=More

1. Complete one or more of the following fields:
  - Order Number
  - Order Type
  - Sold to
  - Ship to
  - Item Number
  - Customer PO
2. Complete the following fields to limit the ledger items that display:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Status
  - Thru
  - Status Range - Based On
  - Date
  - Thru
  - Date Range - Based on
3. Access Sales Ledger Detail to review detail information for individual ledger items.

**Figure 7-10 Sales Ledger Detail screen**

Order Number 8677 33 Cust PO  
 Line Number 1.000 Item UNL-REC  
 Branch/Plant DEP011 Desc Unlead Fuel for Reconciliation

	Quantity	UM	Unit Price	UM	Amount
Ordered	25000	LT	.2500		6,250.00
Shipped	25000				6,250.00

Invoice  
 Last/Next Sts 520 525  
 Original Order  
 Rel. PO/SO/NO

User ID TFRCTL7  
 Terminal ID RR703949S3  
 Program ID P4211  
 Date Updated 04/10/15  
 Time of Day 12:49:13

## 7.5.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Creating a credit order from history	<p>You can choose an option on Sales Ledger Inquiry to create a credit order for a specific sales order.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 9.3, "Creating a System-Generated Credit Order (ECS)."</a></p>
Viewing different formats	<p>You can toggle between different types of information displayed on the Sales Ledger Inquiry form, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Amount ordered and amount shipped</li> <li>Quantity ordered and quantity shipped</li> </ul> <p>You can also toggle between different types of information displayed on the Sales Ledger Detail form, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Customer information</li> <li>Status information</li> </ul>

## 7.5.3 Processing Options

See [Section 47.12, "Sales Ledger & Credit Orders from History \(P42025\)."](#)

## 7.6 Generating Sales History Reports (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Reports

From ECS Sales Order Reports (G4910111), choose an option

You generate sales history reports to analyze sales history and review period-to-date and year-to-date sales amounts. To review sales history, you can:

- Generate the Sales Ledger Detail report
- Generate the Sales Analysis Summary report

## 7.6.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Troubleshooting printing problems</b>	<p>The most common reasons why information does not print on these sales reports are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ You did not specify the correct status code in the processing options.</li> <li>■ The order has one or more hold codes.</li> <li>■ The system did not update the Sales Summary History table (F4229) when you ran the Update Customer Sales program.</li> </ul>

## 7.6.2 Generating the Sales Ledger Detail Report (ECS)

You generate the Sales Ledger Detail report to analyze sales history. Depending on the version of the Sales Ledger Detail report that you choose, you can analyze sales history in the following ways:

- By order (document) type, such as phone orders, blanket orders, COD orders, and credit orders
- By line type, such as stock sales, non-stock sales, freight, and miscellaneous
- By order status, such as shipped, backordered, or canceled
- By customer, salesperson, or order entry person
- By customer payment terms
- By price amounts

**Figure 7-11 Sales Ledger Detail report**

Display Spooled File									
File	R42600						Page/Line	40/60	
Control							Columns	1 - 130	
Find									
.....1.....2.....3.....4.....5.....6.....7.....8.....9.....0.....1.....2.....3									
	Corporate Office Systems	4242	168-000 SO	M30	25.07.06	1	EA	10,00	2,00
								8,00	20,000
42600			JD Edwards World				Page	-	41
			Sales Ledger Detail				Run Date -	12.02.08	
			Invoiced Orders				From Date -	01.01.90	
							Thru Date -	31.12.07	
Item Description/ Number	Customer Name/ Number	Order Num/ Invoice Num	Ty	Branch/ Date	Quantity	UM	Sales/ Sales Cost	Gross Profit Amount / %	
M30,30,20 03	Corporate Office Systems	175-000 SO		M30	1	EA			
		4242		26.07.06					
	Corporate Office Systems	176-000 SO		M30	1	EA	10,00	2,00	
		4242		26.07.06			8,00	20,000	
	Corporate Office Systems	177-000 SO		M30	1	EA	10,00	2,00	
		4242		26.07.06			8,00	20,000	
	Corporate Office Systems	182-000 SO		M30	1	EA	10,00	2,00	
		4242		27.07.06			8,00	20,000	
	Corporate Office Systems	182-000 SO		M30	1	EA	10,00	2,00	
		4242		27.07.06			8,00	20,000	
More...									
F3=Exit F12=Cancel F19=Left F20=Right F24=More keys									

### 7.6.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Specifying information for the Sales Ledger Detail report</b>	<p>In the order activity rules, you can specify the information that the system records in the Sales Order Detail Ledger table. You do this by setting the ledger flag to Y in the status codes that you want the system to use to record an entry in the Sales Order Detail Ledger table. These entries appear on the Sales Ledger Detail report.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 39.1, "Setting Up Order Activity Rules (ECS)."</a></p>

Topic	Description
Specifying status codes for record selection	Because the Sales Order Detail Ledger table can contain multiple records for a single order detail line, you must specify either a next or last status code in the data selection for the Sales Ledger Detail report. If you do not specify a status code, the report can overstate historical sales information.

7.6.2.2 Processing Options

See [Section 47.13, "Sales Ledger Detail \(P42600\)."](#)

7.6.3 Generating the Sales Analysis Summary Report (ECS)

You generate the Sales Analysis Summary report to review period-to-date and year-to-date sales amounts and sales margin. The Sales Analysis Summary program retrieves information from the Sales Summary History table (F4229).

7.6.3.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that the processing options for the Update Customer Sales program are set to update records in the Sales Summary History table.

Figure 7–12 Sales Analysis Summary report

Display Spooled File									
File . . . . .	R42611					Page/Line	1/1		
Control . . . . .						Columns	1 - 130		
Find . . . . .									
*.....1.....2.....3.....4.....5.....6.....7.....8.....9.....0.....1.....2.....3									
42611	JD Edwards World					Date	- 12.02.08		
Sales Analysis Summary									
						Page	-		
						Start Date	- 01.01.91		
						Period Ended	- 31.12.99		
DEPOT1 Depot 1									
. . . . . Period to Date . . . . .									
Sales			Margin		Pct	Description/ Item Number		Year to Date . . . . .	
<hr/>									
4132,00			1858,00		44,966	Leaded Fuel		4.132,00	
						REG		1.858,00	
								44,966	
<hr/>									
4.132,00			1858,00		44,966	Depot 1		4.132,00	
								1858,00	
								44,966	
<hr/>									
4.132,00			1858,00		44,966			4.132,00	
								1858,00	
								44,966	
<hr/>									
Bottom									
F3=Exit F12=Cancel F19=Left F20=Right F24=More keys									

7.6.3.2 Processing Options

See [Section 47.14, "Sales Analysis Summary \(P42611\)."](#)

7.7 Reviewing Billing Information (ECS)

Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Inquiries

From ECS Sales Order Inquiries (G4910112), choose Online Invoice

You use the Online Invoice program to review billing information. This is helpful when you need to provide information to a customer during order entry. The program does not display an exact duplicate of a printed invoice, but you can choose options to view all of the information that appears on the printed invoice. You can also access information about an order that has not been invoiced or has only been partially invoiced.

You can also use Online Invoice to:



- Review open and closed invoice information
- Display the invoice with or without backordered lines
- Review information about discounts, payment terms, and taxes
- Review transaction dates of lines within the invoice
- Print a single invoice

You can set the processing options for the Online Invoice program to display backordered items in the following ways:

- Without quantity and extended price information
- With quantity information only
- With quantity and extended price information

You can also display tax summary information based on one of the following:

- Tax group - total taxable amount
- Tax area - tax rate area, such as a state
- Tax authority - tax authority with jurisdiction in the tax area, such as a county or city

### To review billing information

On Online Invoice

**Figure 7–13 Online Invoice screen**

42230 Online Invoice

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help 42230 Online Invoice From Status ☐ Thru ☐

Display Error Message Invoice 125894 PI Based On Status ☐

Display Functions Order Number 53 Date to Display ☐

Exit Program Sold To 500 Gas StationA Include Backorders ☐

More Details Ship To 500 Gas StationA

0	Description	Order	UM	Quantity	Extended Price	T
100	LT Full Container	01/26/17	EA	10	100.00	Y

Order Total 100.00

Taxable Amount \* Tax

Invoice Total 100.00

Opt: 5=Details F15=Tax Summary F16=Discounts F21=Print F24=More

1. Complete one of the following fields to locate an invoice:
  - Invoice
  - Order Number
2. Complete the following fields to limit your search:
  - From Status

- Thru
  - Based On Status
3. Complete the following optional fields:
- Date to Display
  - Include Backorders

Field	Explanation
Date Range - Based On	<p>A code identifying the type of dates that the system searches for when finding information to display on this form. Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ blank – Requested date</li> <li>■ 1 – Transaction/order date</li> <li>■ 2 – Promised ship date</li> <li>■ 3 – Original promised delivery date</li> <li>■ 4 – Actual ship date</li> <li>■ 5 – Invoice date</li> <li>■ 6 – Cancel date</li> <li>■ 7 – General ledger date</li> <li>■ 8 – Promised delivery date</li> </ul>
Include Backorders	<p>Code that specifies whether to include backordered quantities in the calculation of the order total. Valid codes are:</p> <p>blank – Exclude backorders: No backordered quantities display.</p> <p>1 – Include backorders for calculation of order quantity.</p> <p>2 – Include backorders for calculation of order quantities and extended prices. The order total is recalculated to include backordered amounts.</p>

### 7.7.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Locating invoices within a sales order</b>	If more than one invoice is associated with a sales order, you can choose the appropriate option to display invoices associated with the order. When the Invoice Selection window displays, you can choose an invoice from the list.
<b>Printing invoices</b>	<p>You can print an invoice from the Online Invoice form. The system uses the version of the Print Invoice procedure that you specify in the processing options. You can enter information in the following fields to override default information from the processing options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Status From</li> <li>■ Thru</li> <li>■ Include Backorders</li> </ul>
<b>Viewing different formats</b>	<p>You can toggle between two different sets of columns that appear on this form:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Quantity and extended price</li> <li>■ Extended weight and extended volume</li> </ul>

## 7.7.2 Processing Options

See [Section 47.15, "Online Invoice \(P42230\)."](#)



---

## Credit Orders

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 8.1, "Objectives,"](#)
- [Section 8.2, "About Credit Orders \(ECS\)."](#)

### 8.1 Objectives

- To enter orders that credit a customer's account for returned or defective items

### 8.2 About Credit Orders (ECS)

You use credit orders to accept returned items from a customer and to issue credit to the customer for the returned items. Depending on how you set up credit orders, the system can add the quantities of items into your inventory, or you can make manual adjustments to add the returned quantity into your inventory.

The system supports the following types of returns:

- **Authorized returns**

An authorized return requires that a customer attain authorization prior to returning or receiving credit for an item. If your company uses this type of return, you can print the credit order to use as an authorization document for your customer.

- **Dock returns**

A dock returns allows the customer to return or receive credit for an item without prior notice. You create the credit documents after the item is returned.

For both types of returns, you enter credit orders in the same way but at different points in the process.

Entering credit orders consists of:

- Entering all of the information for the credit order manually
- Creating a system-generated credit order

When you enter information manually, the system applies the current unit price for the credited item. If necessary, you can also enter a different unit price to override the default information.

When the system creates a credit order, it retrieves the credit information automatically from the Sales Order Detail Ledger table (F42199). The credit order

amount is based on the unit price that the customer actually paid instead of today's current or average cost.

---

## Enter a Credit Order

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 9.1, "Entering a Credit Order \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 9.2, "Entering a Credit Order Manually \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 9.3, "Creating a System-Generated Credit Order \(ECS\)."](#)

### 9.1 Entering a Credit Order (ECS)

You use credit orders to accept returned items from a customer and to issue credit to the customer for the returned items. Depending on how you set up credit orders, the system adds the quantities of returned items back into your inventory. Or, you can make manual adjustments to add the quantities into your inventory.

The system processes credit orders and sales orders in the same way. However, you can set up the system to automatically record negative quantities when you enter credit orders. You must set up a specific line type for credit orders to reverse the sign. A line type is a code that determines how the system processes a detail line in a sales order.

#### 9.1.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that a line type for credit orders has been set up to automatically reverse the sign (that is, change any quantity to a negative). See [Section 38.1, "Setting Up Order Line Types \(ECS\)."](#)

#### 9.1.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Defining credit order processing	To process credit orders and standard sales orders through different steps, you can set up different status codes for credit orders. Status codes define the steps in which the system must process an order.  See <a href="#">Section 39.1, "Setting Up Order Activity Rules (ECS)."</a>

Topic	Description
Tracking credit orders	<p>You can set up a separate document type for credit orders to track credits in separate general ledger accounts and to record a separate credit history. You can set up AAls to direct entries to special accounts that are based on the credit order document type.</p> <p>See <i>Work with User Defined Codes</i> in the <i>JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide</i> and <a href="#">Section 43.1, "Setting Up Automatic Accounting Instructions (ECS)."</a></p>
Using ECS advanced functionality to enter credit orders	<p>If you use Load and Delivery Management and have activated the ECS Control in Sales Order Management system constants, you must use the ECS format to enter credit orders. You complete the additional fields that the Load and Delivery Management system uses to process the credit order.</p>
Limiting additional order processing for configured items	<p>The ECS Sales Order Management system does not support credit order processing for configured items.</p>

## 9.2 Entering a Credit Order Manually (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose **Additional Order Processes**

From **Additional Order Processes (G491012)**, choose **Credit Orders**

You enter a credit order manually to record a returned item and apply either the current unit price for the item or the current average cost, depending on how your company is set up. You can also override this default pricing information. You enter credit orders in the same way you enter sales orders.

### To enter a credit order manually

On Credit Orders



Figure 9–1 Credit Orders screen

The screenshot shows the Oracle JD Edwards World Credit Orders screen (P42114). The interface includes a menu on the left with options like 'Field Sensitive Help', 'Display Error Message', and 'Exit Program'. The main area contains fields for 'Branch/Plant' (DEP011), 'Order Date' (08/10/17), 'Order Number' (9540), and 'Prev. Order' (9540 C0). There is also a table for line items with columns for Quantity, Item, UM, Unit Price, and Pr. The status bar at the bottom indicates 'F6=Summary F15=SD Header F24=More Keys Opt: 1=Detail 2=Text 9=Del'.

1. Complete the following fields:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Sold To
  - Quantity
  - Item
2. If restock charges or non-stock items are included on the return, complete the following fields:
  - Quantity
  - Item
  - Line Type

When you accept the order, the total amount of the credit appears above the first line item.

Field	Explanation
Quantity	The quantity of units affected by this transaction. <i>Form-specific information</i> For credit orders, the quantity changes to a negative amount once the order is accepted.

**See Also:**

- [Section 3.1, "Working with Interactive Sales Orders \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 47.1, "Sales Order Entry \(P4211\)."](#)

## 9.3 Creating a System-Generated Credit Order (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose **Additional Order Processes**

From **Additional Order Processes (G491012)**, choose **Credit Orders from History**

You can create a system-generated credit order for a returned item that is based on the unit price that the customer paid at the time of the sale. The system retrieves the credit information from the Sales Order Detail Ledger table (F42199).

### 9.3.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that the same status codes have been entered in the processing options for both the Sales Order Entry and Sales Order Ledger programs

#### See Also:

- Section 3.1, "Working with Interactive Sales Orders (ECS)" and Section 47.12, "Sales Ledger & Credit Orders from History (P42025)" for the processing options for this program.

#### To create a system-generated credit order

On Credit Orders from History

**Figure 9–2 Credit Orders from History screen**

The screenshot shows the 'Credit Orders from History' screen in Oracle JD Edwards World. The window title is '42025 Credit Orders from History Br'. The screen displays a form with various input fields and a table of credit orders.

**Form Fields:**

- Branch/Plant: DEPOT1
- Status: 520 Thru 600 St 1
- Date: Thru
- Date Range - Based On
- Order Number: [Empty]
- Invoice No: [Empty]
- Sold To: 581 Potomac Hotel
- Ship To: [Empty]
- Item Number: [Empty]
- Customer PO: [Empty]

**Table:**

Order	Ty	Customer	Description	Amount	Ordered	Shipped
0711	S3	Potomac Hotel	Leaded Fuel			
0711	S3	Potomac Hotel	Leaded Fuel			
0712	S3	Potomac Hotel	Leaded Fuel			
0712	S3	Potomac Hotel	Leaded Fuel			

**Footer:** Opt: 1=S.O. 5=Detail 6=Credit Memo F15=Amounts/Quantities F24=More

- Complete one or more of the following fields:

- Order Number
- Invoice Number
- Sold To
- Ship To

- Item Number
  - Customer PO
2. Choose the Credit Memo option to enter a credit order for the applicable sales order.  
The system creates a credit order with the information from the original sales order.
  3. If necessary, choose another sales order from the history information to add to this credit order.
  4. Type over, delete, or accept the default information.

### 9.3.2 Setup to Enable System-Generated Credit Orders

To generate credit orders from history the following setup is required:

- The order activity rules must be set so that at some point in the sales order process the order is written to the Sales Order History file. The most common point at which this is set is after invoices are printed. See [Chapter 39.1, "Setting Up Order Activity Rules \(ECS\)."](#)
- The following processing options need to be set on Credit Orders From History (P42025)
  - Set both option 2 and 3 to the status code that you defined in the Order Activity Rules as the point at which Sales Order History records are to be written. If you set this point at Print Invoices, enter 600 for both options
  - Option 5 can be set to 1 or blank. If it is set to 1 for Last Status then processing option 40 in the Credit version of Sales Order Entry (P4211) must also be set to 1
  - Option 11 should be set to the version of Sales Order Entry (P4211) that is to be used for credit orders
- The following processing options need to be set on the Credit Order version of Sales Order Entry (P4211)
  - Option 39 defines the status code to select when retrieving credit orders. In our example this is 600
  - Option 40 defines whether the previous status is the Last Status or the Next Status. As mentioned above, this option must be kept in synch with processing option 5 on P42025

### 9.3.3 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Retrieving the correct data	You should set the processing options for the Sales Order Entry program to use the same status codes to select records that you use when printing invoices. This ensures that the Credit Orders from History program retrieves the same data that the system used when printing invoices.

Topic	Description
<b>Retrieving load confirm invoice amounts</b>	<p>During load confirm, you can print an invoice that writes history at each step. If you use system-generated credit orders, you need to set the order activity rules as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ 565 - 573 (Delivery Confirm), set Ledger to Y</li> <li>■ 564 - 565 (Delivery Document Selection), set Ledger to N</li> <li>■ 580 - 600 (Print Invoices), set Ledger to Y</li> </ul> <p>The system writes the invoice to history during 565 - 573, so the Sales Order Ledger program retrieves the actual invoice amount for the product.</p>

---

## Additional Orders and Order Release

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 10.1, "Objectives,"](#)
- [Section 10.2, "About Additional Orders and Order Release \(ECS\)."](#)

### 10.1 Objectives

- To understand the different types of additional orders
- To enter each type of additional order
- To release held orders

### 10.2 About Additional Orders and Order Release (ECS)

The Sales Order Management system provides different orders to accommodate specific ordering situations. You enter these additional orders in the same way that you enter a basic sales order. However, the system processes each type of additional order differently. For example, quote orders are printed but not picked or load confirmed, whereas direct ship orders are not picked.

Some additional orders, such as blanket and quote orders, are prerequisites to actual sales orders. That is, you must enter these orders before you can enter sales orders from them.

Additional orders and order release consist of:

- Working with order release
- Working with quote orders
- Working with blanket orders
- Entering a direct ship order
- Entering a transfer order
- Entering an interbranch sales order
- Entering a sales order with manual invoice
- Updating status codes
- Working with service and warranty management

### 10.2.1 What Is Order Release?

You use order release to return the order to the processing cycle or to initiate the sales order process. For example, you can place a customer's order on hold for credit reasons and then release the order when the customer's credit status changes. Or, you can create sales orders from blanket orders or quote orders by releasing the blanket order or the quote order.

### 10.2.2 What Is a Quote Order?

You use a quote order when a customer requests pricing information but is not ready to commit to a sales order. You can access quote orders through the same review, maintenance, and inquiry forms that you use for sales orders. When you work with quote orders, you can:

- Instruct the system to convert an entire or partial quote order to a sales order
- Avoid committing or allocating inventory until the customer authorizes the order
- Ensure effective controls over price guarantees

### 10.2.3 What Is a Blanket Order?

You use a blanket order when a customer agrees to purchase a quantity of an item over a specified period of time. At agreed-upon times within this period, you create sales orders for partial quantities of the blanket order. You can enter a sales order directly to deduct the partial quantity from the blanket order, or you can release the blanket order.

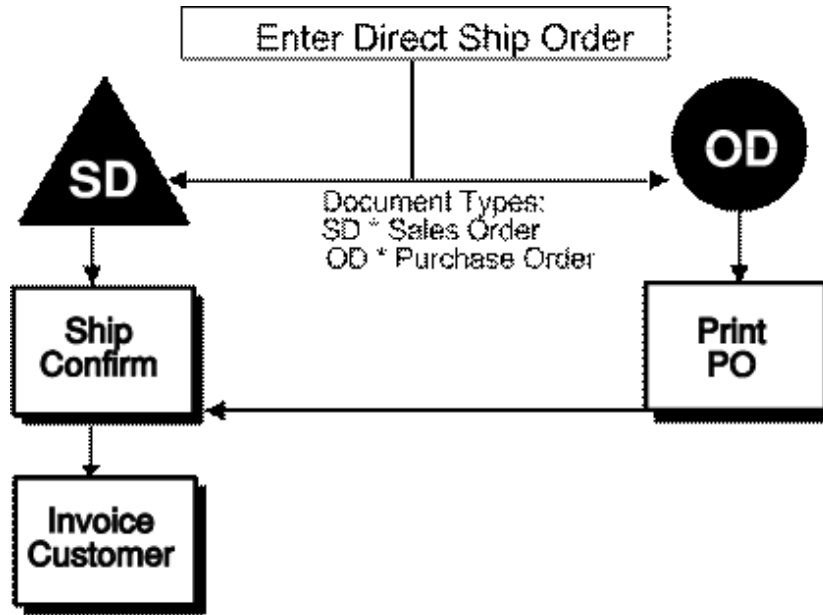
### 10.2.4 What Is a Direct Ship Order?

You use a direct ship order to record the sale of an item that you purchase from another supplier. The supplier sends the item directly to your customer. Because the supplier ships the item directly, the system does not process the order through your inventory.

This program creates records in the following tables:

- Sales Order Header (F4201)
- Sales Order Detail (F4211)
- Purchase Order Header (F4301)
- Purchase Order Detail (F4311)

After you enter a direct ship order, the system creates both a sales order and a purchase order. The following diagram illustrates how the system processes a direct ship order.

**Figure 10-1 Direct Ship Order Flow**

### 10.2.5 What Is a Transfer Order?

You enter a transfer order to transfer inventory between branch/plants within your company and to maintain an accurate on-hand inventory amount. When you enter a transfer order, the system creates both a sales order and a purchase order that you can use for internal purposes.

The program creates records in the following tables:

- Sales Order Header (F4201)
- Sales Order Detail (F4211)
- Purchase Order Header (F4301)
- Purchase Order Detail (F4311)

### 10.2.6 What Is an Interbranch Sales Order?

You enter an interbranch sales order to ship inventory from another supply branch/plant within your company directly to a customer. For example, you use an interbranch sales order when a customer orders an item from your branch/plant, but your branch/plant does not carry the item. Interbranch sales allow you to add transfer costs to be paid to the supplying branch/plant by the selling branch/plant.

### 10.2.7 What Is a Sales Order with Manual Invoice?

You enter a sales order with a manual invoice to record a sale after the sale has occurred. When you enter a sale with a manual invoice, the system records the sale and produces an invoice number for accounting purposes without requiring you to build a trip or print documents.

Entering this type of order is most useful when:

- You sell an item without a sales order or an invoice and need to record the sale. Typically, this occurs during delivery of an item when the customer purchases additional items without placing a sales order first.
- Your customer placed an order when your computer was inoperable.
- You released sales on documents from other systems, and you need to enter the sales in the ECS Sales Order Management system.



---

## Work with Order Release

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 11.1, "Working with Order Release \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 11.2, "Releasing Orders on Hold \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 11.3, "Releasing Backorders \(ECS\)."](#)

### 11.1 Working with Order Release (ECS)

You might have orders on hold for several reasons. For example, you might place orders on hold that do not meet margin requirements as well as orders for which you do not have inventory to fill. When an order is on hold, it must be released back into the processing cycle for any additional processing to take place.

The system can place an order or order line on hold if you do not have the quantity to fill the order or order line. This type of hold is a backorder. You release backorders when inventory becomes available.

**See Also:**

- [Chapter 40, "Set Up Order Hold Information."](#)

### 11.2 Releasing Orders on Hold (ECS)

**Navigation**

**From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose Additional Order Processes**

**From Additional Order Processes (G491012), choose Release Held Orders**

You release orders to return an order to the processing cycle. For example, you enter an order for a customer who has exceeded their credit limit. The system places the order on hold. When the customer makes a payment, their credit status changes and their orders can be filled. However, the system will not continue to process this customer's orders until you release them. You must have appropriate security access to release orders.

You can place the following multiple holds on an order:

- Customer holds, such as credit holds
- Item holds, such as detail lines that do not meet the margin requirements
- Order holds, such as orders that do not meet minimum amounts or exceed maximum limits

You can release items and orders for customers as many times as necessary.

### To release orders on hold

On Release Held Orders

**Figure 11–1 Release Held Orders screen**

1. To display held orders, complete the following field:
  - Branch/Plant
2. Complete any combination of the following fields:
  - Hold Code
  - Person Responsible
  - Customer Number
3. Complete the following field:
  - Password
4. Choose the Release option to release the orders.

Field	Explanation
Hold Code	<p>A user defined code (table 42/HC) that identifies why an order was placed on hold (for example, credit, budget, or margin standards were exceeded).</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Enter a specific code in the first Hold Code field to display only orders on hold for that particular reason.</p> <p>The second Hold Code field contains the hold code assigned to that line of the order.</p>
Person Responsible	<p>The address number of the person responsible for reviewing and releasing orders placed on hold.</p>

Field	Explanation
Password	A series of characters that you must enter before the system updates a table. In the Distribution systems, the password secures commissions setup and the release of held orders. Only users with access to the password can release an order. The system does not display the password on the form. You should not enter blanks anywhere in the password.

### 11.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Printing held orders	You can print the Held Sales Order report to review all sales orders that are on hold.
Releasing blanket and quote orders	You can create sales orders from blanket orders and quote orders by releasing the blanket order or the quote order.  See <a href="#">Chapter 13, "Work with Blanket Orders"</a> and <a href="#">Chapter 12, "Work with Quote Orders."</a>

### 11.2.2 Processing Options

See [Section 47.16, "Release Held Orders \(P42070\)."](#)

## 11.3 Releasing Backorders (ECS)

The system can place an order or order line on hold if you do not have the necessary quantity. This type of hold is a backorder. You release backorders when inventory becomes available.

Releasing backorders includes the following tasks:

- Releasing backorders online
- Releasing backorders in a batch

### 11.3.1 Releasing Backorders Online (ECS)

#### Navigation

From **ECS Sales Order Management (G4910)**, choose **Additional Order Processes**

From **Additional Order Processes (G491012)**, choose **Release Backorders Online**

You can use the Release Backorders - Online program to review backorder information for a specific customer, item, or order before you release a backorder.

When you display backorders for a customer or order, you must enter the quantity you want to release. When you display backorders by item, the system automatically calculates the quantity to be released based on the amount available in inventory. The oldest order is the first to be selected for release, plus any orders with a specified requested date and priority code.

#### To release backorders online

On Release Backorders - Online

**Figure 11–2 Release Backorders - Online screen**

1. Complete the following field:
  - Branch/Plant
2. Complete any combination of the following fields:
  - Item Number
  - Order Number
  - Customer Number
3. Complete the following fields:
  - Option
  - Quantity To Ship
4. Choose the option to release the order.

### 11.3.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Run Backorders to Fill report</b>	<p>You can run a DREAM Writer version of the Backorders to Fill report to review backordered items. After you have reviewed this report, you can use the Backorder Release program to review one item at a time and release those backorders that have sufficient quantities.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 7.4, "Generating Order Status Reports (ECS)."</a></p>
<b>Limiting the additional order processing</b>	<p>The Sales Order Management ECS system does not support the backorder and release for configured items.</p>

Topic	Description
Negative availability and on-hand quantity	If you specify that the system release more quantity than is available, the system generates error 2716 (Quantity exceeds available). However, since this is only a warning, you can enter through it making the availability negative. Depending on your commitment process this could subsequently allow on-hand quantities to go negative as well.
Releasing backorders when the quantity on-hand is zero	Processing option 11 allows you to specify whether a backorder is released when the quantity on-hand is zero. This option only applies in an environment where an item's availability can exceed its on-hand quantity. An example would be where purchase orders are included in the quantity available calculation in that when a purchase order is entered into the system it immediately gives an available quantity, even though it is not added to the on-hand quantity until it is received. By setting this processing option you can prevent the release of the backorder until the quantity is received.  <b>Note:</b> this processing option functions the same way in Backorder Release- Batch.
Quantity on backorder and the quantity available calculation	Processing option 6 controls whether the backordered quantity should be added back into the quantity available calculation performed by this program. In environments where soft committed quantities are subtracted from on-hand quantities this option should be set to 1 to add the backordered quantity back into the quantity available. The reason for this is that the backordered quantity is soft committed and so has already been deducted from the quantity available. By adding the backordered quantity back the program can then determine whether there really is a sufficient quantity of the item available.  <b>Note:</b> this processing option functions the same way in Backorder Release- Batch.
Import/Export	This program supports Import/Export functionality. See the <i>JD Edwards World Technical Tools Guide</i> for more information.

### 11.3.3 Processing Options

See [Section 47.17, "Release Backorders \(P42117\)."](#)

### 11.3.4 Releasing Backorders in a Batch (ECS)

#### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose **Additional Order Processes**

From **Additional Order Processes (G491012)**, choose **Release Backorders Batch**

You can run a DREAM Writer version of the Release Backorders - Batch program so the system can release backorders in batches. When inventory becomes available, the system releases backorders until the available inventory is completely committed.

The system automatically establishes the order in which backorders are filled. The system fills the quantity for the order with the earliest date first and then any orders with a specified request date and priority codes.

### 11.3.5 Processing Options

See [Section 47.18, "Release Backorders - Batch \(P42118\)."](#)



---

## Work with Quote Orders

---

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 12.1, "Working with Quote Orders \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 12.2, "Entering a Quote Order \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 12.3, "Converting a Quote Order into a Sales Order \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 12.4, "Copying a Quote Order to Create a Sales Order \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 12.5, "Releasing a Quote Order \(ECS\)."](#)

### 12.1 Working with Quote Orders (ECS)

You enter a quote order when a customer requests pricing information but is not ready to commit to a sales order. You enter quote orders to:

- Provide prices and availability on a large number of items
- Record the quantity and price quotes for future reference
- Hold the quote until the customer authorizes the order
- Collect information about the frequency of price and availability requests from customers
- Honor an obligation for a quoted price for a period of time

When the customer confirms the order, you convert the quote order into an actual sales order.

#### 12.1.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Controlling inventory commitment</b>	<p>You can set the commitment control processing option for sales order entry so that the system does not commit inventory when you create quote orders. If you set this processing option, the system ignores the Inventory Commitment preference.</p> <p>See <i>Locating Item Information and Locating Quantity Information</i> in the <i>JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide</i> for information about committing inventory.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Chapter 3, "Work with Interactive Sales Orders"</a> for information about the inventory commitment processing option.</p>



Topic	Description
Entering aggregate quote orders	For the construction industry, you can use quote orders to initiate the scale ticket process. You must use the aggregate format of the detail information form.

## 12.2 Entering a Quote Order (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Processing

From ECS Sales Order Processing (G491011), choose Quote Orders

You enter a quote order when your customer requires a formal price quote prior to actually placing an order. You enter a quote order in the same way you enter a sales order. You do not convert the quote order into a sales order until the customer confirms the order.

### To enter a quote order

On Quote Orders

**Figure 12–1 Quote Orders screen**

The screenshot shows the Oracle JD Edwards World interface for the 'Quote Orders' screen (42114). The top bar includes the Oracle logo and navigation links. The main area contains several input fields and a table. The 'Branch/Plant' is set to DEP011, 'Order Date' is 06/10/17, and 'Order Number' is 371 50. A table with columns 'Quantity', 'Item', 'Unit Price', 'Pr. Mod', 'Du', 'LOB', and 'LT' is visible. The first row of the table shows a quantity of 150, item REG, and a unit price of 6000. The screen also includes a menu on the left with options like 'Field Sensitive Help', 'Display Error Message', and 'Display Functions'.

Complete the following fields:

- Branch/Plant
- Ship To
- Quantity
- Item

### See Also:

- [Section 47.1, "Sales Order Entry \(P4211\)."](#)



## 12.3 Converting a Quote Order into a Sales Order (ECS)

When your customer requests or authorizes the actual sales order, you can convert a quote order into a sales order. You can convert a quote order in either of the following ways:

- Copy a quote order to create a sales order
- Release a quote order

Copying or releasing a quote order ensures that the sales order that you create reflects the actual quoted amount.

### 12.3.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Creating a sales order from a quote order	You must set up a user defined code for quote orders in table 40/BT and set the blanket/quote processing option in Sales Order Entry - Detail program to process quote orders and releases.
Using corresponding units of measures	To create a sales order from a blanket order, you must use the unit of measure in the original blanket order. If the units of measure in the sales order do not match the unit of measure in the blanket order, the system does not initiate blanket order release.

## 12.4 Copying a Quote Order to Create a Sales Order (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Processing

From ECS Sales Order Processing (G491011), choose Quote Orders

You can create a sales order by copying a quote order. You use this method when you want to create a sales order that reflects all or most of the items and quantities on the quote order.

### 12.4.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that the processing options for order duplication default for the Sales Order Entry program are set up to match the document type and beginning status of standard sales orders

#### To copy a quote order to create a sales order

On Quote Orders

1. Locate the quote order that you want to copy.
2. Choose the Create/Duplicate a Sales Order function to duplicate the quote order.  
The system creates a sales order with the same information on the quote order.

## 12.4.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Alternative access to quote orders	If you do not know the original quote order number, you can access the quote order through the Customer Service Inquiry. See <a href="#">Section 7.3, "Reviewing Sales Orders by Customer (ECS)."</a>
Line types for duplicate orders	When you duplicate a quote order, you cannot change the line types on the duplicate order.

## 12.5 Releasing a Quote Order (ECS)

## Navigation

**From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose Additional Order Processes**

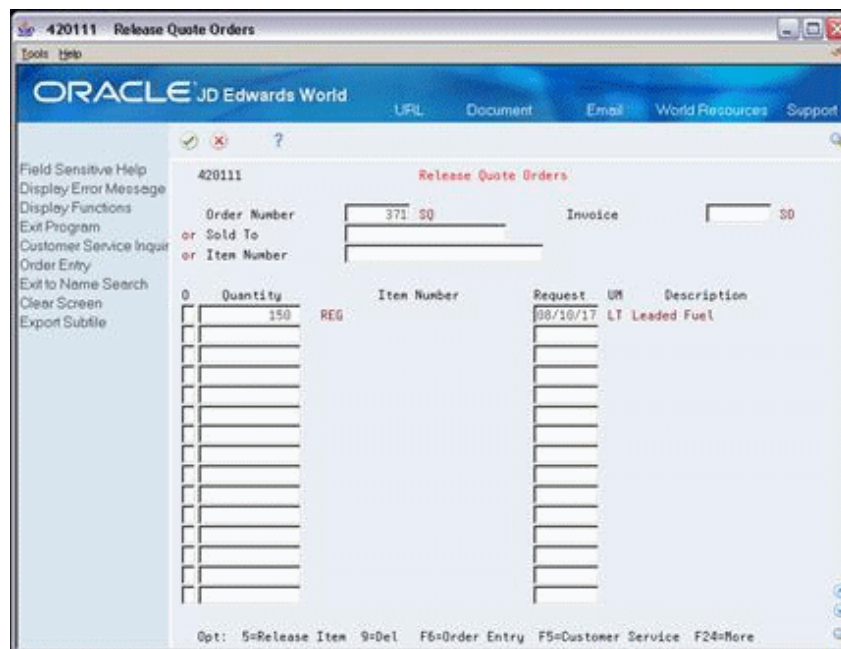
**From Additional Order Processes (G491012), choose Release Quote Orders**

You use the Release Quote Orders program to release any of the items on a quote order to create a sales order. If you release only part of the quantity or some of the items on the quote order, the system maintains the balance remaining on the original quote order. The next time you display the quote order, you will see the adjusted quantity.

## To release a quote order

## On Release Quote Orders

**Figure 12–2 Release Quote Orders screen**



1. Complete one of the following fields:
  - Order Number
  - Sold To
  - Item Number

2. Choose the quote order that you want to use to create a sales order.
3. Choose the items that you want to release to a sales order.
4. To release a different quantity than the quantity that is listed, complete the following field:
  - Quantity

### 12.5.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Releasing quote orders during sales order entry	You can release quote orders during sales order entry if you set the blanket/quote processing option for the Sales Order Entry program to run the Release Quote Orders program.
Import/Export	This program supports Import/Export functionality. See the <i>JD Edwards World Technical Tools Guide</i> guide for more information.

### 12.5.2 Processing Options

See [Section 47.19, "Order Release \(P420111\)."](#)



---

## Work with Blanket Orders

---

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 13.1, "Working with Blanket Orders \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 13.2, "Creating a Blanket Order \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 13.3, "Creating a Sales Order from a Blanket Order \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 13.4, "Entering a Sales Order from a Blanket Order \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 13.5, "Releasing a Blanket Order \(ECS\)."](#)

### 13.1 Working with Blanket Orders (ECS)

You use a blanket order when a customer agrees to purchase a quantity of an item over a specified period of time. At agreed-upon times, you create sales orders for partial quantities of the blanket order.

You can enter a sales order directly to deduct the partial quantity from the blanket order, or you can release the blanket order. You can view the original quantity ordered on the blanket order, the associated release orders, and the remaining quantity.

#### 13.1.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Controlling inventory commitment	<p>You can set the commitment control processing option for sales order entry so that the system does not commit inventory when you create blanket orders. If you set this processing option, the system ignores the Inventory Commitment preference.</p> <p>See <i>Locating Item Information and Locating Quantity Information</i> in the <i>JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide</i> for information about committing inventory.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Chapter 3, "Work with Interactive Sales Orders"</a> for information about the inventory commitment processing option.</p>

### 13.2 Creating a Blanket Order (ECS)

#### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Processing

From ECS Sales Order Processing (G491011), choose Blanket Orders

You use a blanket order when a customer agrees to purchase a quantity of an item over a specified period of time. You can enter the blanket order as one line with a requested date that reflects the last day of the agreement. At agreed-upon times, you create sales orders for partial quantities of the blanket order.

### To create a blanket order

On Blanket Orders

**Figure 13–1** Blanket Orders screen

Complete the following fields:

- Branch/Plant
- Ship To
- Quantity
- Item

#### See Also:

- [Section 3.1, "Working with Interactive Sales Orders \(ECS\)."](#)

## 13.3 Creating a Sales Order from a Blanket Order (ECS)

On the agreed-upon date, you can enter a sales order directly to deduct the partial quantity from the blanket order. The system maintains the remaining balance on the blanket order for future orders.

You can create a sales order from a blanket order in the following ways:

- Enter a sales order from a blanket order
- Release a blanket order

When you enter a sales order, the system automatically deducts the quantity from the blanket order. When you release a blanket order, you manually deduct the quantity from the blanket order.

### 13.3.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that a blanket order has been created for the customer and item

### 13.3.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
If order quantity exceeds blanket quantity	If your order quantity exceeds the quantity available on the blanket order, the system splits the sales order line and inputs the excess quantity on another line. If the blanket order price is different from the regular selling price, the system prices the two order lines accordingly.

## 13.4 Entering a Sales Order from a Blanket Order (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Processing

From ECS Sales Order Processing (G491011), choose Enter Orders (Page Mode)

When the agreed-upon time arrives to deliver a quantity of the items specified on the blanket order, you create a sales order to deduct the quantity from the blanket order. The system maintains the balance remaining on the blanket order for future orders.

You enter a sales order to deduct a quantity from a blanket order:

- If you create blanket orders as one of your tasks during basic sales order entry
- If your customer wants to add items to the sales order in addition to those listed on the blanket order

### 13.4.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that the processing options for the Sales Order Entry program are set for automatic blanket order processing

#### To enter a sales order from a blanket order

On Sales Order Entry

1. Complete the following fields:

- Branch/Plant
- Sold To
- Ship To
- Quantity
- Item

The system displays the Blanket Release with the quantity that you entered. The Open Quantity field shows the amount of product remaining on the blanket order.

**Figure 13–2 Blanket Release screen**

40216 Blanket Release

Functions Options Tools Help

Order Type

Address Number 500 Gas Station#  
Item Number REQ Leaded Fuel  
Quantity Ordered 100 LT

Quantity	Unit	Open Quantity	Unit Price	Order	Ty	Line
	LT	1000	.0500	617 SQ		1.000
	LT	150	.0000	371 SQ		1.000

2. On Blanket Release, accept or change the following field:
  - Quantity

The system closes the Blanket Release.
3. Add additional line items to the sales order, if necessary.

## 13.4.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Multiple blanket orders</b>	If you have more than one blanket order for the same customer and item, all blanket orders appear in the Blanket Release. The Quantity fields do not contain values because the system doesn't know which blanket order to use. Type the quantity next to the appropriate blanket order.
<b>Creating a sales order from a blanket order</b>	You must set up a user defined code for blanket orders in table 40/BT and set the blanket/quote processing option in Sales Order Entry - Detail program to process blanket orders and releases. If there is an outstanding blanket order for a customer, the Blanket Order Release form automatically appears when you enter the customer's address book number in the sales order entry form.
<b>Using corresponding units of measures</b>	To create a sales order from a blanket order, you must use the unit of measure in the original blanket order. If the units of measure in the sales order does not match the unit of measure in the blanket order, the system does not initiate blanket order release.
<b>Kits and blanket orders</b>	If an item on the blanket order is a kit you can select it like a non-kit item. However, you will not see the components on the kit selection window (V40216) since the component quantities may not be changed at this point.

### See Also:

- [Section 3.1, "Working with Interactive Sales Orders \(ECS\)."](#)





## 13.5.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Releasing blanket orders by related addresses	You can release a blanket order by the Ship To or the Sold To address.
Kits and blanket orders	If an item that is released from the blanket order is a kit, you do not see the kit selection window since the component quantities may not be changed at this point. If the processing option is set to show the components of the kit, the quantities may be updated on the release program.
Import/Export	This program supports Import/Export functionality. See <i>JD Edwards World Technical Tools Guide</i> for more information.
UDC 40/BT	This UDC table updates the system regarding commitment values for blanket orders. Typically, availability is not checked for these orders but they do show in the Other quantity 1 & 2 buckets in detailed availability. If the order type is populated, the system updates the commitments when the blanket is released.

**See Also:**

- [Section 47.19, "Order Release \(P420111\)"](#) for the processing options for this program.

---

## Enter a Transfer Order

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 14.1, "Entering a Transfer Order \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 14.2, "Setting up Transfer Orders."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Processing

From ECS Sales Order Processing (G491011), choose Transfer Orders

## 14.1 Entering a Transfer Order (ECS)

You enter a transfer order to ship inventory between branch/plants within your company and to maintain an accurate on-hand inventory amount. The Transfer Orders program does the following:

- Creates a purchase order for the shipping (ship from) location, which represents the supplier
- Creates a sales order for the receiving (ship to) location, which represents the customer
- Processes the inventory amounts on the transfer order as a formal purchase and sale of goods
- Creates documents, such as invoices, that are necessary to complete the transfer

The default document types assigned in the processing options of the Transfer Orders program (P4242) are ST for the sales order and OT for the Purchase order. Because of this a transfer order is often referred to as an ST/OT.

### 14.1.1 Sales Order

By processing the sales order through Shipment Confirmation and Sales Update, the on-hand quantity for the shipping location is decremented and journal entries are written to reflect this reduced inventory and the increased amount in the Inventory Intransit account. Entries may also be written to the Interbranch Revenue and the Cost of Goods Sold accounts.

### 14.1.2 Purchase Order

By processing the purchase order through Receipts and Voucher Match, the on-hand quantity for the receiving location is incremented and journal entries are written to

reflect this increased inventory and the reduced amount in the Inventory Intransit account. The Inventory Intransit account then nets to zero.

### 14.1.3 Costs

When transferring inventory from one branch to another, each item is usually transferred at its cost. Since the cost of an item may be different within each branch, the cost used for the transfer order is taken from the shipping branch. There may be a markup on the transfer that is defined by the shipping branch in the branch sales markup table. See [Section 42.1, "Setting Up Branch Sales Markups \(ECS\)."](#)

## 14.2 Setting up Transfer Orders

Verify that the following set up is in place before calling the transfer orders program:

- Branch/Plant Constants. Each Branch/Plant must have a valid address book number defined in the Branch/Plant Constants file
- Customer Billing Instructions. The Sold-to Address on the sales order comes from Customer Billing Instructions of the receiving branch
- Order Line Types. The Line Type used for an order transfer must be set up as follows:
  - GL Interface set to Y
  - Inventory Interface set to Y
  - A/R Interface set to Y. This must not be set to N since it causes an out of balance batch to be created. To bypass A/R, use the processing option on Sales Update to turn off the A/R interface
  - The A/P Interface flag can be set to either Y or N since it does not influence whether an Accounts Payable Ledger record is written or not
- Order Activity Rules. These must be set up for both combinations of order type/line type for Sales Order and Purchase Order Entry. Invoices are not normally printed for transfer orders, so this step may be eliminated for Sales Order Processing for an ST order type
- Transfer Orders Processing Options (P4242). Ensure that the appropriate line type and order types are defaulted into the program. If a markup is to be applied ensure that processing option 34 is set:
  - Enter 1 to use the cost plus any transfer cost markups for the sales order price
  - Enter 2 to use the Base Price file (F4106)
  - If left blank, the cost alone is used to price sales order lines
- Sales Update Processing Options (P42800). It is recommended that a special version of Sales Update be created for transfer orders. If you are not printing invoices then this should be copied from the Assign Invoice No. Final version. Do not change the data sequencing and ensure that the processing options for A/R Invoice date (2) and General Ledger date (4) are not set to 1
- Branch Sales Markup Table. To apply a cost markup to an item when creating a transfer order, the Branch Sales Markup table must be set up on menu G4241 and processing option 34 set appropriately for the Transfer Orders program

## 14.2.1 AAI Setup for Transfer Orders

AAI's need a special setup to get the correct account distribution when processing a transfer order. First, as a reference we look at the standard AAI setup and accounting entries for sales and purchase orders, then we look at the setup required when using transfer orders.

### Standard AAI setup for Sales and Purchasing

#### Sales:

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4230	Revenue		\$XXX
RC	Accounts Receivable	\$XXX	
4240	Inventory		\$XXX
4220	Cost Of Goods Sold	\$XXX	

#### Purchasing Receipts:

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4310	Inventory	\$XXX	
4320	Received Not Vouchered		\$XXX

#### Voucher Match:

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4320	Received Not Vouchered	\$XXX	
PC	Trade Payable		\$XXX

Now look at the AAI setup and accounting entries for a transfer order. These can differ depending on whether the item is transferred at cost or is transferred at cost plus a markup. For this example, bypassing A/R by setting processing option 14 of Update Customer Sales (P42800).

### AAI Setup for Transferring Inventory at Cost

If the item is transferred at cost, then Revenue, Accounts Receivable, and Cost of Goods Sold may not apply. AAIs for Revenue (4230) and Accounts Receivable Trade (4245) can be netted against each other as shown below. Inventory is credited (reduced) and Inventory Intransit is debited (increased) using the Inventory (4240) and Cost of Goods Sold (4220) AAI's. With A/R bypassed the system uses AAI 4245 (AR Trade) instead of the RC AAI, and creates a batch type of G. No Account Receivable Ledger record (F0311) is created.

**Sales - Shipping branch:**

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4230	Direct this revenue AAI and the A/R Trade AAI (4245) to the same Suspense account		\$100
4245	Direct this AR Trade AAI to the same Suspense account as 4230 above	\$100	
4240	Inventory		\$100
4220	Direct this Cost Of Goods Sold AAI to the Inventory Intransit account	\$100	

Depending on whether a voucher match is performed with the receipt or not, the Purchasing AAI's need to be set up differently:

Purchasing - Receiving branch when voucher match is performed.

For the receiving branch, a receipt is processed at the time the goods are physically received. Inventory is debited (increased) and Received Not Vouchered (temporary liability) is credited (increased).

**Purchasing Receipts:**

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4310	Inventory	\$100	
4320	Received Not Vouchered		\$100

Assuming that this transfer does not have to be paid for, the Received Not Vouchered entry must be offset. This can be done by adding a line to the Purchase Order in the Voucher Match program (P4314). The new line should reverse the original line with the Item/Account entry being changed from the item number to the account number of the Inventory Intransit account.

After both lines are voucher matched, there is zero dollar Accounts Payable Ledger record (F0411) created. The Trade Payable account nets to zero, whilst the credit to the Inventory Intransit account from the added expense line offsets the debit created to this account by Sales Update.

**Voucher Match:**

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4230	Received Not Vouchered	\$100	
PC	Trade Payable		\$100
	Added Negative Line		

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
(none)	Inventory Intransit		\$100
PC	Trade Payable	\$100	

Purchasing - Receiving branch when voucher match is not performed.

If a voucher match is not performed after receipt, the Received Not Vouchered AAI can be directed to the Inventory Intransit account at the time of receipt, offsetting the debit entry to the Inventory Intransit account created at Sales Update by AAI 4220.

#### Purchasing Receipts:

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4310	Inventory	\$100	
4320	Inventory Intransit		\$100

With this setup, the accounting resolves satisfactorily, however the receipt creates a match type 1 record on the Purchase Order Receiver file (F43121) which shows up in open receipts. To exclude this record from further processing, set its Match Type to 5 using either World Writer or some other data file utility.

#### AAI setup for Transferring Inventory at Cost Plus

The shipping branch may want to charge the receiving branch a fee for transferring the inventory, in this example 10% of \$100. This can be done by updating the branch sales markup table and setting the appropriate processing option on Transfer Orders (P4242). Since the shipping branch may want to hit the Interbranch Revenue and Cost of Goods Sold accounts, the AAI's in Sales Order must be setup accordingly.

#### Sales - Shipping branch:

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4230	Interbranch Revenue		\$110
4220	Cost of Goods Sold	\$100	
4240	Inventory		\$100
4245	Direct this A/R Trade AAI to the Inventory Intransit account	\$110	

#### Purchasing Receipts:

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4310	Inventory	\$110	
4320	Received Not Vouchered		\$110

**Voucher Match:**

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4320	Received Not Vouchered	\$110	
PC	Trade Payable		\$110
	Added Negative Line		
(none)	Inventory Intransit		\$110
PC	Trade Payable	\$110	

If the voucher match process is not being performed, use the same process as described above in the 'at cost' section.

## 14.2.2 Before You Begin

- Verify that the locations are valid business units in the Branch/Plant Constants table (F41001). See [Chapter 36, "Set Up Constants."](#)

### To enter a transfer order

On Transfer Orders

**Figure 14–1** *Transfer Orders screen*

Complete the following fields:

- Ship From Branch
- Ship To Branch
- Quantity
- Item Number



### 14.2.3 Changes to a Transfer Sales Order or Purchase Order

The sales order and purchase order created from a transfer order are connected by the Related Order Number, Related Order Type, and Related Line Number fields in both the Sales Order and Purchase Order files. This is a "one-way" connection in that changes to the sales order are reflected on the purchase order whereas changes to the purchase order are not reflected on the sales order. More specifically:

- Changes made to existing lines on the sales order with Transfer Orders (P4242) or Enter Orders (P4211) are reflected on the purchase order.
- Changes made to existing lines on the purchase order with Transfer Orders (P4242) or Change Orders (P43111) are not reflected on the sales order.
- Lines added to the sales order with Transfer Orders (P4242) are added to the purchase order.
- Lines added to the sales order with Enter Orders (P4211) are not added to the purchase order.
- Lines on the sales order that are split at Shipment Confirmation are also split on the purchase order.

### 14.2.4 Receipt Routing

Receipt routing can be used to track inventory that is in transit from one branch to another. After the branch processing the sales order has shipped the goods, they are ready for receipt at the receiving branch where they can be processed with Enter Receipts by PO or Item (P4312). The goods can be tracked in a receipt routing operation (TRAN) before they are physically entered into stock (STK). When the receipt batch is posted, the appropriate journal entries are written.

Receipt routing can be initiated through processing options in the Shipment Confirmation program.

### 14.2.5 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Entering kit items	You cannot enter kit item information on a transfer order. To enter orders for kits, you must use the basic sales order entry or purchase order entry process.
Changing both sales and purchase orders	To change information on a transfer order, you must revise both the sales order and purchase order that the system creates when you enter the transfer order. Because the system processes sales orders and purchase orders differently, you must change these orders individually to reflect any changes to the transfer order.
Using ECS advanced functionality to enter transfer orders	If you use Load and Delivery Management and have activated ECS Control in Sales Order Management system constants, you must use the ECS format to enter transfer orders. You complete the additional fields that the Load and Delivery Management system uses to process the transfer order.

Topic	Description
Entering an agreement number	<p>To automatically find an agreement number, you can access the Agreement Search program from the agreement number field in the detail area. You must be in the ECS format to access this additional field.</p> <p>If an agreement is assigned to a detail line, the system performs agreement processing.</p> <p>See About Agreement Management Processing in the <i>JD Edwards World Agreement Management Guide</i>.</p>
Entering configured items (Release A9.3 Update)	The Sales Order Management system does not support transfer order processing for configured items.
Creating sales and purchase order records	<p>The program creates records in the following tables:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales Order Header (F4201)</li> <li>■ Sales Order Detail (F4211)</li> <li>■ Purchase Order Header (F4301)</li> <li>■ Purchase Order Detail (P4311)</li> <li>■ Sales Order Detail - Tag File (F49211)</li> </ul>
Transferring inventory	<p>Use the Transfers program in Inventory Management for inventory purposes only because:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ It does not create sales or purchase order documents</li> <li>■ It records inventory transfers immediately</li> </ul> <p>It does not provide an adequate trail for transferring sales and purchase orders</p>
Cost differences between branches	<p>If items are stored within a branch in multiple locations with different costs, this could cause a problem with transfer orders if the item is soft committed at the time of transfer order entry. The cost at order entry is the cost stored at the primary location. When the item is hard committed, either at pick slip or ship confirm, and the cost is different within the location it is allocated to, the sales order is changed to reflect the different cost but the purchase order is not. If this happens, the purchase order needs to be changed manually. If it is not changed, the Inventory Intransit Account does not net to zero.</p> <p>If the costing method is average cost, and at the time of ship confirm the average cost has changed, the sales order now reflects the new average cost. The purchase order retains the original cost. This also causes a problem with the Intransit Inventory account not netting to zero unless the Purchase Order is manually changed.</p> <p>A manual override of a cost at the time the Transfer Order is entered will prevent either of the above problems.</p>

Topic	Description
Identifying transfer sales and purchase orders	<p>The system can use the following fields to identify sales orders and purchase orders that it creates when you enter a transfer order:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Document Type. The sales order associated with a transfer order has document type ST. The purchase order associated with a transfer order has document type OT.</li> <li>■ Document Number. The sales order and purchase order can share the same document number. You can set up your system to automatically assign the same next number to both the sales order and purchase order.</li> <li>■ Line number. The system assigns the same line number on both the purchase order and the sales order.</li> </ul> <p>See also Set Up Next Numbers in the <i>JD Edwards World General Accounting I Guide</i>.</p>
Import/Export	<p>This program supports Import/Export functionality. See <i>JD Edwards World Technical Tools Guide</i> guide for more information.</p>
Trip with Partial Quantity	<p>When partial quantities of a transfer order line are assigned to different trips, the system splits the original sales order line to accommodate each trip. In turn, the related purchase order line is also split to maintain a one to one relationship between the sales and purchase order lines.</p>

## 14.2.6 Processing Options

See [Section 47.21, "Transfer Order Entry \(P4242\)."](#)



---

## Enter a Direct Ship Order

This chapter contains the topic:

- [Section 15.1, "Entering a Direct Ship Order \(ECS\)."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Processing

From ECS Sales Order Processing (G491011), choose Direct Ship Orders

## 15.1 Entering a Direct Ship Order (ECS)

You enter a direct ship order to record the sale of an item that you purchase from a vendor who then sends the item directly to your customer. The quantity and item information does not impact your inventory when you enter a direct ship order.

When you enter a direct ship order, the system simultaneously creates a sales order for the customer and a purchase order for the supplier. The purchase order specifies that you want to ship the item directly to your customer.

When you enter a direct ship order, the system simultaneously creates a sales order for the customer and a purchase order for the supplier. The purchase order specifies that you want the supplier to ship the item directly to your customer. The sales order and purchase order created by this process are associated to each other by the Related Order fields on the Sales Order Detail file (F4211) and the Purchase Order Detail file (F4311). To view these fields on the sales order take option 1 from a detail line in Sales Order Entry (P42111). In the case of the purchase order, you can view the fields in the fold section (F4) of Enter Purchase Orders (P43111).

### To enter a direct ship order

On Direct Ship Orders

**Figure 15–1 Direct Ship Orders screen**

Complete the following fields:

- Branch/plant
- Sold To
- Ship To
- Vendor Number
- Quantity
- Item Number

### 15.1.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Entering kit items	You cannot enter kit item information on a direct ship order. To enter orders for kits, you must use the basic sales order entry or purchase order entry process.
Entering non-stock items	If you enter a non-stock item, such as a miscellaneous charge, you must provide the price per item. The system calculates the extended price.
Line type	<p>The line type for direct ship orders is always D. When you enter a direct ship order, the system verifies the item number and checks the Item Branch table (F4102) for the cost and price information. However, the system does not:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create commitments</li> <li>■ Perform availability checks</li> </ul>

Topic	Description
Identifying direct ship sales and purchase orders	<p>The system can use the following fields to identify the sales orders and purchase orders that it creates when you enter a direct ship order:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Document Type. The sales order associated with a direct ship order has document type SD. The purchase order associated with a direct ship order has document type OD.</li> <li>■ Document Number. The sales order and purchase order can share the same document number. You can set up your system to automatically assign the same next number to both the sales order and purchase order.</li> <li>■ Line number. The system assigns the same line number on both the purchase order and the sales order.</li> </ul> <p>See Set Up Next Numbers in the <i>JD Edwards World General Accounting I Guide</i>.</p>
Using ECS advanced functionality to enter direct ship orders	<p>If you use Load and Delivery Management and have activated the ECS Control in Sales Order Management system constants, you must use the ECS format to enter direct ship orders. You complete the additional fields that the Load and Delivery Management system uses to process the direct ship order.</p>
Entering an agreement number	<p>You must be in the ECS format to access this additional field. If you enter a customer and item combination that matches an agreement number, the system enters the agreement. If the customer and item combination matches multiple agreements from which you can choose the appropriate agreement.</p> <p>If an agreement is assigned to a detail line, the system performs agreement processing.</p> <p>See About Agreement Management Processing in the <i>JD Edwards World Agreement Management Guide</i>.</p>
Entering the Mark-For address	<p>You can not enter a Mark-For address when you enter direct ship orders. After you enter the direct ship order, you can access the sales order header information to enter additional information.</p>
Entering configured items	<p>You cannot enter configured items on a direct ship order.</p> <p>See Work with Configured Item Sales Orders in the <i>JD Edwards World Configuration Management Guide</i>.</p>
Entering kit items	<p>You cannot enter kit information on a direct ship order. To enter an order for kits, use the regular sales or purchase order entry programs to process kits.</p>
Changing associated sales orders and purchase orders	<p>The sales order and purchase order are associated by specific fields. On the Order Detail Information form and the Purchase Order Detail form, these fields are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Related Order Number</li> <li>■ Related Order Type</li> <li>■ Related Order Line Number</li> </ul> <p>Changes made to direct ship sales and purchase orders should be made through the Direct Ship Orders program (P4243). Changes made to the sales order updates the purchase order, but changes made to the purchase order do not update the sales order.</p> <p>You can have the Enter Receipts by PO program (P4312) update the status of the sales order line upon full receipt of a direct ship purchase order line. The sales order line status is not updated if the purchase order line is partially received.</p>

Topic	Description
<b>Creating sales and purchase order records</b>	The program creates records in the following tables: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales Order Header (F4201)</li> <li>■ Sales Order Detail (F4211)</li> <li>■ Purchase Order Header (F4301)</li> <li>■ Purchase Order Detail (F4311)</li> </ul>
<b>Associated text</b>	Associated text must be entered separately on the sales order and/or purchase order.
<b>Kits and configured items</b>	You cannot enter kit or configured items on a direct ship order. To enter an order for kits, use the regular sales or purchase order entry program.
<b>Two way matching</b>	You can do a two way match for the purchase order since you are not updating inventory quantities.
<b>AAI's</b>	The AAI's hit on direct ship orders are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales: Revenue (4230), Cost of Goods Sold (4220), Inventory (4240), and A/R Trade.</li> <li>■ Purchasing: Inventory (4310) and A/P Trade (PC).</li> </ul>
<b>Partial shipments</b>	The recommended method for dealing with a partial shipment on a direct ship order, is to ship confirm the sales order before receiving against the purchase order. Also verify that processing option 16 behind Confirm Shipments (P4205) is blank, ensuring that the Ship-to address cannot be overridden. For example, if a supplier partially ships half of an order and invoices you for the half, you should ship confirm the partial order and invoice your customer. Then you should partially receive the purchase order. When the supplier ships the remaining quantity on the order to the customer, ship confirm the remaining portion of the order, invoice the customer for the quantity confirmed and finally receive the remaining quantity on the purchase order.
<b>Import/Export</b>	This program supports Import/Export functionality. See <i>JD Edwards World Technical Tools Guide</i> for more information.

## 15.1.2 Processing Options

See [Section 47.20, "Direct Ship Order Entry \(P4243\)."](#)



---

## Enter an Interbranch Sales Order

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 16.1, "Entering an Interbranch Sales Order \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 16.2, "Applying Markup Costs for Interbranch Sales \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 16.3, "Printing an Interbranch Invoice,"](#)
- [Section 16.4, "Updating Interbranch Sales Information,"](#)
- [Section 16.5, "Consignment Sales."](#)

### Navigation

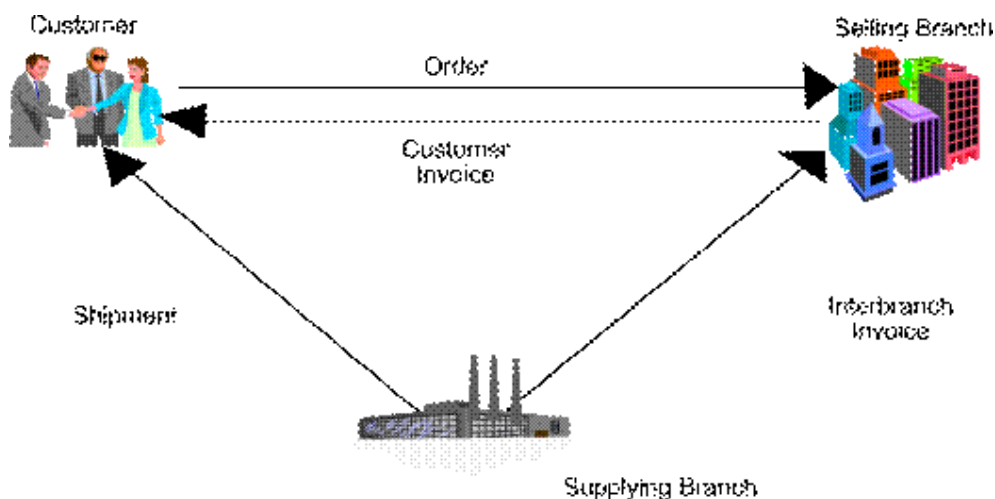
From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Processing

From ECS Sales Order Processing (G491011), choose Enter Orders (Page Mode)

## 16.1 Entering an Interbranch Sales Order (ECS)

You enter an interbranch sales order to ship inventory from another supply branch/plant within your company directly to a customer. For example, you use an interbranch sales order when a customer orders an item from your branch/plant, but your branch/plant does not carry the item. Or, you regularly sell from one location but fill and ship the orders from another location, such as a central supply warehouse.

**Figure 16–1** *Interbranch Sales Order*



Before you enter interbranch sales, you must create a specific document type for interbranch sales orders. You must also set the processing options for the Sales Order Entry program to process interbranch sales.

The system processes interbranch sales orders in the same way as other sales orders with the following exceptions:

- During invoice processing, the system prints an invoice for the customer. You have the option to print an interbranch invoice for the selling branch/plant
- During sales update, you can choose to have the system perform one of the following:
  - Create accounts payable and accounts receivable journal entries for the selling branch/plant and accounts receivable entries for the supplying branch/plant
  - Create accounts receivable entries only for the selling branch/plant

Choose a pricing method for the supplying branch/plant to use for interbranch orders in the same way as other sales orders. For example, the supplying branch/plant can charge a transfer price or a cost markup to the selling branch/plant.

The transfer price can be any price that is set by the supplying branch/plant. The cost markup price is a specific price that you set up in the Branch Sales Markup table. This markup is applied to the inventory cost.

Specify the pricing method to use in a processing option in the Sales Order Entry program.

The system retrieves payment terms and payment instrument information for the selling branch/plant and the customer from the Customer Master table. You can override payment information for the customer and the branch/plant.

The system also retrieves exchange rate information from the currency code that is set up in Customer Master table for the supplying branch/plant to the selling branch/plant and the selling branch/plant to the customer. You can override the currency information for the customer, which is helpful if you process international sales orders in different currencies.

## 16.2 Applying Markup Costs for Interbranch Sales (ECS)

Typically, companies apply transfer costs to interbranch sales. You set up transfer costs in the Branch Sales Markup tables so that the branch/plant placing the order (the demand branch/plant) pays a markup amount to the supplying branch/plant.

### **Example: Applying Markup Costs for Interbranch Sales**

The following example illustrates the accounting entries for an interbranch sales transaction entered in branch/plant 40 and shipped from branch/plant 30.

Assume the following information for the example:

- Demand branch/plant number = 40
- Supply branch/plant number = 30
- Item Cost = 1000.00 (cost to the supplying branch/plant)
- Transfer Cost = 50.00 (add-on cost to the demand branch/plant)
- Sales Price = 1500.00 (price paid by the customer)

Activity	Description
Sale of goods	<p>The system records the sale of goods from the supply branch/plant (30) to the demand branch/plant (40) with the following accounting entries:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Debit branch/plant 40 Inventory Account for 1050.00</li> <li>■ Credit branch/plant 30 Revenue Account for 1050.00</li> </ul>
Relieve inventory	<p>The system makes the following accounting entries to record the relieved inventory and increased cost of goods sold (COGS) for the supplying branch/plant:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Debit branch/plant 30 COGS Account for 1000.00</li> <li>■ Credit branch/plant 30 Inventory Account for 1000.00</li> <li>■ Debit branch/plant 40 COGS Account for 1050.00</li> <li>■ Credit branch/plant 40 Inventory Account for 1050.00</li> </ul>
Sale to customer	<p>The system records the sale to the customer with the following accounting entries:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Debit branch/plant 40 Accounts Receivable Account for 1500.00</li> <li>■ Credit branch/plant 40 Revenue Account for 1500.00</li> </ul>

### 16.2.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that a user defined code for the interbranch sales order document type has been set up in the user defined code table. See *Work with User Defined Codes in the JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.
- Verify that the processing options for the Sales Order Entry program have been set up to process interbranch sales orders.
- Verify that the Branch Sales Markups tables are set up. See [Section 42.1, "Setting Up Branch Sales Markups \(ECS\)."](#)

#### To enter an interbranch sales order

You can use an interbranch order to fill a sales order from a branch/plant other than the selling branch/plant. This is helpful if your company sells from one location but fills and ships orders from another location, such as a central supply warehouse.

The processing options specific to Interbranch Orders, appear under the heading Transfer Price Update on Enter Orders (Page Mode) P4211.

- Processing option 61 is used to designate special document types for interbranch orders. Typically SI is used for this purpose. You must use one of the special document types for interbranch orders when entering an interbranch sales order
- Processing option 62 is used to specify the pricing method used on the order. It can either be set to 1 for Branch cost markup which is the default or 2 for Transfer price. This setting determines the cost of the item, which is explained in the Cost and Price section below
- Processing option 63 tells the program whether inter-branch invoicing is allowed. By setting this to 1 you ensure that you can create an invoice from the supplying branch to the selling branch

On Sales Order Entry

The screenshot shows the Oracle JD Edwards World application window titled "42114 Sales Order Entry". The interface includes a menu bar at the top with options like Tools and Help. Below the title bar is a navigation area with icons for various functions. The main workspace is divided into several sections:

- Field Sensitive Help**: A vertical list of help topics on the left side.
- Form Header**: Contains fields for "42114 Sales Order Entry", "Branch/Plant" (DEPT01), "Order Date" (08/10/17), "Cancel Date.", "Order Number" (113105), and "Prev. Order" (113105).
- Action Code**: A field containing "R".
- Sold To**: Two entries for "Gas Station# 500".
- Ship To**: One entry for "Gas Station# 500".
- Requested**: Field containing "08/10/17".
- Customer PO**: An empty field.
- Detail Br/Plt.**: Field containing "DEPT01".
- Amount**: Field showing "95.00".
- Skip To Line**: Field showing "F \*\*\*\*".
- Table**: A grid with columns: Quantity, Item, UM, Unit Price, Pr, Mod, Du, LOB, LT, O. It contains one row with Quantity "100", Item "REG", and Unit Price ".9500".
- Footer**: Navigation keys "F6=Summary F15=SD Header F24=More Keys" and printer settings "Opt: 1=Detail 2=Text 9=Del".

1. Complete the following fields:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Document Type
  - Sold To
  - Ship To
  - Detail Branch/Plant
  - Quantity
  - Item
2. Access the fold area to fill the order from more than one supplying branch/plant.

**Figure 16–3 Sales Order Entry (Fold Area) screen**

**42114 Sales Order Entry**

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

Branch/Plant: DEPOT1  
Order Date: 08/10/17  
Cancel Date:  
Order Number: 113105 SI  
Prev. Order: 113105 SI

Action Code: R  
Sold To: 500 Gas StationA  
Ship To: 500 Gas StationA  
Requested: 08/10/17  
Customer PO:  
Detail Br/Plt.: DEPOT1

Amount: 95.00  
Skip To Line: F

\*\*\*\* Enter 'Y' to Record Order \*\*\*\*

Quantity	Item	UM	Unit Price	Pr	Mod	Du	LOB	LT	0
100	REG	LT	95.00	LT					
100	S		95.00						
	Ext. Price		95.00						
	Branch/Plant		DEPOT2						
	Acct Br/Pl		DEPOT1						

Loan/Bru: DEPOT1  
Pay Terms: Adj Schedule: ECS  
Pay Instr: Print Msg: 520 / 540  
Taxable: Y Stat(L/N):  
Price Codes: Line Number: 1.000  
Desc 1: Leaded Fuel

Location: Lot:  
Requested: 08/10/17  
Pick: 08/10/17  
Sched Load: 08/10/17  
Delivery: 08/10/17

F6=Summary F15=SD Header F24=More Keys Opt: 1=Detail 2=Text 9=Del

3. Complete the following field:

- Branch/Plant

## 16.2.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Interbranch sales by line item	If the customer orders more than one item, not all items need to be shipped as interbranch sales. You can enter a supply branch/plant for a line that is different from the detail branch/plant for the other lines on the order.
Creating an interbranch version of a sales order	<p>If you use interbranch sales often, you can create a separate version of the Sales Order Entry program to use only for interbranch sales order entry. To do so:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create the separate version</li> <li>■ Set up a default document type, for example, SI (Sales Interbranch), for the Document Type field</li> <li>■ Specify the document type for interbranch sales orders in the processing options for the Enter Orders (Page Mode) program</li> <li>■ Specify different order activity rules and a different line type default</li> </ul>

Topic	Description
<b>Price and Cost</b>	<p>Price and cost information is retrieved differently for interbranch orders than for other sales orders in P4211. For an interbranch order, the price information is retrieved from the Base Price file (F4106) using the selling branch (header branch).</p> <p>Processing option 62 determines the pricing method used to calculate the cost.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ For Branch cost markup, the cost is retrieved from the Cost file (F4105) using the supplying branch (detail branch). A markup is applied if it has been setup in the Branch Sales Markups program (P3403). This value becomes the Cost of Goods Sold amount to the selling branch</li> <li>■ For Transfer pricing, the program retrieves the price of the item from the Base Price file (F4106) of the supplying branch, and places that value in the unit cost field of the interbranch order. In other words, the selling branch "buys" the goods from the supplying branch at the same price that would be charged to outside customers of the supplying branch</li> </ul>
<b>Transfer Pricing Flag</b>	<p>The Inter Branch Sales field SO01 on the Sales Order Detail file (F4211) is also known as the Transfer Pricing Flag. It is updated with either 1,2,3 or 4 depending on the cost method used and whether an interbranch invoice is created as defined in processing option 63:</p> <p>1 – Transfer pricing method - Cost markup Interbranch invoice - No</p> <p>2 – Transfer pricing method - Cost markup Interbranch invoice - Yes</p> <p>3 – Transfer pricing method - Transfer pricing Interbranch invoice - No</p> <p>4 – Transfer pricing method - Transfer pricing Interbranch invoice - Yes</p>
<b>Updating price, cost, and exchange rate information</b>	<p>You can update the price, cost, and exchange rate for an item if it changes after you enter the interbranch sales order. Set the appropriate processing options in the Update Sales Price/Cost program before running the program to update the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Price information for interbranch orders</li> <li>■ Exchange rate for both the supplying and selling branch/plants</li> </ul>
<b>Creating a separate DREAM Writer version for interbranch orders</b>	<p>You can create a separate DREAM Writer version of the Enter Orders (Page Mode) program for interbranch orders. You must specify the order type, order activity rule, and line type for interbranch orders in the version.</p>
<b>Interbranch sales orders for configured items</b>	<p>You can enter a configured item sales order to fill demand from a warehouse other than where the order was placed. Interbranch sales orders with transfer pricing are supported for configured items. However, pricing rules are not supported for interbranch sales.</p>

Topic	Description
<b>Sales Order Detail Tag File (F49211)</b>	This file is used to store the information needed to create an Interbranch Invoice. During Sales Order Entry, the program will write a record to this file if processing option 63 is set to allow interbranch invoicing.  F49211 is also used in Cycle Billing.

**See Also:**

- [Section 47.1, "Sales Order Entry \(P4211\)."](#)

## 16.3 Printing an Interbranch Invoice

**Navigation**

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose **Sales Order Processing**

From ECS Sales Order Processing (G491011), choose **Invoice Processing**

From Invoice Processing (G42113), choose **Invoice Print**

In addition to printing the customer invoice for the selling branch/plant, the system can also print an interbranch invoice for the supplying branch/plant. Set processing option 61 in the Enter Orders (Page Mode) program to enable the system to print interbranch invoices.

To print interbranch invoices, you must also set up a separate DREAM Writer version in the Print Invoices program. Set the appropriate processing option to print interbranch invoices.

---

**Note:** JD Edwards World recommends that you copy the following demonstration versions to ensure that the system uses the correct data sequence to update records:

"Sales Invoices - Interbranch - Batch" to print interbranch invoices by batch.

"Sales Invoices - Interbranch - History" to print interbranch invoices from history.

---

### 16.3.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that the processing option for printing interbranch invoices is set in the Enter Orders (Page Mode) program
- Verify that processing option (28) in the Print Invoices program for printing interbranch invoices or customer invoices is set, depending on the type of invoice that you want to print

## 16.3.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Invoice document types	<p>Processing option 8 behind Print Invoices (P42565) designates what document type is created for the invoice. Typically, RI is used for the invoice on customer invoices, and RT is used for interbranch invoices. These are the default values if the option is left blank.</p> <p>When processing an interbranch invoice, the invoice program writes the document type and document number to the Sales Order Detail Tag file (F49211) record originally created during sales order entry.</p>
Viewing invoices online	<p>You can view interbranch and customer invoices on the following forms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Online Invoice</li> <li>■ Sales Ledger Inquiry</li> <li>■ Customer Service</li> </ul> <p>You must specify the order type in a processing option in each of the programs.</p>
Limitations of interbranch invoices	<p>Understand the following limitations when using interbranch invoices:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ You cannot print interbranch invoices from the Online Invoice program</li> <li>■ You cannot use the Invoice Cycle preference for the interbranch invoices. However, you can use this preference to set up invoice cycles for the customer's invoice</li> <li>■ You cannot print customer invoices during shipment confirmation. However, you can print interbranch invoices after shipment confirmation</li> </ul>

## 16.4 Updating Interbranch Sales Information

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose **End of Day Processing**

From **End of Day Processing (G491013)**, choose **Update Customer Sales**

During the sales update process, you can run the Update Customer Sales program to create journal entries for interbranch sales.

If you set the interbranch sales processing option (26) in the Sales Update program (P42800) to create accounts receivable and accounts payable entries for both the selling and the supplying branch/plants, the system creates the following types of batches:

### 16.4.1 Example: Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable Entries

- Batch type I - Debits the COGS account, and credits the receivables accounts and inventory for the supplying branch/plant and selling branch/plant.
- Batch type V - Credits the payables accounts and debits the inventory for the selling branch/plant.

In this example: Price to customer = \$100, Cost at supplying branch = \$60, Cost + 20% markup to selling branch = \$72.



AAI 4260 is used to write the interbranch revenue.

### I Batch

Selling branch:

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
RC	A/R Trade	\$100	
4230	Revenue		\$100
4220	Cost Of Goods Sold	\$72	
4240	Inventory		\$72

Supplying branch:

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
RC	A/R Trade	\$72	
4260	Interbranch Revenue		\$72
4220	Cost Of Goods Sold	\$60	
4240	Inventory		\$60

### V Batch

Selling branch:

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4240	Inventory	\$72	
PC	A/P Trade		\$72

## 16.4.2 Example: Accounts Receivable Entries

If processing option 26 in P42800 is set to create only the accounts receivable entries, the system creates the following types of batches:

- Batch type I - Credits the revenue accounts and inventory, and debits the COGS account of the selling branch/plant
- Batch type ST - Credits the revenue account and inventory for the selling branch/plant, and debits the COGS accounts and inventory for the supplying branch/plant

In this example: Price to customer = \$100, Cost at supplying branch = \$60, Cost + 20% markup to selling branch = \$72.

### I Batch

Selling branch:

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
RC	A/R Trade	\$100	
4230	Revenue		\$100
4220	Cost Of Goods Sold	\$72	

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4240	Inventory		\$72

**ST Batch**

Supplying branch:

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4220	Cost Of Goods Sold	\$60	
4240	Inventory		\$60

Interbranch/Selling:

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4240	Inventory	\$72	

Interbranch/Supplying:

AAI	Account	Debit	Credit
4260	Interbranch Revenue		\$72

General Ledger records (F0911) that have a batch type of ST for interbranch sales transfer are bypassed by the Item Ledger/Account Integrity report (P41543).

### 16.4.3 Before You Begin

- Verify that the interbranch sales processing options in Update Customer Sales are set to:
  - Recognize the order type used to identify interbranch orders
  - Create necessary types of accounting entries

### 16.4.4 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Document types	If you are creating a V batch, you need to have the interbranch invoice document type (RT) setup in UDC tables 00/DT and 00/DV. Failure to do this will result in error 2362 being generated by sales update.

**See Also:**

- [Section 21.1, "Updating Customer Sales \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 36.2, "Defining Branch/Plant Constants \(ECS\)."](#)

## 16.4.5 What You Should Know About Processing Options

Topic	Description
Transfer Cost Update (65)	The system allows you to designate more than one order type for interbranch sales. If you have multiple document types for interbranch sales, type them one after the other in the processing option, for example, SISTS3.

## 16.5 Consignment Sales

A consignment sale is a sale in which one person or company acts as an agent to sell the goods from another person or company. In JD Edwards World, this is accomplished through an Interbranch Sales Order.

As an example, think of a company that sells large trucks and earth moving equipment. In order to support their customers, the company also sells replacement parts on behalf of other suppliers. These parts are therefore being sold on 'consignment' by the 'agent' on the behalf of the 'consignor'.

### 16.5.1 Set up and Process for Consignment Sales

Using the terms defined above, you can set up a vendor to provide consignment sales as follows:

- Ensure that the consignor address book entry has a search type of V for vendor, and also set the Payables flag to Y
- Set up supplier master and purchasing instructions for the consignor
- Set up a separate company for consignment branches. This is so that the consignment goods are not kept on the books of your regular companies
- Set up a consignment branch as a business unit in the new company. Enter the consignor address number as the Branch/Plant address number
- All the items that are to be sold under consignment need to be set up in both the Branch/Plant from which your regular sales operate and also the consignment Branch/Plant
- Set up price information on the items in the regular sales Branch/Plant but no quantities. The items in the consignment Branch/Plant should be set up with quantities and the cost of the item to the agent, which can be maintained in either the Cost file (F4105) or the Base Price file (F4106). This is the Branch/Plant from which the orders will be sourced, so all quantities are maintained here
- Set processing options (61, 62, 63) behind Sales Order Entry (P4211) to trigger interbranch sales
- On order entry set the agent Branch/Plant in the header of the order since it is the selling branch. Enter the consignment Branch/Plant in the detail of the order since it is the sourcing branch
- After invoicing the customer, run Print Invoices (P42565) with the specific version that creates an interbranch invoice (XJDE0010)
- The final step is to set processing options 25 and 26 on Sales Update (P42800) to ensure the correct journal entries are made. Sales update produces two batches:
  - Type I for invoices, with invoice numbers for both the customer and the consignor

- Type V for the voucher which is the payable by which the agent pays the consignor

---

## Enter a Sales Order with Manual Invoice

This chapter contains the topic:

- [Section 17.1, "Entering a Sales Order with Manual Invoice \(ECS\)."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Processing

From ECS Sales Order Processing (G491011), choose Manual Invoices

## 17.1 Entering a Sales Order with Manual Invoice (ECS)

If you use Load and Delivery Management and have activated ECS control in the system constants for Sale Order Management, you can enter a manual invoice to record a sale and produce an invoice number for accounting purposes without building a trip or printing documents. Typically, you use this method when you have sold, delivered, and sent an invoice for items without entering a sales order.

You must still complete load confirmation to accurately reduce the sold quantity from your inventory. After you enter a sales order with manual invoice, the system automatically processes the order through one of the following load confirmation programs, depending on the type of sales order you enter:

- If your order consists of bulk product, the system processes the order through the Bulk Load Confirmation program.
- If your order consists of packaged product, the system processes the order through the Packaged Load Confirmation program.
- If your order consists of both bulk and packaged products, the system processes the order through the Bulk Load Confirmation program first and then through the Packaged Load Confirmation program.

### 17.1.1 Before You Begin

- Set the processing options for manual invoice processing for the following three programs:
  - Sales Order Entry
  - Bulk Load Confirmation
  - Packaged Load Confirmation

#### To enter a sales order with manual invoice

On Manual Invoices

**Figure 17-1 Manual Invoices screen**

42114 Manual Invoices

Oracle JD Edwards World

Branch/Plant: DEP01  
 Order Date: 08/18/17  
 Order Number: 113187 SM  
 Prev. Order: 113187 SM

Sold To: 501 Potomac Hotel  
 Ship To: 501 Potomac Hotel  
 Requested: 08/18/17  
 Customer PO: DEP01

Amount: 95.00  
 Skip To Line: 1

Quantity	Item	Unit Price	Pr Mod	Du	LOB	LT	O
100	UNL	95.00					

F6=Summary F15=SD Header F24=More Keys Opt: 1=Detail 2=Text 9=Del

1. Complete the following fields:

- Ship To
- Quantity
- Item

Depending on the items ordered, either the Bulk Load Confirmation or Package Load Confirmation form appears.

**Figure 17-2 Bulk Load Confirmation screen**

49510 Bulk Load Confirmation

Oracle JD Edwards World

Load Date: 08/18/17  
 Load Time: 13:10:56  
 Delivery Date: 08/18/17

Order Number: 113187  
 Invoice Number: 113187 RI

Item Number	Quantity Loaded	Unit Price	Location	Owner	Temp	T
UNL	100	95.00	TXUNL1			

Opt 1=Select Order F5=Load & Deliver Order F15=Doc Reg Win F24=More Keys

**Figure 17-3 Package Load Confirmation screen**

2. On either Bulk Load Confirmation or Package Load Confirmation, complete the following fields to reflect actual load and delivery information:
  - Load Date
  - Load Time
  - Delivery Date
  - Order Number
3. Choose the option to complete the load and delivery confirmation.

**See Also:**

- Confirming Bulk Delivery and Confirming a Packaged Load by Trip in the *JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide*,
- [Section 47.1, "Sales Order Entry \(P4211\)"](#) for the processing options for this program.

## 17.1.2 Processing Options

See [Section 47.22, "Bulk Load Confirmation - Manual Invoice \(P49510\)."](#)

See [Section 47.23, "Packaged Load Confirmation \(P49530\)."](#)





---

## Update Status Codes

This chapter contains the topic:

- [Section 18.1, "Updating Status Codes \(ECS\)."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose Additional Order Processes

From Additional Order Processes (G491012), choose Status Code Update

## 18.1 Updating Status Codes (ECS)

You use the Status Code Update program to quickly update the status codes for selected sales order lines or manage steps in the order process that are unique to your company.

You can use the Status Code Update program to:

- View current status codes for multiple detail lines
- Manually update the next status code for detail lines

You might want to update a line's next status code so the item passes through an additional step in the order process. For example, you might want certain types of orders to pass through a step of credit approval before load confirmation. You set up this step in the order activity rules and use the Status Code Update program to process these orders through the credit approval step.

You can also update a line's next status code so that an item bypasses an existing status code. You can only update next status codes to those allowed in the order activity rules.

### 18.1.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that status codes have been set up in order activity rules

#### To update status codes

On Status Code Update

**Figure 18–1 Status Code Update screen**

42040 Status Code Update

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
Values List  
Clear Screen  
Export Subfile

42040 Status Code Update

Branch/Plant DEPOT1  
Update Status To

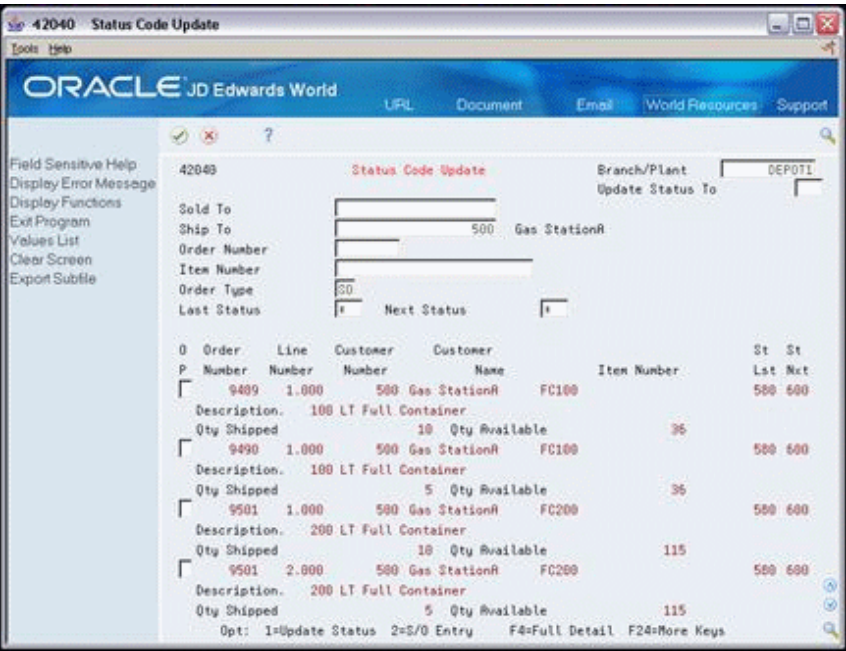
Sold To  
Ship To 500 Gas StationR  
Order Number  
Item Number  
Order Type  
Last Status  
Next Status

Order Number	Line Number	Customer Number	Customer Name	Item Number	St	St
9499	1.000	500	Gas StationR	FC100	500	600
9499	1.000	500	Gas StationR	FC100	500	600
9501	1.000	500	Gas StationR	FC200	500	600
9501	2.000	500	Gas StationR	FC200	500	600
9506	1.000	500	Gas StationR	EC100	577	999
9506	2.000	500	Gas StationR	FC100	500	600
9506	3.000	500	Gas StationR	EC200	577	999
9506	4.000	500	Gas StationR	FC200	500	600
9514	1.000	500	Gas StationR	FC100	500	600
9514	2.000	500	Gas StationR	FC200	500	600
9518	1.000	500	Gas StationR	EC100	577	999
9518	2.000	500	Gas StationR	EC200	577	999

Opt: 1=Update Status 2=S/O Entry F4=Full Detail F24=More Keys

1. Complete the following field:
  - Sold To
2. To narrow the search, complete any combination of the following fields:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Ship To
  - Order Number
  - Number
  - Order Type
  - Last Status
  - Next Status
3. To review line item information, access the fold area.

Figure 18–2 Status Code Update (Fold Area) screen



4. Complete the following field to specify the next status codes to which lines are updated:
  - Update Status To
5. Choose the option to update the status of the order you want to update.

### 18.1.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Update line limitations	You cannot update lines to a status of 999, or closed. You must go through sales order processing to close or cancel a sales order line.
Import/Export	This program supports Import/Export functionality. See the <i>JD Edwards World Technical Tools Guide</i> for more information.

**See Also:**

- [Section 39.1, "Setting Up Order Activity Rules \(ECS\)."](#)

### 18.1.3 Processing Options

See [Section 47.24, "Sales Order Speed Release \(P76A42040\)."](#)



---

## End of Day Processing

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 19.1, "Objectives,"](#)
- [Section 19.2, "About End of Day Processing \(ECS\)."](#)

### 19.1 Objectives

- To run cycle billing and print periodic invoices
- To update daily customer sales
- To print sales journals and reports
- To review and post entries to the general ledger

### 19.2 About End of Day Processing (ECS)

You perform end of day processing to complete the order processing cycle. Performing end of day processing consists of running batch programs to:

- Calculate individual billing cycles for customers
- Print periodic invoices that are due
- Update all tables and records related to customer sales
- Post journal entries resulting from the order processing cycle
- Print reports of all unposted inventory/cost of goods sold (COGS) and branch sales entries for review

End of day processing includes the following tasks:

- Working with billing cycles
- Updating customer sales

You can run the Cycle Billing and the Update Customer Sales programs in proof mode for review purposes or in final mode to perform the updates. If the system encounters any errors when you run cycle billing in final mode, it makes no general ledger (G/L) updates for that order line and prints an error message.

#### 19.2.1 How Can You Keep Sales Information Accurate?

You should run the Update Customer Sales program each day to keep the most accurate sales information. You update your sales information on a daily basis to do the following:

- Keep accounts receivable (A/R) records current
- Provide daily activity reports
- Keep G/L accounts current for inventory, COGS, sales, and freight
- Keep inventory on-hand balances accurate
- Keep interim sales and commission reports accurate

### 19.2.2 When Do You Run the Cycle Billing Program?

The system accommodates variations in billing cycles to help you meet the individual billing needs of your customers. You run the Cycle Billing program after you process sales order lines through load and delivery confirmation and perform the required billable and payable freight calculations.

Cycle Billing is a batch program that works in conjunction with the Invoice Cycle preference and the Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule to calculate scheduled invoice dates. If no Invoice Cycle preference is found, the system applies the default invoice cycle identified in the appropriate processing option.

If the invoice date is greater than the current system date, the program updates deferred COGS, deferred revenue, and unbilled accounts receivable accounts in the G/L. If the order is invoiced during load confirmation, the Cycle Billing program advances the status of the order past the periodic invoicing step to the sales update step.

### 19.2.3 What Is Periodic Invoicing?

Some customers prefer to be invoiced at the time the product is delivered. Others prefer weekly or end-of-month invoicing. This is called periodic invoicing. You run the Periodic Invoice program to print invoices with a current scheduled invoice date. This program selects all sales order detail lines with a scheduled invoice date that is less than or equal to today's date and creates a print batch for them. You normally run the Periodic Invoice program each day after you run the Cycle Billing program.

### 19.2.4 When Do You Run the Update Customer Sales Program?

You normally run the Update Customer Sales program nightly so that the day's invoices are posted to A/R, G/L balances are current, and sales and commission reports reflect invoiced orders.

The Update Customer Sales program performs the following functions:

- Creates up to three batches of journal entries for posting to the general ledger and reverses the deferred entries created by the Load Confirm and Cycle Billing programs. The program can create the following three batch types:
  - Batch type I - Posts the Customer Sales Journal to the general ledger
  - Batch type G - Posts the Inventory/COGS Journal
  - Batch type ST - Posts the Interbranch Sales Journal
- Updates the following tables:
  - Item Location (F41021)
  - Account Ledger (F0911)
  - Accounts Receivable Ledger (F0311)

- Item Ledger (F4111)
- Sales Summary History (F4229)
- Sales Commission (F42005)
- Updates the following tables if you set the processing options to not purge these tables:
  - Sales Order Header (F4201)
  - Sales Order Detail (F4211)
  - Sales Order Detail - Tag History (F49219)
- Creates transactions in the following tables if you set the processing options to purge the Sales Order Header and Sales Order Detail tables:
  - Sales Order Header History (F42019)
  - Sales Order Detail History (F42119)
- Advances the status code in the Sales Order Detail table records.
- Produces the following reports in both proof and final mode:
  - Summarized or Detail Invoice Journal
  - Sales Update Error Report
  - Sales Journal

### 19.2.5 Before You Begin

- Verify that sales order lines have been processed through load and delivery confirmation. See *Confirming Load and Delivery* in the *JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide*.
- Verify that billable and payable freight charges have been calculated. See *Calculating Freight Charges* in the *JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide*.
- Verify that sales order line types are set up to correctly interface with the G/L and A/R. See [Section 38.1, "Setting Up Order Line Types \(ECS\)."](#)





---

## Work with Billing Cycles

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 20.1, "Working with Billing Cycles \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 20.2, "Creating the Invoice Cycle Preference,"](#)
- [Section 20.3, "Setting Up Invoice Cycle Calculation Rules,"](#)
- [Section 20.4, "Running Cycle Billing \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 20.5, "Printing Periodic Invoices \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 20.6, "Printing Interrupted Invoice Batches \(ECS\),"](#)

### 20.1 Working with Billing Cycles (ECS)

You can invoice different customer and item combinations in different cycles. For example, you might invoice some customers daily, others weekly, and others at the end of the month. This is called periodic invoicing. Customers who are invoiced at the time of delivery are not included in periodic invoicing.

After you process a sales order detail line through load confirmation and perform the required billable and payable freight calculations, you use the Cycle Billing program to calculate scheduled invoice dates. You then use the Periodic Invoice program to print invoices with a scheduled invoice date that is less than or equal to the current system date.

### 20.2 Creating the Invoice Cycle Preference

#### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose hidden selection 27

From ECS Sales Order Advanced & Technical Ops (G491031), choose Preference Profiles

A preference is information that you define for a customer, an item, or any combination of customer (sold to, ship to, or parent addresses), customer group, item, or item group.

Use the Invoice Cycle preference to define a specific invoice cycle for a customer and item combination. The Schedule Invoice Cycle program works in conjunction with the Invoice Cycle preference and the invoice cycle calculation rule to calculate scheduled invoice dates for a customer and item combination.

## To create the Invoice Cycle preference

From the Preference Profiles.

1. To access the Preference Inquiry, choose the Inquiry option that corresponds to Invoice Cycle preference.

**Figure 20–1 Invoice Cycle screen**

Oracle JD Edwards World - Invoice Cycle (40200)

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
Preference Revisions  
Clear Screen

Customer Number: [ ]  
OR Customer Group: BIWKLY Biweekly Invoicing

Item Number: [ ]  
OR Item Group: [ ]

Effective From: [ ] Effective Thru: [ ]

Seq	Branch/Plant	Inv	Descrip
1	DEPOT1	IC3	Bi-weekly C
30	IC3	Bi-weekly C	

Opt: 1=Revisions 2=Memo F24=More Keys

2. From the Invoice Cycle, choose the Revisions option to access the Preference Profile Revisions form.

**Figure 20–2 Invoice Cycle (Preference Profile Revisions) screen**

Oracle JD Edwards World - Invoice Cycle (40300)

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
More Details  
Redisplay Previously C  
Create/View Preference  
Invoice Cycle Calc Rule  
Clear Screen

Action Code: [ ]

Customer Number: [ ]  
OR Customer Group: BIWKLY Biweekly Invoicing

Item Number: [ ]  
OR Item Group: [ ]

Effective From: 02/02/15  
Effective Thru: 08/10/19

Sequence Number: [ ]

Preference Information

Branch/Plant	Invoice Cycle	Description
DEPOT1	IC3	Depot 1 Bi-weekly Customer Invoicing

F9=Previous F14=Memo F24=More Keys

3. From the Preference Profile Revisions, complete one or more of the following fields to define customer and item combinations:
  - Customer Number
  - Customer Group
  - Item Number
  - Item Group
4. To define specific preference information, complete the following fields:
  - Effective From
  - Effective Thru
  - Quantity From
  - Quantity Thru
  - Sequence Number
  - Branch/Plant
  - Invoice Cycle

### 20.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Document sets	When you set up the Invoice Cycle preference, verify that it does not conflict with the document set you assign to the customer and item combination in the Document Set preference.  See <a href="#">Section 31.1, "Setting Up Preferences (ECS)."</a>
Primary invoice	You must ensure that the document set that was printed before and during the load confirm process does not include a primary invoice. If it includes a primary invoice, the system will not apply the Invoice Cycle preference.

**See Also:**

- [Section 31.1, "Setting Up Preferences \(ECS\)."](#)

## 20.3 Setting Up Invoice Cycle Calculation Rules

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose hidden selection 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule

Set up an invoice cycle calculation rule to define the type of calculation that the system uses to compute an invoice date. For example, you can set up daily, bi-weekly, or based-on-date invoicing. You can then enter test dates to review the calculated invoice dates and ensure that you have set up the calculation correctly.

If the calculation rules are bi-weekly, semi-monthly, or at the end of each month, you must also set up scheduled invoice date ranges.

The following invoice cycle calculation rules are hard-coded and require specific settings:

Calculation Rule	Required Settings	Type of Cycle
Daily invoicing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Based On Date Name must be blank</li> <li>Day of Week must be blank</li> <li>Days to Increment is optional</li> </ul>	Daily Cycle
Weekly invoicing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires Based On Date Name</li> <li>Requires Day of Week</li> <li>Days to Increment is ignored</li> </ul>	Weekly Cycle
Bi-weekly invoicing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires Based On Date Name</li> <li>Day of Week must be blank</li> <li>Days to Increment is ignored</li> <li>Requires Scheduled Invoice Date</li> </ul>	Scheduled Invoice Date Cycle
Semi-monthly invoicing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires Based On Date Name</li> <li>Day of Week must be blank</li> <li>Days to Increment is optional</li> <li>Requires Scheduled Invoice Date</li> </ul>	Scheduled Invoice Date Cycle
End-of-month invoicing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires Based On Date Name</li> <li>Day of Week must be blank</li> <li>Days to Increment is optional</li> <li>Requires Scheduled Invoice Date</li> </ul>	Scheduled Invoice Date Cycle
Based on date invoicing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires Based On Date Name</li> <li>Day of Week must be blank</li> <li>Days to Increment is optional</li> </ul>	Based On Date Cycle

#### Example: Scheduled Invoice Date Calculation

This example illustrates how the Schedule Invoice Cycle program calculates the scheduled invoice date and how the calculation affects the generation of invoices. The following values are entered for the invoice cycle calculation rule:

- Based On Date is Order/Transaction Date (9/27/18)
- Days to Increment is 0
- Calculation Rule is End of Month
- Scheduled Invoice Date Ranges are as follows:
  - Start Dates = 9/1/18 and 10/1/18
  - End Dates = 9/30/18 and 10/31/18
  - Invoice Dates = 9/30/18 and 10/31/18

If the delivery confirmation occurs on 9/29/18, the following events occur:

Date	Events
On 9/29/18	The Schedule Invoice Cycle program processes the order line and calculates the scheduled invoice date as 9/30/18. Because the scheduled invoice date is later than the system date (9/29/18), the Cycle Billing program creates deferred journal entries.
On 9/30/18	Because the scheduled invoice date is before or on the system date, the Periodic Invoice program generates the invoice and the Update Customer Sales program reverses the deferred entries and completes the required G/L entries.

### To set up invoice cycle calculation rules

From the Invoice Cycle Revisions (P40300), press F16 to go to Invoice Cycle Calc Rule.

**Figure 20–3 Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule screen**

The screenshot shows the 'Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule' screen in Oracle JD Edwards World. The title bar indicates '49000 Invoice Cycle Calculation'. The main window has a menu bar with 'Tools' and 'Help'. Below the menu bar is a toolbar with various icons. The screen is divided into several sections:

- Field Sensitive Help:** A list of help topics including 'Display Error Message', 'Display Functions', 'Exit Program', 'Scheduled Invoice Date', 'Retrieve Last Record', 'Compute Test', and 'Clear Screen'.
- Action Type:** A dropdown menu set to 'T'.
- Invoice Cycle:** A dropdown menu set to 'IC3'.
- Calculation Rule:** A dropdown menu set to '3'.
- Number of Days Increment:** A dropdown menu set to '5'.
- Based On Date Name:** A dropdown menu set to 'Actual Ship Date'.
- Day of Week:** A dropdown menu set to 'Day Function Ignored'.
- Test Dates:** A section with five empty text boxes for entering test dates.
- Calc Dates:** A section with five empty text boxes for entering calculation dates.

At the bottom of the screen, there are three function key prompts: 'F8=Scheduled Invoice Dates', 'F10=Compute Test', and 'F24=More Keys'.

- Complete one or more of the following fields:
  - Invoice Cycle
  - Calculation Rule
  - Number of Days Increment
  - Based on Date Name
- To set up a calculation rule for a weekly invoice schedule, complete the following field:
  - Day of Week
- To enter a bi-weekly, semi-monthly, or end-of-month invoice cycle, access Scheduled Invoice Dates.

**Figure 20–4 Scheduled Invoice Dates screen**

The screenshot displays the 'Scheduled Invoice Dates' screen (F49085) within the Oracle JD Edwards World application. The interface includes a top navigation bar with links for URL, Document, Email, World Resources, and Support. A left-hand menu provides options such as 'Field Sensitive Help', 'Display Error Message', 'Display Functions', 'Exit Program', and 'Clear Screen'. The main area features a table with three columns: 'Start Date', 'Ending Date', and 'Invoice Date'. The table contains three rows of data, each representing a weekly cycle of invoice dates. The first row shows dates from 08/06/17 to 08/13/17, the second from 08/19/17 to 08/26/17, and the third from 08/01/17 to 08/08/17. Below the table, there are additional empty rows for data entry. The bottom of the screen displays the function key 'F24=More Keys'.

4. From the Scheduled Invoice Dates, complete the following fields:
  - Start Date
  - Ending Date
  - Invoice Date
5. Return to the Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule form.
6. Complete the following field:
  - Test Dates
7. Choose function key F10 to calculate the test scheduled invoice date.

Field	Explanation
Number of Days Increment	The number of days added to the based on date to determine the scheduled invoice date. This field can be specified for the daily and based on date calculation rule types.
Based on Date Name	The name of the specific date field to be used in the cycle calculation.
Day of Week	Indicates which day of the week the Print Invoices program produces an invoice for the customer. It is used for weekly cycles only.

### 20.3.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Location of Invoice Cycle Calculation and Scheduled Invoice data	The invoice cycle calculation rules are stored in the Invoice Cycle Calculation file (F49080). Scheduled invoice dates are stored in the Scheduled Invoice Date file (F49085).

Topic	Description
AAIs for invoice cycles	<p>You must set up the following AAIs when processing invoice cycle information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ 4221 - deferred costs of goods sold</li> <li>■ 4231 - deferred revenue</li> <li>■ 4232 - unbilled accounts receivable</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">Section 43.1, "Setting Up Automatic Accounting Instructions (ECS)."</a></p>
User defined codes for invoice cycles	<p>You must set up the following code tables for use with invoice cycle processing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Invoice cycle - 40/CY</li> <li>■ Day of week - 42/DW</li> <li>■ Based on date name - 42/DN</li> <li>■ Calculation rule - 42/CR (hard-coded)</li> </ul> <p>See <i>Work with User Defined Codes in the JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide</i>.</p>
Order Activity Rules	<p>Set up a cycle billing status in the order activity rules for each relevant order type and line type combination. The default cycle billing status is 578. Note that all lines on the order should be set to this status during their progress through sales order processing, even if the lines do not have preferences for cycle billing. Since the Cycle Billing program (P49700) should process orders before the Print Invoices program, a typical next status would be 580 (Print Invoices).</p>

## 20.4 Running Cycle Billing (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose **End of Day Processing**

From ECS End of Day Processing (G491013), choose **Cycle Billing**

You use the Cycle Billing program to calculate scheduled invoice dates. Cycle Billing is a batch program that works in conjunction with the Invoice Cycle preference and the Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule. If no Invoice Cycle preference is found, the system applies the default invoice cycle identified in the appropriate processing option.

The scheduled invoice date determines whether the system writes deferred journal entries to G/L accounts. If the scheduled invoice date is greater than today's date, this indicates that the invoice is on a billing cycle.

The Cycle Billing program updates deferred G/L accounts for COGS, revenue, and unbilled accounts receivable. You can run the program in proof mode for review purposes or in final mode to perform the updates.

Deferred entries are necessary because, although you have delivered the order to the customer, the system will not include the order in the sales update until the order has been invoiced on the next billing cycle. The system must update the records to indicate that inventory is no longer in transit, and the accounting records must reflect the deferred billing.

If the scheduled invoice date for an order is less than or equal to today's date, this indicates one of the following:

- A daily invoice cycle.

- No billing cycle.
- The current date is the cycle date.

The program does not create deferred entries because the order will be included in the sales update that night.

The system processes orders differently for cycle billing than for non-cycle billing. The following table is an example of how the system updates different G/L accounts for non-cycle and cycle billing. The debit and credit amounts represent sample monetary values for each transaction.

#### Non-Cycle Billing Journal Entries

Program	G/L Account	Debit Entry	Credit Entry
Load Confirm	Inventory In-Transit	410	
	Inventory		410
Update Customer Sales	COGS	410	
	Inventory In-Transit		410
	Billed A/R	990	
	Revenue		990

#### Cycle Billing Journal Entries

Program	G/L Account	Debit Entry	Credit Entry
Load Confirm	Inventory In-Transit	410	
	Inventory		410
Cycle Billing	Deferred COGS	410	
	Inventory In-Transit		410
	Unbilled A/R	990	
	Deferred Revenue		990
Update Customer Sales	COGS	410	
	Deferred COGS		410
	Deferred Revenue	990	
	Revenue		990
	Unbilled A/R	990	
Invoice Post	A/R	990	



Entry	Description
<b>Non-Cycle Billing Journal Entries</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The Load Confirm program:</li> <li>■ Debits 410 to Inventory In-Transit</li> <li>■ Credits 410 to Inventory</li> <li>■ The Update Customer Sales program:</li> <li>■ Debits 410 to COGS</li> <li>■ Credits 410 to Inventory In-Transit</li> <li>■ Debits 990 to A/R</li> <li>■ Credits 990 to Revenue</li> </ul>
<b>Cycle Billing Journal Entries</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The Load Confirm program:</li> <li>■ Debits 410 to Inventory In-Transit</li> <li>■ Credits 410 to Inventory</li> <li>■ The Cycle Billing program:</li> <li>■ Debits 410 to Deferred COGS</li> <li>■ Credits 410 to Inventory In-Transit</li> <li>■ Debits 990 to Unbilled A/R</li> <li>■ Credits 990 to Deferred Revenue</li> <li>■ The Update Customer Sales program:</li> <li>■ Debits 410 to COGS</li> <li>■ Credits 410 to Deferred COGS</li> <li>■ Debits 990 to Deferred Revenue</li> <li>■ Credits 990 to Revenue</li> <li>■ Credits 990 to Unbilled A/R</li> <li>■ The Invoice Post program:</li> <li>■ Debits 990 to A/R</li> </ul>

Note the following exceptions:

- If load confirmation and delivery confirmation occur at the same time (that is, the inventory is never considered to be in transit), then the Load Confirm program does not create journal entries. The Cycle Billing program credits inventory instead of crediting Inventory In-Transit entries.
- If the Load Confirm program prints a primary invoice, then the system does not generate deferred journal entries. The system generates non-cycle billing journal entries.

After you process orders through load confirmation and perform billable and payable freight calculations, the orders advance to cycle billing status. Depending on whether you have printed invoices with the delivery documents, the Cycle Billing program processes order lines as follows:

- **If a sales order line has been invoiced**

The Cycle Billing program changes the status of the sales order line to indicate that it is not to be included in periodic invoicing. The system advances the order line to the Update Customer Sales status.

- **If a sales order line has not been invoiced**

The Cycle Billing program checks the Invoice Cycle preference or the processing option, and calculates the scheduled invoice date. When you run Cycle Billing in final mode, the program updates the Sales Order Detail - Tag (F49211) table with the invoice cycle and scheduled invoice date. It also changes the status of the order line to indicate that it is to be included in periodic invoicing. The program writes deferred accounting entries for order lines that are to be invoiced on a future date.

The Cycle Billing program generates two reports. If you want to review the G/L entries or determine if there are any errors, you can:

- Review the Cycle Billing Transaction report
- Review the Cycle Billing Exception report

### 20.4.1 Before You Begin

- Set the appropriate processing option to run Cycle Billing in proof or final mode
- Verify that the Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule has been set up. See [Section 34.2, "Setting Up Invoice Cycle Calculation Rules \(ECS\)."](#)
- Verify that the Invoice Cycle preference has been set up. See [Section 34.3, "Creating Invoice Cycle Preferences \(ECS\)."](#)
- Verify that a user defined code for the default invoice cycle exists. The system applies this code when no preference is found for a customer and item combination. See *Work with User Defined Codes* in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.

### 20.4.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Repricing sales orders at the end of the month	<p>If the price of an item fluctuates or is not known until the end of the month, you can perform month-end repricing for the item.</p> <p>You create a User Defined Price Code preference to flag the customer and item combination for month-end repricing (for example, EM). The system enters this code in the Price Codes field on the sales order to identify the orders to be repriced at the end of the month.</p> <p>At the end of the month, you run the version of the Update Sales Price/Cost program that performs repricing by preference at month end. You should set the data selection for this version to select the sales orders with a price code of EM. These orders are updated with the most current price for the item.</p> <p>The Update Sales Price/Cost program creates a separate record in the Sales Order Detail table. The next time you run the Cycle Billing program, it processes this record.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 26.3, "Updating Prices for a Customer (ECS)"</a> and <a href="#">Section 30.1, "Understanding Preferences (ECS)."</a></p>
Updating inventory	<p>If the Load Confirm program does not process a sales order detail line, the Cycle Billing program relieves inventory for packaged items only. The Update Customer Sales program updates inventory for bulk items.</p>

Topic	Description
<b>Viewing G/L deferred entries</b>	<p>You can view deferred entries using the General Journal Review (batch type G) on the General Accounting Daily Operations menu.</p> <p>For example, the following entries are created for an item with base price = 1000.00 and cost = 500.00:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Credit to Deferred Revenue of 1000.00</li> <li>■ Debit to Unbilled Accounts Receivable of 1000.00</li> <li>■ Credit to Inventory In-Transit of 500.00</li> <li>■ Debit to Deferred COGS of 500.00</li> </ul>
<b>Deferred entries flag in the sales order files</b>	<p>The Cycle Billing program creates records in the Sales Order Detail Tag File (F49211). The relevant fields are Deferred Entries Flag (DEFF), Invoice Cycle (INCY) and Scheduled Invoice Date (SIDT). If deferred entries are created by Cycle Billing, the DEFF flag is populated with Y, and the corresponding record in Sales Order Detail (F4211) populates the Deferred Entries Flag (SO12) with 1. This flag which can be used for data selection in the Print Invoices program prompts Sales Update to create the reversing entries for the deferred entries created by Cycle Billing.</p>

Topic	Description
Processing options for Cycle Billing	<p>The processing options for Cycle Billing (P49700) are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Option 1 - Is required and allows you to enter a valid next status for orders that have already been invoiced. The purpose of this option is to divert orders that have already been invoiced from calculating a scheduled invoice date. If orders are picked up for processing that already have an invoice number in the Sales Order Detail file (F4211), they are not assigned a scheduled invoice date, but they are assigned a next status as specified in this processing option, typically 600</li> <li>■ Option 2 - Allows you to enter an override next status for orders that are processed through cycle billing. If the option is blank, the next status is assigned based on the order activity rules. The next status should allow the order to be run through the Print Invoice program, so it would typically be 580</li> <li>■ Option 3 - Is where you enter a version of Sales Update (P42800) that the program retrieves the processing options from. The purpose of this option is to use the same processing options for the creation of the cycle billing journal entries and the sales update journal entries. Because sales update reverses any journal entries created during cycle billing, these processing options should be consistent. The specific options on P42800 that Cycle Billing looks at are 3, 4, 5, 7, 11, 19, 20, 25, and 28</li> <li>■ Option 4 - Allows a proof or final version of the program to be run. Journal entries are only written in final mode, so running in proof mode first allows you to review the G/L entries that are added so that you may make corrections if needed</li> <li>■ Option 5 - Enter the default invoice cycle to be used for those lines for which a preference is not found. Typically, this option is set to Daily, and then the Invoice Cycle Preference is used to calculate the scheduled invoice date for any customer that requires an invoice cycle other than Daily. However, any other invoice cycle can be entered in this processing option as an override for all orders which are run through this batch. The orders processed through this batch are based on: 1) the data selection of the version of the Cycle Billing program, and 2) the preference hierarchy. If the invoice cycle is stored in the 40/CY, but no calculation rule has been established for it, this value populates the INCY field in the Sales Order Detail Tag file (F49211), but the DEFF and the SIDT is not populated, and no deferred entries are written</li> </ul>

### 20.4.3 Reviewing the Cycle Billing Transaction Report (ECS)

The Cycle Billing program generates the Cycle Billing Transaction report for deferred entries. This report details the G/L entries for a particular order line. The system allows up to four G/L entries for a single order line. When you run the Cycle Billing program in proof mode, this report shows the G/L entries that will occur when you run the program in final mode. When you run the program in final mode, the report shows the updates that have been made.

**Figure 20–5 Cycle Billing Transaction Report**

File . . . . . : R49700										Display Spooled File										Page/Line		1/1	
Control . . . . .																				Columns		1 - 130	
Find . . . . .																							
*.....1.....2.....3.....4.....5.....6.....7.....8.....9.....0.....1.....2.....3																							
49700										JD Edwards World										Page		1	
User ID . . . . . NC6017321										Cycle Billing Transaction Report										Date		2/13/	
Batch Date . . . . . 02/13/08																							
Batch Number . . . *PROOF*																							
G/L Date										Co		Ty		Order		Ln		Customer Name/		Customer Number/		G/L Amount	
																Ty		Account Description		Account Number			
02/13/08										249		S3		115575		1.000		S		Gas station		500	
																		Deferred Revenue		DEPOT1.5040		81.25-	
																		Unbilled Accounts Receivable		DEPOT1.1280		81.25	
																		Deferred Cost of Goods Sold		DEPOT1.6320		98.00	
																		Inventory		DEPOT1.1411		98.00-	
02/13/08										249		S3		115576		1.000		S		Gas station		500	
																		Deferred Revenue		DEPOT1.5040		81.25-	
																		Unbilled Accounts Receivable		DEPOT1.1280		81.25	
																		Deferred Cost of Goods Sold		DEPOT1.6320		98.00	
																		Inventory		DEPOT1.1411		98.00-	
02/13/08										249		S3		115577		1.000		S		Gas station		500	
																		Deferred Revenue		DEPOT1.5040		325.00-	
F3=Exit										F12=Cancel		F19=Left		F20=Right		F24=More keys						More...	

## 20.4.4 Reviewing the Cycle Billing Exception Report (ECS)

The Cycle Billing program generates the Cycle Billing Exception report if any errors occur that prevent a G/L update. For example, the program generates this report if an incorrect AAI exists. The report lists each error and explains the error. You should run the Cycle Billing program in proof mode to determine what errors will occur. You should then correct each error.

**Figure 20–6 Cycle Billing Exception Report**

File . . . . . : R49701										Display Spooled File										Page/Line 1/1	
Control . . . . .																				Column 1 - 130	
Find . . . . .																					
*.....1.....2.....3.....4.....5.....6.....7.....8.....9.....0.....1.....2.....3																					
49701										JD Edwards World										Page = . . . 1	
										Cycle Billing Exception Report										Date = . . . 12.02.	
Order	Or	Line	Detail	Data	Data									Code	Message Description						
Number	Ty	Number	Branch/Plant	Type	Item	Field Value															
115010	S3	1,000	DEPOT1		INCY WK1									4830	Invoice Date Cannot Be Calculated						
																Bottom					
F3=Exit F12=Cancel F19=Left F20=Right F24=More keys																					

## 20.4.5 Processing Options

See [Section 47.25, "Cycle Billing - Final \(P49700\)."](#)

## 20.5 Printing Periodic Invoices (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose End of Day Processing

From ECS End of Day Processing (G491013), choose Periodic Invoice

You run the Periodic Invoice program to print invoices with current scheduled invoice dates. You print periodic invoices after you run the Cycle Billing program. The program selects all sales order detail lines with a scheduled invoice date less than or equal to today's date and creates a print batch for them.

You can set the appropriate processing option to print invoices immediately or at a later time. If you set up the system to use preprinted invoice forms, the program will prompt you to choose the documents to be printed.

The Periodic Invoice program updates the following fields in the Sales Order Detail table:

- Invoice number.
- Invoice date.
- Invoice document type.
- Status codes. The program sets the next status code to run the Update Customer Sales program.

Periodic Invoice is a DREAM Writer batch program.

## 20.5.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that the Cycle Billing program has been run

### To print periodic invoices

1. Choose Periodic Invoice to print the invoices.

The Print Periodic Invoices form appears if you set up the system to use preprinted invoices.

**Figure 20–7 Print Periodic Invoices screen**

```

49582                                Print Periodic Invoices
Batch Number 01.      898              Periodic Invoice
Business Unit. .      TRAN             Document Date. . 12.09.94

This is the list of documents to be printed, Press ENTER to begin printing.

Doc Prt   Doc   Next   Next Number   Output   Form   Align
P Code Sts Req  Type  Number      Source      Queue 1   ID      Pages
PRIV      Y      RI  94000556 D          TRAN      HOLDD      *STD      2

F4=More Details          F24=More Keys
  
```

2. On Print Periodic Invoices, choose the option to print the batch.

When the system has printed the invoices, the Document Print Control Confirm window appears.

**Figure 20–8 Document Print Control Confirm screen**

```

: 49586          Document Print Control Confirm          :
:                                                        :
: Control #. .    901    Business Unit. .              TRAN :
:                                                        :
: Did all documents print correctly?                    :
:                                                        :
:                                                        :
:                                                        :
:                                                        :
: Reply (Y/N). . . -                                     :
:                                                        :
: F24=More Keys                                         :
:                                                        :

```

3. Verify that all of the invoices have printed correctly.
4. On Document Print Control Confirm, complete the following field:
  - Reply (Y/N)

## 20.5.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Setting up delivery documents to allow for periodic invoicing	<p>If you print a primary invoice document as part of the delivery document set, you cannot print periodic invoices for your customer and item combination. If you want the system to produce a periodic invoice, you must set the primary invoice flag on the Delivery Document Maintenance form as non-primary.</p> <p>You assign a primary invoice to print with delivery documents for customers who want their invoices delivered with the products. If you print a primary invoice with the delivery documents, the Cycle Billing program advances the status of the invoiced sales order lines beyond the periodic invoice step.</p> <p>See <i>Creating Document Codes in the JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide</i> and <a href="#">Section 30.3.4, "Understanding the Document Set (ECS) Preference."</a></p>
Using preprinted invoice forms	<p>If you use preprinted invoice forms, you must set the Document Control Required flag on the Depot Document Print Setup form to Yes. You then set up the control fields on the Document Next Number form for the Document Type code that you used on the Delivery Document Maintenance form.</p> <p>See <i>Setting Up Delivery Documents in the JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide.</i></p>

## 20.5.3 Processing Options

See [Section 47.26, "Periodic Invoice \(P49870\)."](#)

See [Section 47.27, "Daily/Periodic Invoice \(P49880\)."](#)

## 20.6 Printing Interrupted Invoice Batches (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose ECS Sales Order Inquiries

From ECS Sales Order Inquiries (G4910112), choose Load and Delivery Mgmt Inq

### From Load and Delivery Management Inquiries (G4914), choose Document Print Batch Inquiry

If periodic invoice printing is interrupted for any reason or you have problems with preprinted forms, you can access and print the invoices again. After the Periodic Invoice program selects a sales order detail line for printing, it updates the status code. After the line is printed, the program updates the status code again.

The Periodic Invoice program includes a double update of the status code so that you can print the batch again, if necessary. If you run the Periodic Invoice program while you have an interrupted print batch, the program does not select the detail lines included in the interrupted batch and process them again.

### To print interrupted invoice batches

On Document Print Batch Inquiry

**Figure 20–9 Document Print Batch Inquiry screen**

O Control	Business Unit	Batch Type	Batch Status	Last User	Date
6959	DEP01	Delivery Docume	Restart Require	LD55017017	06/26/16
6960	DEP01	Delivery Docume	Print Started	LD55017017	06/26/16
7101	DEP01	Delivery Docume	Print Started	NC6017321	02/21/07

- Complete the following field:
  - Business Unit
- Choose the appropriate batch number under the Control Number heading.  
The Document Print Control form appears.



**Figure 20–10 Document Print Control screen**

49582 Document Print Control

Batch Number 01: 6959 Delivery Documents  
Business Unit: DEPOT1 Document Date: 06/01/17

Select documents to print, then press enter to begin printing

O	P	Depot	Doc Code	S	Prt	Do	Next Number R	Next Source	Output Queue 1	Form ID	Atn Pag
		DEPOT1	BDEL	5	Y	DL	0	DEPOT1	QPRINT	*STD	
		DEPOT1	BINV	5	Y	BI	0	DEPOT1	QPRINT	*STD	***

Opt: 1=Select Document for Print F4=More Details F24=More Keys

- On Document Print Control, choose the option to print the batch.

When the system has printed the invoices, the Document Print Control Confirm window appears.

**Figure 20–11 Document Print Control Confirm screen**

49586 Document Print Control Confirm

Control No: 2014 Business Unit: DEPOT1

Did all documents print correctly?

Reply (Y/N) |

- Verify that all of the invoices have printed correctly.
- On Document Print Control Confirm, complete the following field:
  - Reply (Y/N)

**See Also:**

- [Section 20.5, "Printing Periodic Invoices \(ECS\)"](#) for the processing options for this program.



---

## Update Customer Sales

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 21.1, "Updating Customer Sales \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 21.2, "Running the Sales Update \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 21.3, "Reviewing and Approving Journal Entries \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 21.4, "Posting Journal Entries for ECS Sales Order Management,"](#)
- [Section 21.5, "Printing Unposted Transactions for ECS Sales Order Management."](#)

### 21.1 Updating Customer Sales (ECS)

You run Update Customer Sales to:

- Create journal entries for posting to the G/L and reverse the entries created by the Load Confirm program and the deferred entries created by the Cycle Billing program
- Create accounts receivable records
- Update the on-hand balance of inventory in the Item Location table for bulk items, if they were not updated by the Load Confirm program, and packaged items, if they were not updated by the Cycle Billing program
- Update history in the Sales Summary History table
- Ensure that sales and commission reports reflect invoiced orders

JD Edwards World recommends that you run the Update Customer Sales program during off-peak hours. You can run Update Customer Sales during normal business hours because the system does not require the exclusive use of database files. However, the Update Customer Sales program might attempt to update a record that someone is using. When this occurs, the system issues a break message to that user and a similar message to the system operator. While waiting for a response, the system stops the sales update until you release the record.

Update Customer Sales is a DREAM Writer batch program.

### 21.2 Running the Sales Update (ECS)

#### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose End of Day Processing

From ECS End of Day Processing (G491013), choose Update Customer Sales

You run the Update Customer Sales program to create journal entries and update all tables associated with order processing. You can run this program in proof or final mode. The system generates three reports. To review the journal entries created by the program, you can:

- Review the Summarized/Detail Invoice Journal
- Review the Sales Update Error Report
- Review the Sales Journal

### 21.2.1 Before You Begin

- Set the appropriate processing option to run Update Customer Sales in proof or final mode

### 21.2.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Recording bulk product gain/loss	<p>You can set the bulk product processing options for the Update Customer Sales program to instruct the program to write temperature gain/loss records for customers billed at ambient temperature when the inventory has been relieved at standard temperature. The gain or loss is calculated in one of the following ways:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Cost basis, which computes the difference between the extension of ambient volume multiplied by cost and standard volume multiplied by cost. The calculation uses the primary unit of measure.</li><li>■ Revenue basis, which computes the difference between the extension of ambient volume multiplied by price and standard volume multiplied by price. The calculation uses the pricing unit of measure.</li></ul> <p>See Calculating a Gain or Loss for Received Products in the <i>JD Edwards World Bulk Stock Management Guide</i> for more information about bulk product gain/loss.</p>
Assigning invoice numbers	<p>You can use a separate version of the Update Customer Sales program to have the system assign invoice numbers using A/R Next Numbers. You can run this version of the Update Customer Sales program in either proof or final mode.</p> <p>See Set Up Next Numbers in the <i>JD Edwards World General Accounting I Guide</i>.</p>
Updating inventory	<p>During the load confirmation process, the system updates the quantity of on-hand inventory for bulk items in the Item Location table.</p> <p>If you do not process a detail line through load confirmation, the Update Customer Sales program updates inventory for bulk items and writes a record to the Bulk Product Transaction table (F41511). If you process a sales order detail line through load confirmation, the system does not update inventory quantities during sales update.</p>

Topic	Description
<b>Summarizing journal entries</b>	<p>When you set the summarization processing options for the Update Customer Sales program, the program summarizes different types of entries. A summary is generally recommended to eliminate a complete set of journal entries for each detail line.</p> <p>You summarize A/R entries within each invoice using the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Document Key Company (KCO)</li> <li>■ Document Number (DOCO)</li> <li>■ Document Type (DCT)</li> <li>■ Company (CO)</li> <li>■ Pay Status (PST)</li> <li>■ Tax Area (TXA1)</li> <li>■ Tax Explanation (EXR1)</li> <li>■ G/L Class Code (GLC)</li> <li>■ G/L Bank Account (GLBA)</li> <li>■ Payment Terms (PTC)</li> <li>■ Due Date (DD)</li> <li>■ Due Date Century (DD#)</li> <li>■ Discount Due Date (DDN)</li> <li>■ Discount Date Century (DDN#)</li> <li>■ Check Routing Code (CRC)</li> <li>■ Item Number (ITM)</li> </ul> <p>You summarize G/L entries within each invoice using the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Short Account ID (AID)</li> <li>■ Subledger (SBL)</li> <li>■ Subledger Type (SBLT)</li> </ul>
<b>Summarizing journal entries (cont.)</b>	<p>You summarize COGS and inventory G/L entries into a separate batch with a batch type G. Depending on how you set the processing option, the system updates the G/L accounts in the following ways:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Detail processing - Batch type I updates inventory, revenue, COGS, and tax liability</li> <li>■ Summarized processing - Batch type I updates revenue and tax liability; batch type G updates COGS and inventory</li> </ul>

### 21.2.3 Reviewing the Summarized/Detail Invoice Journal (ECS)

You use the Summarized/Detail Invoice Journal report to review the G/L entries that the system will post. Entries can be detailed or summarized, depending on how you set the summarization processing options for the Update Customer Sales program. The report shows G/L transactions by:

- Account
- Total for the order
- Total for all orders

The report identifies errors that the program detects, including:

- Invalid AAIs
- Invalid accounts
- Missing accounts
- Invalid dates

Figure 21–1 Summarized Invoice Journal screen

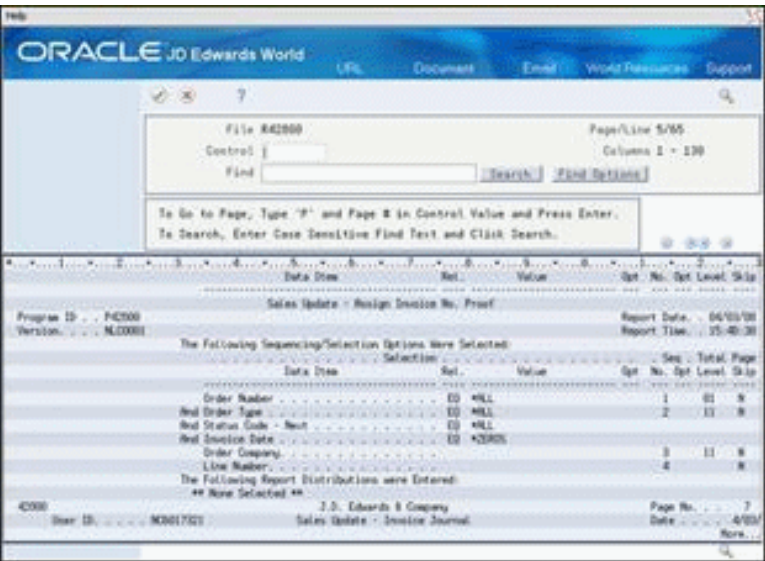
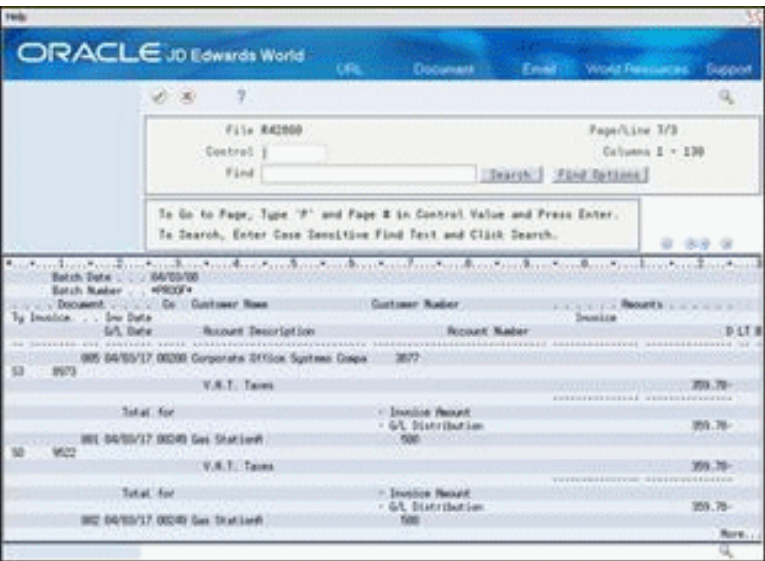


Figure 21–2 Detail Invoice Journal screen



21.2.4 Reviewing the Sales Update Error Report (ECS)

The Update Customer Sales program generates the Sales Update Error report when it detects errors. The system does not post the records listed on this report until you correct the errors and run the Update Customer Sales program again to reprocess the records.

**Figure 21–3 Sales Update - Error Report**

Display Spooled File										Page/Line	1/1
File . . . . .	R42801									Columns	1 - 130
Control . . . . .	1651403										
Find . . . . .											
*...+...1...+...2...+...3...+...4...+...5...+...6...+...7...+...8...+...9...+...0...+...1...+...2...+...3										Page	1
42801										Date	14.02.
JD Edwards World											
Sales Update - Error Report											
Doc No.	TY	Order	TY	Line	Data Type	Data Item	Field Value	Code	Message Description		
1	RI		1	CO							
					1,000	0911	CO	00067	0051	Company Number Invalid	
					1,000	0911	DGJ	108045	0000	Date Is In Future Fiscal Year	
					1,000	0911	KCO	00067	0051	Company Number Invalid	
					1,000	0911	ANI	6701.6024	0028	Account Number Invalid	
					1,000	0911	DGJ	140208	0000	Date Is In Future Fiscal Year	
					1,000	0911	KCO	00067	0051	Company Number Invalid	
				1	CO						
					1,000	0911	4230	00100	CO	IN30	0381 A.A.I. Account Not Setup
				1	CO						
					1,000	0911	4250	00100	CO	TXTX	0381 A.A.I. Account Not Setup
				1	SB						
					1,000		C1			0965	Order on Hold
4	RI		1	SO							
F3=Exit F12=Cancel F19=Left F20=Right F24=More keys										More...	

## 21.2.5 Reviewing the Sales Journal (ECS)

To analyze sales information, you can set the print sales journal processing options for the Update Customer Sales program to run the Sales Journal program. The Sales Journal program generates the Sales Journal report using information from the Sales Order Header and Sales Order Detail tables. This report shows sales amounts by category, such as stock sales, freight, and so forth, with summary or detailed journal entries. The report also shows costs of goods and profit percentages.

The Sales Journal program produces totals by the following:

- Order type
- Branch or warehouse
- Company
- Entire report

Alternatively, you can run the Sales Journal program from the ECS Sales Order Reports menu.

**Figure 21–4 Sales Journal report**

Display Spooled File										Page/Line	3/1
File . . . . .	R42810									Columns	1 - 130
Control . . . . .											
Find . . . . .											
*...+...1...+...2...+...3...+...4...+...5...+...6...+...7...+...8...+...9...+...0...+...1...+...2...+...3										Page	3
42810										Date	14.02.
JD Edwards World											
Sales Journal Print											
Customer Name/Number	Invoice Inv Date	Stk Item Sales	Non-Stock Sales	Freight/ Postage	Sales Taxes	Invoice Total	Cost of Goods	Profit Amount/Pct			
Gas StationA 500	-	255,00-				255,00-					
Total For Header Business Uni	1	255,00-				255,00-					
Corporate Office Systems Compa 4242	-	37180,00			357,90	37.537,90	33727,00	3453,0 9,287			
Total For Header Business Uni	EN	37180,00			357,90	37.537,90	33727,00	3453,0 9,287			
European Market Liaison 53214	-	14251,00			100,00	14.351,00	9437,00	4814,0 33,780			
Total For Header Business Uni	LM	14251,00			100,00	14.351,00	9437,00	4814,0	More...		
F3=Exit F12=Cancel F19=Left F20=Right F24=More keys											

## 21.2.6 Processing Options

See [Section 47.28, "Sales Update \(P42800\)."](#)

See [Section 47.29, "Print Sales Journal \(P42810\)."](#)

## 21.3 Reviewing and Approving Journal Entries (ECS)

### Navigation

**From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose End of Day Processing**

**From ECS End of Day Processing (G491013), choose an option**

To ensure accuracy, you should review the batch tables produced by the system during Update Customer Sales before you actually post them to the G/L.

If your company requires both review and management approval before posting a batch to the general ledger, only users with an authorized approval user ID can change a batch to an approved status.

The Update Customer Sales program can create up to three batches of journal entries, including batch I (Customer Sales Journal), batch G (Inventory/COGS Journal), and batch ST (Branch Sales Journal). You can choose from the following menu options to review and approve the batches:

- Customer Sales Journal Review
- Inventory/COGS Journal Review
- Branch Sales Journal Review

The review and approval process is the same for all three batches.

Complete the following tasks:

- Review journal entries
- Approve journal entries

### See Also:

- Review and Approve Journal Entries in the *JD Edwards World General Accounting I Guide*.

### 21.3.1 Reviewing Journal Entries- for ECS Sales Order Management

You review journal entries to verify their accuracy before posting them to the general ledger.

You can access the following three levels of journal information from the review forms:

- The general batch review displays batches by user ID, batch status, batch number, and/or a specific batch entry date range.
- The detailed batch review displays journal entry header information (one line per document) for a batch.
- The individual document review displays journal entry detail.

### To review journal entries

On the selected review form

1. Display all batches for all users and all statuses or, to limit your search, complete one or more of the following fields:
  - User ID
  - Batch Number



- Batch Date From
  - Batch Date Thru
  - Batch Status
2. Choose the appropriate batch job for detailed batch review.
  3. Choose the option to review the individual document.

Field	Explanation
Batch Number	A number that identifies a group of transactions that are processed and balanced as a unit. When you add a batch, you can either assign a batch number or let the system assign it through Next Numbers. When you change, locate, or delete a batch, you must specify the batch number. The system closes the batch when you return to the menu.
Batch Date From	The date of the batch. If you leave this field blank, the system date is used.
Batch Date Thru	The ending date of the range for the batches you want to display. If you specify a From date and leave the Thru date blank, the system displays all batches with that batch date and future batch dates.
Batch Status	<p>A code that indicates the posting status of a batch. Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ blank – Unposted batches that are pending approval or have a status of approved.</li> <li>■ A – Approved for posting. The batch has no errors, is in balance, but has not yet been posted.</li> <li>■ D – Posted. The batch posted successfully.</li> <li>■ E – Error. The batch is in error. You must correct the batch before it can post.</li> <li>■ P – Posting. The system is posting the batch to the general ledger. The batch is unavailable until the posting process is complete. If errors occur during the post, the batch status is changed to E (error).</li> <li>■ U – In use. The batch is temporarily unavailable because someone is working with it.</li> </ul> <p>These valid codes are set up in user defined codes (system 98, type IC).</p>

### 21.3.2 Approving Journal Entries for ECS Sales Order Management

If your company requires management approval before posting a batch to the general ledger, users with an authorized approval user ID can change a batch status to approved.

#### To approve journal entries

On the selected review form

1. Choose the appropriate batch.
2. Complete the following field:
  - Approved

Field	Explanation
Approved	A code that indicates whether a batch is ready for posting. Valid codes are:  A – Approved, ready for posting. P – Pending approval. The batch will not post.  If the system constants do not specify manager approval, the system automatically approves batches that are not in error.

### 21.3.3 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Revising an unposted batch	You can change the associated explanations and the G/L distributions of an unposted journal entry. You cannot change the following fields: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Document Type</li><li>■ Document Number</li><li>■ Document Company</li><li>■ G/L Date</li><li>■ Currency Code</li><li>■ Ledger Type</li></ul> You can also add a journal entry to a batch by choosing a journal entry in that batch, clearing the Journal Entry form, and then entering the journal entry.

## 21.4 Posting Journal Entries for ECS Sales Order Management

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose End of Day Processing

From ECS End of Day Processing (G491013), choose an option

After you have reviewed and approved journal entries, you can post the batches to the G/L. The post process does the following:

- Selects qualified batches of unposted transactions from the Account Ledger table
- Edits and verifies each transaction
- Posts accepted transactions to the Account Balances (F0902) table
- Marks each transaction and batch header as posted in the Account Ledger table and the Batch Control (F0011) table

You can choose from the following menu options to post the batches created by the Update Customer Sales program:

- Post Customer Sales to G/L
- Post Inventory/COGS Journal
- Post Branch Sales Journal

The post process and processing options are the same for all three batches.

**See Also:**

- Post Journal Entries in the *JD Edwards World General Accounting I Guide*.

**21.4.1 Processing Options**

See [Section 47.30, "General Ledger Post \(P09800\)."](#)

**21.5 Printing Unposted Transactions for ECS Sales Order Management****Navigation**

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose End of Day Processing

From ECS End of Day Processing (G491013), choose an option

You can print reports that list unposted transactions to review the transactions that were not posted to the G/L, verify account accuracy, or research out-of-balance batches.

Choose one of the following menu options to print unposted transaction reports:

- Print Unposted Inventory/COGS
- Print Unposted Branch Sales

Both options generate a standard general journal report that includes posted and unposted transactions.

**Figure 21–5 Unposted Transactions by General Ledger Account report**

File . . . . . R09301									
Control . . . . .									
Find . . . . .									
*.....1.....2.....3.....4.....5.....6.....7.....8.....9.....0.....1.....2.....3									
09301									
Batch Number - 75512 JD Edwards World									
Batch Date - 20.03.95 General Journal									
Document Do G/L Co. Explanation Unposted Transactions									
Ty Date Account Description G/L Account									
18024 BJ 30.06.98 00249 Initial Stock of Inventory DEPOT1.1411									
Line No 1,0 Leaded Fuel									
BJ 30.06.98 00249 Initial Stock of Inventory DEPOT1.6310									
Line No 2,0 Leaded Fuel									
Line No 2,0 Cost of Goods Sold									
Document Total									
Batch Total - Posted									
Batch Total - Unposted									
09301									
Batch Number - 75519 JD Edwards World									
General Journal									
F3=Exit F12=Cancel F19=Left F20=Right F24=More keys									

**21.5.1 Processing Options**

See [Section 47.31, "General Journal By Batch \(P09301\)."](#)



# Part II

---

## Periodic

This part contains these chapters:

- [Chapter 22, "Pricing,"](#)
- [Chapter 23, "Set Up a Base Pricing Structure,"](#)
- [Chapter 24, "Work with Base Pricing,"](#)
- [Chapter 25, "Define Price Adjustments,"](#)
- [Chapter 26, "Work with Repricing."](#)



This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 22.1, "Objectives,"](#)
- [Section 22.2, "About Pricing \(ECS\)."](#)

## **22.1 Objectives**

- To understand pricing hierarchies
- To establish base prices for your items
- To define varying prices based on customers, customer groups, items, and item groups
- To define price adjustments, such as discounts and price breaks, based on quantities, amounts, or weight
- To set up contract pricing
- To update prices for items or customers

## **22.2 About Pricing (ECS)**

For each item that you want to sell, you must define the price at which you want to sell it. You use ECS Sales Order Management pricing to define the base prices that the system retrieves when you enter items on a sales order.

Pricing includes the following tasks:

- Setting up a base pricing structure
- Working with base pricing
- Defining price adjustments
- Working with repricing

Before you define base prices for items, you must set up a base pricing structure. The system uses this pricing structure to retrieve base prices and to calculate price adjustments and updates. You can define base prices for any combination of items, item groups, customers, or customer groups. Customers can be Parent, Ship To, or Sold To addresses. After you set up a pricing structure, you define a hierarchy to determine how the system searches for prices.

You can define base prices with effective dates, so that you can define prices for future use or for limited time promotions and specials. You can also define credit prices that you want the system to use when items are returned.

After you define base prices, you can set up the following additional types of price calculations:

- Price adjustments for groups of items
- Contract pricing, which applies special pricing for an item to a single customer or customer group
- Trade discount pricing, which is a discount percentage on all items for a specific customer
- Cash discount pricing, which you can apply to individual sales order detail lines

You can use repricing to set up additional discounts and markups or to recalculate sales orders. You use the Standard Order/Basket Reprice program to update prices for specific items. This program allows you to:

- Reprice lines containing items that belong to product families, which are called baskets
- Reprice an entire order

You use the Update Sales Price/Cost program to recalculate sales orders for specific customers based on the most current base price or price adjustments. This program allows you to:

- Update sales order costs and prices
- Update sales order exchange rates

---

---

**Note:** Any price you enter directly on a sales order overrides the base price that the system retrieves.

---

---



---

## Set Up a Base Pricing Structure

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 23.1, "Setting Up a Base Pricing Structure \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 23.2, "Setting Up Customer Price Groups \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 23.3, "Setting Up Item Price Groups \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 23.4, "Generating Price Group Relationships,"](#)
- [Section 23.5, "Defining the Base Price Preference Hierarchy \(ECS\)."](#)

### 23.1 Setting Up a Base Pricing Structure (ECS)

Before you define base prices for items, you must set up a base pricing structure. The system uses this pricing structure to retrieve base prices and to calculate price adjustments and updates. A base pricing structure can consist of any combination of items, item groups, customers, or customer groups. Customers can be Parent, Ship To, or Sold To addresses.

To simplify the process of defining and maintaining base prices, you set up price groups for customers and items with similar characteristics. After you set up price groups and assign the group names to customers and items, you generate price group relationships. Price group relationships define the possible combinations for customer and item groups.

After you set up a base pricing structure, you define a base price preference hierarchy. When the system retrieves prices, it uses the hierarchy to determine the order in which it searches for base price records.

#### 23.1.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that customer information has been set up in the Address Book and customer master. See *Entering Basic Address Information (P01051)* in the *JD Edwards World Address Book and Electronic Mail Guide* and *Entering Customers* in the *JD Edwards World Accounts Receivable Guide*.
- Verify that customer billing instructions have been set up for your customers. See [Chapter 37, "Set Up Customer Billing Instructions."](#)
- Verify that item information has been set up in the Item Master (F4101), Item Branch (F4102), and Item Location (F41021) tables. See *Entering Item Master Information* in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*.

## 23.2 Setting Up Customer Price Groups (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose Customer Billing Instructions

You set up customer price groups to apply pricing schemes to specific groups of customers. Complete the following tasks to set up customer price groups:

- Set up simple customer price groups
- Set up complex customer price groups

You use customer price groups to retrieve base price information for sales orders. For example, you create a customer group named RETAIL. You then set up this group to buy markers at 1.20 each, while all other customers buy the markers at 1.50 each.

You create user defined codes for customer group names and then assign customers to these group names in each customer's billing instructions. The system checks the customer's billing instructions to determine if the customer is in a group and whether any special pricing applies. In the RETAIL example, the system will price the order for the RETAIL customer at 1.20 and the orders for other customers at 1.50.

You can also set up complex customer groups to allow for greater flexibility in your pricing structures. You can use up to four category codes to set up complex customer groups. For example, within the customer group RETAIL, you can create subgroups to charge a different price for an item to customers based on their line of business, geographic region, or sales volume.

The category code sequence you enter determines how the system displays the category code fields on the related forms. The order in which you choose category codes does not affect how the system searches for prices.

### 23.2.1 Setting Up Simple Customer Price Groups

#### To set up simple customer price groups

On Customer Billing Instructions

Figure 23-1 Customer Billing Instructions screen

The screenshot shows the 'Customer Billing Instructions' window (4206) in Oracle JD Edwards World. The window has a menu bar with 'Tools' and 'Help'. Below the menu bar is a toolbar with icons for various functions. The main area is divided into two columns of fields. The left column includes: Action Code, Address Number, Billing Address Type (with a dropdown showing '\$, B or X'), Related Address Code, Customer Price Group, Trade Discount, Minimum Order Value, Maximum Order Value, Print Message, Order Template, COA Print (Y/N), Deliver Instructions, and Warranty Customer Group. The right column includes: Customer PO Required, Credit Check Level, Exempt from Credit Hold, Delivery Note (Y/N), Invoice Consolidation, Item Restrictions, Allow Backorders, Substitutes Allowed (Y/N), Partial Line Shipments, and Partial Order Shipments. At the bottom, there is a status bar with keyboard shortcuts: F8=Related, F10=Restrictions, F12=Second Page, F15=EDI Proc., F24=More Keys.

1. Access the User Defined Codes window for the customer price group.

Figure 23-2 User Defined Codes Window screen

The screenshot shows the 'B1QM User Defined Codes Window'. The window has a menu bar with 'Functions', 'Options', 'Tools', and 'Help'. Below the menu bar is a toolbar with icons for various functions. The main area displays the title 'CPGP' and '40 PC Customer Price Groups'. Below this is a 'Skip To Code' field. A table lists various codes and their descriptions:

Code	Description
Blank	Blank - Cust. Price Grp. 40/PC
COMP	Large Computer Store
DIST	Distributor
DISTANCE	Distance From Depot
LOB	Line of Business
ORDVAL	Retail Pricing Group
PARTNER	Trading Partners
PREFER	Preferred Customer Group
POWER	Power Retailer
RETAIL	Retail Pricing Group

2. On the User Defined Codes window, choose the function to access the User Defined Code Revisions form.

**Figure 23-3 User Defined Code Revisions screen**

00051 User Defined Code Revisions

Field Sensitive Help  
 Display Error Message  
 Display Functions  
 Exit Program  
 More Details  
 User Defined Code Typ  
 Repository Services  
 Redisplay Previously C  
 Memo (Cursor Sensitive  
 Where Used  
 Alternate Lang Desc (C  
 Print User Defined Code  
 Clear Screen

00051 User Defined Code Revisions

Action Code

System Code  
 User Defined Codes  
 Skip To Code  
 Customer Price Groups

Code	Description
	Blank - Cust. Price Grp. 40/PC
COMP	Large Computer Store
DIST	Distributor
DISTANCE	Distance From Depot
LOB	Line of Business
ORDVAL	Retail Pricing Group
PARTNER	Trading Partners
PREFER	Preferred Customer Group
POWER	Power Retailer
RETAIL	Retail Pricing Group
SALESTER	Sales Territory
STATE	State

F5=Code Types F14=Memo F15=Where Used F16=Translate F21=Print F24=More

3. On User Defined Code Revisions, complete the following fields to create a customer group name:
  - Character Code
  - Description

**See Also:**

  - Work with User Defined Codes in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.
4. Return to the Customer Billing Instructions form.
5. On Customer Billing Instructions, complete the following field to define a simple customer group:
  - Customer Price Group

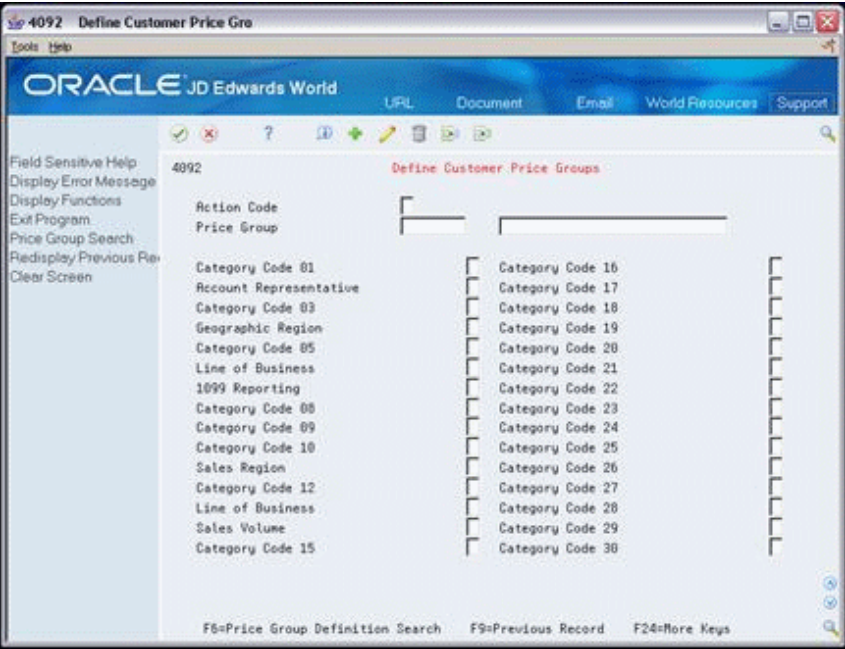
## 23.2.2 Setting Up Complex Customer Price Groups

### To set up complex customer price groups

On Customer Billing Instructions

1. Choose the option to access the Customer Group Definition.

Figure 23–4 Define Customer Price Groups screen



2. On Define Customer Price Groups, complete the following field:
  - Price Group
3. To identify subgroups used in a customer price group, complete up to four of the following fields:
  - Category Code

---

**Note:** The Category Code fields might be either numbered or named, depending on how your company has set them up (for example, Category Code 01 or Line of Business).

---

Field	Explanation
Price Group	<p>A user defined code (system 40, type PC) that identifies a customer group. You can group customers with similar characteristics, such as comparable pricing.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>A group of category codes from the Address Book that defines the customer's pricing structure.</p>
Group Code Sequence Number	<p>This numerical value is used to specify the sequence of category codes within Group Codes. The value must be equal to or between 1 and 4. Also, any sequence entered may not skip values (that is, you may not enter the sequence 1,3 with 2 missing.)</p>

### 23.2.3 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Changing customer price group information	To make changes to a price group that has already been created and assigned to customers, you can access the Define Customer Price Groups form directly from the Price Management menu.

## 23.3 Setting Up Item Price Groups (ECS)

Item price groups are similar to customer price groups. You set up item price groups so that you can define base price information for a group of items one time rather than for many items on an individual basis. Complete the following tasks to set up item price groups:

- Set up simple item price groups
- Set up complex item price groups

For example, if you sell several types of pens whose characteristics are identical except for their color, you can group these items to simplify pricing. You create a user defined code for the group, such as PENS, and assign the pens to the group name. You can then define one price for this group.

You can also set up complex item groups to allow for greater flexibility in your pricing structures. You can use up to four category codes to define complex item groups.

For example, if you have two types of pens within the group PENS, markers and ball point, you can specify a different price for each type of pen. When you enter an order for pens, the system checks the category codes assigned to the item to determine if the pen is a marker or a ball point and retrieves the appropriate price.

The category code sequence you enter determines how the system displays the category code fields on the related forms. The order in which you choose category codes does not affect how the system searches for prices.

### 23.3.1 Setting up Simple Item Price Groups

**To set up simple item price groups**

#### **Navigation**

**From Inventory Management (G41), choose Inventory Master/Transactions**

**From Inventory Master/Transactions (G4111), choose Item Master Information**

**On Item Master Information**



**Figure 23–5 Item Master Information screen**

1. To create item price group names, complete the steps for creating user defined codes for customer price group names.

**See Also:**

- Work with User Defined Codes in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.

2. Complete the following field to define a simple item group:

- Item Price Group

## 23.3.2 Setting Up Complex Item Price Groups

### To set up complex item price groups

#### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose Price Management

From Price Management (G491022), choose Define Item Price Groups

On Define Item Price Groups

**Figure 23–6 Define Item Price Group screen**

1. Complete the following field:
  - Price Group
2. To identify subgroups used in a customer price group, complete up to four of the following fields:
  - Category Code

---

**Note:** The Category Code fields might be either numbered or named, depending on how your company has set them up (for example, Category Code 01 or Line of Business).

---

## 23.4 Generating Price Group Relationships

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose Price Management

From Price Management (G491022), choose an option

After you set up price groups and assign the group names to customers and items, you can generate customer and item price group relationships. You generate price group relationships to define the possible combinations of customer and item groups that you can use for pricing.

You can use two batch programs to generate price group relationships:

- Customer Price Group Generation
- Item Price Group Generation

These programs generate records in the Item/Customer Groups Relationships table (F4093), which contains the allowable combinations for customer or item groups and category codes. You can set the processing options to specify up to five group codes



for which you want the system to create detail records. If you do not specify any codes, the system will generate relationships for all groups.

### 23.4.1 Processing Options

See [Section 48.1, "Customer Price Group Generation \(P40932\)."](#)

See [Section 48.2, "Item Price Group Generation \(P40931\)."](#)

## 23.5 Defining the Base Price Preference Hierarchy (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose Price Management

From Price Management (G491022), choose Preference Hierarchy

When the system retrieves prices, it uses the base price preference hierarchy to determine the order in which it searches base price records. You define base price preference hierarchies on the Preference Hierarchy form, which contains rows identifying customers and customer groups and columns identifying items and item groups. You use the intersection of the rows and columns to enter your hierarchy sequence.

When the system searches for a price, the hierarchy begins with the intersection in which you enter 1. The system searches for records defined for that customer and item combination. If it does not find prices defined for that combination, it searches for the combination defined by the intersection in which you entered 2, and so forth.

For example, you establish the following base prices:

Item	Customer	Price
XXX	A	0.98
XXX	Group	1.00
XXX	All	1.10

Category	Price
Customer A	Price = 0.98 for Item XXX
Group	Price = 1.00 for Item XXX
All Customers	Price = 1.10 for Item XXX

If the base price preference hierarchy indicates that the system should search first for a price defined for an item and customer combination, and you enter a sales order for item XXX and customer A, the system selects 0.98 as the price. If you change the base price preference hierarchy so that item and all addresses is the first search criterion, the system selects 1.10 as the price for customer A and item XXX.

### To define the base price preference hierarchy

On Preference Hierarchy

**Figure 23–7 Preference Hierarchy screen**

40073 Preference Hierarchy

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
Preference Master Rev  
Clear Screen

40073 Preference Hierarchy

Action Code 1  
Preference Type 51 Base Price - Sales Order

		Item	
		Number	Group
Ship To:			
Address	1		
Customer Group			
Sold To:			
Address	2		
Customer Group			
Parent:			
Address			3
Customer Group			
All Addresses	4		

F10=Preference Master F24=More Keys

Type consecutive numbers at the intersections of rows and columns to define the pricing hierarchy.

### 23.5.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Limiting processing time for a search	You can enter up to 14 numbers in the preference hierarchy. However, you should limit your hierarchy to three or four numbers. Each number represents a search by the system through the Base Price table (F4106). Each number you add to the hierarchy increases system processing time.

---

## Work with Base Pricing

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 24.1, "Working with Base Pricing \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 24.2, "Defining Base Prices \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 24.3, "Updating Base Prices \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 24.4, "Converting Price Levels \(ECS\)."](#)

### 24.1 Working with Base Pricing (ECS)

For each item that you want to sell, you must define the base price at which you want to sell it.

You can define base prices for any combination of items, item groups, customers, or customer groups. The system retrieves the base price when you enter the item on a sales order.

After you define base prices, you can update them as needed, for example, to change a price or create a price that will be effective on a future date. You can update base prices individually, or you can run the Base Price Maintenance - Batch program to update multiple prices at one time. When you update multiple prices in batch mode, the system will either override the existing price with a new price or calculate an adjustment to the existing price, depending on how you set the processing options.

#### 24.1.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Pricing hierarchy	<p>During sales order entry, the system searches the following combinations, based on the pricing hierarchy you have defined, to retrieve a price:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Item only</li><li>■ Item group only</li><li>■ Item and customer</li><li>■ Item and customer group</li><li>■ Item group and customer</li><li>■ Item group and customer group</li></ul>

## 24.2 Defining Base Prices (ECS)

### Navigation

**From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose Price Management**

**From Price Management (G491022), choose Base Price Revisions**

You should define the base price for each item you sell. The system retrieves the base price information when you enter the item on a sales order.

You can define base prices for any combination of items, item groups, customers, or customer groups. Customers can be Parent, Ship To, or Sold To addresses.

When you enter an item in the Item Master table (F4101), you should enter the sales price level. The sales price level determines how you define the base price for an item. You can define prices at the following levels:

- Item level. If you define pricing at the item level only, you cannot include branch/plant, lot, or location information. You define one overall price for an item.
- Item/branch level. If you define pricing at the branch/plant level, you cannot include location and lot information. You define different prices for each item and branch/plant combination.
- Item/branch/location level. If you define pricing by location and lot, you can also define branch/plant information. You define different prices for each item, branch/plant, and location combination.

You can assign effective dates when you define the base price for an item. If you don't assign effective dates, the system will automatically assign them. You can also specify the sales price based-on date in the system constants to instruct the system which date on the sales order to compare to the effective dates. The sales price based-on date can be the promised date, the order date, or any other date entered on the sales order. The system retrieves the price whose effective date range includes this sales price based-on date.

You can also use effective dates to enter a new price while an old price is still in use. For example, you can overlap the dates for the base price and the dates for a discount price that you are offering for a limited period. When you set up date ranges that overlap, the system retrieves the price that expires first.

For every price, you can also define a credit price to be used for negative quantities.

When you define any special pricing or discounts for an item or customer, the system bases the calculation of the discounted price on the base price.

### 24.2.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that the pricing hierarchy has been defined. See [Section 23.5, "Defining the Base Price Preference Hierarchy \(ECS\)."](#)

#### **To define base prices**

On Base Price Revisions

**Figure 24–1 Base Price Revisions screen**

4006 Base Price Revisions

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program

4006 Base Price Revisions

Base Price Hierarchy Sequence

- 0
  - ☐ Item and Customer
  - ☐ Item and Customer Group
  - ☐ Item Group and Customer Group
  - ☐ Item

Opt: 1=Base Price Revisions F24=More Keys

1. Access the Base Price Revisions form for the item and customer combination for which you want to enter a base price.

If your pricing hierarchy consists of only one item and customer combination, the Base Price Hierarchy Sequence does not appear.

**Figure 24–2 Base Price Revisions (Detail) screen**

The screenshot shows the Oracle JD Edwards World application window titled "4106 Base Price Revisions". The interface includes a menu bar at the top with options like Tools, Help, UPL, Document, Email, World Resources, and Support. Below the menu bar is a toolbar with various icons. On the left side, there is a vertical navigation pane with links such as Field Sensitive Help, Display Error Message, Display Functions, Exit Program, More Details, Redisplay Previous Page, Return to Previous Point, and Clear Screen.

The main area of the screen displays the title "Base Price Revisions" in red. Below this, there are several input fields and labels:

- Action Type**: A dropdown menu showing "T".
- Item Number**: A text field containing "REG".
- Customer Number**: A text field containing "580".
- Branch/Plant**: A text field containing "DEPOT1".

Below these fields is a table with four columns: UN, Unit Price, Date From, and Date Thru. The first row of data shows "LT" under UN, ".9000" under Unit Price, "08/14/97" under Date From, and "08/14/19" under Date Thru. There are several empty rows below the first one.

At the bottom of the screen, there is a status bar with keyboard shortcuts: F6=Price Group Search, F9=Redisplay, and F24=More Keys.

- 2. On Base Price Revisions, complete the following fields:**

- Item Number
- Customer Number

3. Based on the sales price levels that you defined on the Item Master Information form, complete the following optional fields:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Location
  - Lot
4. To enter base prices, complete the following fields:
  - Unit of Measure
  - Unit Price
  - Effective From
  - Effective Thru
5. To enter credit prices, access the fold area.

**Figure 24–3 Base Price Revisions (Fold Area) screen**

6. Complete the following field:
  - Credit Price

Field	Explanation
Unit of Measure	A user defined code (system 00/ type UM) that indicates in what quantity an inventory item is expressed; for example, CS (case) or BX (box).
Amount - Price per Unit	The list or base price to be charged for one unit of this item. In sales order entry, all prices must be set up in the Base Price table (F4106).
Effective From	The date that a transaction, text message, contract, obligation, or preference becomes effective. <i>Form-specific information</i> The date that this price becomes effective.

Field	Explanation
Effective Thru	<p>The date that a transaction, text message, agreement, obligation, or preference has expired or been completed.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The date that this price expires.</p>
Amount - Credit Price	<p>Use this price to enter credit orders in the Sales Order Processing System. To enter a credit order, you should use a Line Type that has the Reverse Sign Flag (RSGN) set to Y in the Line Type Master (F40205). All credit prices are stored in the Base Price File (F4106).</p>

## 24.2.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Viewing category codes	<p>To display fields in which you enter values for the category codes attached to complex item and customer groups, you must enter the price group code in the appropriate field. Then, do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To have the system display the category code fields below the group fields, press enter.</li> <li>■ To view all values for the codes in the Price Group Search window and select them, use the appropriate function key.</li> </ul> <p>The system displays information in this window only if you have run the Generate Customer Price Groups or Generate Item Price Groups programs.</p>
Generating the base price report	<p>You can run the base price report version of the Base Price Maintenance - Batch program to print a report of the existing prices for each record that you select. This version of the Base Price Maintenance program does not perform adjustments or updates. To create this version, you should leave all processing options blank.</p>
Entering multi-currency base prices	<p>You can use ECS Sales Order Management pricing to add prices for items in your domestic currency and as many other currencies as necessary. For example, you can set up base prices for one item in U.S. dollars and French francs.</p> <p>Currency code and unit of measure are both keys to the Base Price table. If you are using multi-currency, the system searches for a price in the following sequence:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Customer's currency and the user-specified unit of measure</li> <li>■ Customer's currency and the item's primary unit of measure</li> <li>■ Domestic currency and the user-specified unit of measure</li> <li>■ Domestic currency and the item's primary unit of measure</li> </ul> <p>If the system does not find a match, it moves to the next level in the pricing hierarchy structure and searches in the same sequence.</p>
Entering credit prices	<p>The system uses credit prices any time you enter a negative quantity on a sales order. To enter a credit order, you should use a line type that has the reverse sign flag set to Y (yes).</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 38.1, "Setting Up Order Line Types (ECS)."</a></p>

**See Also:**

- Entering Item Master Information in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*.

## 24.3 Updating Base Prices (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose Price Management

From Price Management (G491022), choose Base Price Revisions

After you define base prices, you can update them as needed, for example, to change a price or create a price that will be effective on a future date. You can use the Base Price Revisions program to update base prices individually. Or, you can run the Base Price Maintenance - Batch program to update multiple prices at one time.

Base Price Maintenance - Batch is a DREAM Writer program.

You can run Base Price Maintenance - Batch to:

- Change existing prices
- Create future prices

The system creates new prices based on the current price selected by the batch program. When you run a version of the Base Price Maintenance - Batch program in proof mode, the system generates a report that displays the updates that the program will make to the selected records when you run it in final mode.

When you set up a version of this program, you choose the specific fields that you want the system to select. For example, you can set up a version to select customer, customer group, item, or item group. Or, you can exclude certain types of prices that you do not want to update.

Any new prices that the system creates are included in the report, as well as their effective dates and the old price that the system used as the basis for the new prices. You can run this program in proof mode as many times as necessary.

### 24.3.1 Changing Existing Prices (ECS)

To change multiple prices, you can run the base price revisions version of the Base Price Maintenance - Batch program. Depending on how you set the processing options, the program will either override the existing price or calculate either a percentage or an amount adjustment to the existing price.

When you submit the base price revisions version in proof mode, the system generates a report that displays the updates that the program will make to the selected records when you run it in final mode. You must set the update processing option for this program to perform updates to the Base Price table (F4106).



**Figure 24–4 Base Price Revisions - Proof report**

Display Spooled File									
File	R41830							Page/Line	1/1
Control								Columns	1 - 130
Find									
.....1.....2.....3.....4.....5.....6.....7.....8.....9.....0.....1.....2.....3									
41830	JD Edwards World						Page	-	
Base Price Revisions - Proof									
Item	Item	Customer	Customer	Cur	UM	Old	New	Date	Effective
Number	Group	Number	Group	Cod		Unit Price	Unit Price	From	Thru
-----									
ACE									
Acetone Bulk									
Branch/Plant	DEPOT1								
					USD BL	12,4000	13,6400	09.03.95	09.03.0
ADD									
Fuel Additive									
Branch/Plant	DEPOT1								
					USD LT	1,2500	1,3750	01.03.95	01.03.0
ADDUNL									
Unleaded with additive (Kit)									
Branch/Plant	DEPOT1								
					USD LT	0,2700	0,2970	13.08.96	31.12.2
A200									
Acetone-200LT Drum									
More...									
F3=Exit	F12=Cancel	F19=Left	F20=Right	F24=More keys					

### 24.3.2 Creating Future Prices (ECS)

To create multiple base prices that you can use on a future date, you can run the future price additions version of the Base Price Maintenance - Batch program. This version of the program writes new price records to the Base Price table based on the effective dates you enter in the price additions processing option for this program. You must specify a from date and a through date or the program will end without creating the new prices.

When you submit the future price additions version in proof mode, the system generates a report that displays the updates that the program will make to the selected records when you run it in final mode.

The system creates future prices based on the existing price with the most recent expiration date. Depending on how you set the processing options, the program will either override the existing price or calculate either a percentage or an amount adjustment to the existing price. If you leave the adjustment type and factor blank, the system copies future prices from the current price and does not apply any adjustments.

**Figure 24–5 Future Price Additions report**

Display Spooled File									
File . . . . .	R41830						Page/Line	1/1	
Control . . . . .							Columns	1 - 130	
Find . . . . .									
*.....1.....2.....3.....4.....5.....6.....7.....8.....9.....0.....1.....2.....3									
41830	JD Edwards World						Page	-	14.02.
Future Price Additions - Proof									
Item	Item	Customer	Customer	Cur	UM	Old	New	Date	Effective
Number	Group	Number	Group	Cod		Unit Price	Unit Price	From	Thru
-----									
ACE									
Acetone Bulk									
Branch/Plant . .	DEPOT1								
					USD BL	12,4000		09.03.95	09.03.0
					USD BL	12,4000	13,6400	01.01.08	31.12.0
ADD									
Fuel Additive									
Branch/Plant . .	DEPOT1								
					USD LT	1,2500		01.03.95	01.03.0
					USD LT	1,2500	1,3750	01.01.08	31.12.0
ADDUNL									
Unleaded with additive (Kit)									
Branch/Plant . .	DEPOT1								
					USD LT	0,2700		13.08.96	31.12.2
									More...
F3=Exit F12=Cancel F19=Left F20=Right F24=More keys									

### 24.3.3 Processing Options

See [Section 48.3, "Base Price Report \(P41830\)."](#)

Data Selection

When you run this program in final mode, you should include the Unit of Measure field in the data selection to ensure that the system applies the adjustment value consistently.

Data Sequence

You can define the data sequence only for the base price report and base price revisions versions of this program.

You should not change the sequence for versions that create future prices. Doing so can cause the system to use the wrong base price when calculating the future price.

24.4 Converting Price Levels (ECS)

Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 27

From ECS Sales Order Advanced and Technical Ops (G491031), choose Sales Price Level Conversion

You use the Sales Price Level Conversion program to change the sales price level of an item or a group of items that you have previously entered in the Item Master table.

You can run this program in proof or final mode. JD Edwards World recommends that you always run the Sales Price Level Conversion program in proof mode first to identify errors. The program generates a report that displays any problems the system encounters during sales price level conversions. You should correct these errors before you run the program in final mode.

The Sales Price Level Conversion program deletes all price records at the previous level and creates new price records at the new level. For example, when converting from the item/branch/plant level to the item level, the program deletes all price records for each item/branch/plant and creates a new price record for the item.

You should not attempt to access the Item Master or Base Price tables when this program is running in final mode.

Sales Price Level Conversion is a DREAM Writer program.

Figure 24–6 Sales Price Level Conversion report

41816	JD Edwards World					Page	-	2
	Sales Price Level Conversion					Date	-	2/13/08
	*** Proof Mode ***							
Item Number	Branch/Plant	Location	Lot	UM	Cur Address/ Cod Group	Effect From	Effect Thru	Unit Price
ACE				BL	USD	03/09/95	03/09/00	12.4000
ADD				LT	USD	03/01/95	03/01/00	1.2500
ADDUNL				LT	USD	08/13/96	12/31/20	.2700
AEROSOL CANS	27			BK	USD	01/20/95	12/31/20	6.9300
Remark . . . . . Primary Location not present in F4106								
AEROSOL CANS	27	R.		BK	USD	01/20/95	12/31/20	6.9300

24.4.1 Processing Options

See [Section 48.4, "Sales Price Level Conversion - Proof \(P41816\)."](#)

---

## Define Price Adjustments

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 25.1, "Defining Price Adjustments \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 25.2, "Defining Inventory Pricing Rules \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 25.3, "Assigning Rules to Customers and Customer Groups \(ECS\)."](#)

### 25.1 Defining Price Adjustments (ECS)

When you define base prices, you define prices for an item or a group of items. You use inventory and customer pricing rules to define price adjustments for customers and customer groups. For example, you can set up discounts for one group of customers and markups for another group.

You define inventory pricing rules to set up a pricing scheme for an item or a group of items. For each item or item group, you define levels of pricing. You can determine price breaks by quantity. You can indicate whether the price adjustment is a markup or discount. You can also enter a price that you want the system to use to override the base price for a specified period.

After you define the inventory pricing rules, you use the Customer Pricing Rules program to assign the inventory pricing rules to customers or customer groups. For example, you might want some preferred customers to always receive a 5% discount on specific items. You first define a discount level of 5% in the inventory pricing rules for these items. You then assign the preferred customers, or a customer group called PREFERRED, to this discount level in the inventory pricing rules.

The system will not adjust prices until you assign a customer or customer group to an inventory pricing rule.

#### 25.1.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that item price groups have been set up. See [Section 23.3, "Setting Up Item Price Groups \(ECS\)."](#)
- Verify that customer price groups have been set up. See [Section 23.2, "Setting Up Customer Price Groups \(ECS\)."](#)

## 25.1.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Pricing considerations	<p>The system prices an order based on the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ A contract price for a specific customer takes precedence over a contract price for a group of customers. It also overrides other inventory pricing rules. If a contract price for a specific customer does not exist, the system searches for a contract price for a customer group.</li> <li>■ A trade discount that you define through customer billing instructions overrides all other pricing or repricing. A trade discount is the simplest way to offer a discount to a customer. The system applies the discount to all items sold to the customer.</li> <li>■ The system retrieves inventory pricing rules for a specific customer, if you have defined them, before it retrieves rules defined for a group of customers.</li> </ul>
Setting up contract pricing	<p>You can set up contract prices to guarantee a price for a particular customer. When you enter an order for a contract item, the system checks the remaining quantity to be sold at the contract price. If the quantity on the order exceeds the remaining allowed quantity, the system writes two lines on the order:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ One line for the quantity at the contract price</li> <li>■ One line for the quantity at the regular price</li> </ul> <p>You set up contract pricing by defining an inventory pricing rule and assigning the rule to a customer. In addition to the normal procedures for inventory and customer pricing rules, you must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Identify the inventory pricing rule as contract pricing</li> <li>■ Enter contract information in the fold area</li> <li>■ Enter the item's short ID number as the pricing rule name</li> </ul>
Setting up trade discount pricing	<p>You set up trade discount pricing through the customer billing instructions. The percentage you enter is a flat discount that the system applies to all items ordered by this customer. Trade discount pricing overrides all other pricing.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 37.1, "Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions (ECS)."</a></p>
Setting up cash discount pricing	<p>You can enter an additional cash discount to any order detail line on the Order Detail Information form. The system applies the discount only if the line type of the order line is set up to allow discounts.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 3.4, "Entering Additional Order Information (ECS)"</a> and <a href="#">Section 38.1, "Setting Up Order Line Types (ECS)."</a></p>

## 25.2 Defining Inventory Pricing Rules (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose **Price Management**

From **Price Management (G491022)**, choose **Inventory Pricing Rules**

You define inventory pricing rules to set up pricing schemes for items or groups of items. For each item or item group, you define levels of pricing. You then assign these

---

**Note:** You cannot use both Standard and Advanced Pricing. You must turn off Advanced Pricing for Standard Pricing in Sales to work.

---

---

## On Inventory Pricing Rules

[illegible]

- Define Price Adjustments 25-3

**Figure 25–2 Inventory Pricing Rules (Fold Area) screen**

4. To define additional inventory pricing rule information, complete the following fields:

- Base on Unit Of Measure
- Line Type
- Price
- Item
- Limit
- Reference

Field	Explanation
Pricing Rule	User defined code (table 40/PI) used to classify inventory by pricing rules. Typically, these categories correspond to the major sections in the inventory price book. You can set up as many detail categories as you need. A single code can be used for sales, purchasing, order/basket, and contract pricing. If you set up a contract rule, it must equal the short number for the item under contract.
Pricing Method	A user defined code (system 42, type CT) that indicates the pricing method you want to establish within the inventory pricing rule. Valid values are: P – Purchase order discounts O – Order repricing R – Line repricing (basket repricing)
Pricing Category Level	An alphanumeric code that determines the sequence in which the system displays the rules within the pricing group. You define levels when you set up the pricing groups.

Field	Explanation
Units - Over	The volume or quantity breaks commonly used in pricing tables. If the quantity shown on the first level of a rule is 5, then the pricing logic shown on this level applies only to sales of five or fewer items. If the quantity shown in the next level is 10, then the pricing logic applies to sales of 6 through 10 items. 99,999,999 indicates all quantities.
Basis - For Cost or Price	<p>A costing method on which the system bases the order's net price.</p> <p>The following codes are valid for pricing and repricing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 – Last-In Cost</li> <li>5 – Future Cost</li> <li>P – Unit Price</li> <li>2 – Average Cost</li> <li>6 – Lot Cost</li> <li>3 – Memo Cost 1</li> <li>7 – Standard Cost</li> <li>4 – Current Cost</li> <li>8 – Purchasing Cost</li> </ul> <p>The system uses the method you enter here to determine the order's net price.</p> <p>In sales order repricing, the system bases all reprice calculations on either the unit cost or price in the sales detail. Specify P if you want the system to use unit price in the sales order as the basis for reprice calculations. Otherwise, specify a value between 1 to 8 to use the unit cost in the sales detail as the base on value for all reprice calculations.</p>
Factor Value - Numeric	The discount that the system uses when it calculates the price of an item attached to this inventory pricing rule. Discounts can be expressed as multipliers, additional amounts, or deductible amounts. For example, a 10% discount would be expressed as .90. You can use the same factor for markups over cost. For example, a 10% markup would be expressed as 1.10.
Factor Value - Type	A code that indicates whether the factor value is a multiplier (%) or an additional/deductible cash amount (\$) when applied to an order's price.
Amount - Override List Price	Any price you enter here overrides all other rules or prices.
Quantity Type	<p>A code that indicates that the quantity limit is based on a special unit of measure. The default is the primary unit of measure. Valid codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 – Primary Unit of Measure (Default)</li> <li>2 – Secondary Unit of Measure</li> <li>3 – Purchasing Unit of Measure</li> <li>4 – Pricing Unit of Measure</li> <li>5 – Shipping Unit of Measure</li> <li># – Pounds</li> <li>\$ – Dollars (Not Quantity) Limit</li> </ul>
Related - Price	The price of a related item in a pricing or discount policy. For example, with a policy of "Buy one, get one free," the free item is the related item. Enter this price in the unit of measure of the related item quantity.

Field	Explanation
Limit - Quantity	<p>This quantity is established in the inventory pricing rules as the number of items that the customer may purchase from us at this contract price.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The amount that limits the quantity of items you are willing to sell at a contract price. You use this field when a C appears in the Contract Pricing (C) field at the top of the form.</p>
Reference	<p>The number or identifier of the document on which this contract is based. Complete this field only if you are creating a contract price between you and a specific customer.</p>

### 25.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Creating new item groups	<p>When you define inventory pricing rules, you enter the user defined codes that you previously set up for item price groups. If you need to create new user defined codes for item price groups, you can choose the Inventory Pricing Groups option from the Price Management menu.</p>

## 25.3 Assigning Rules to Customers and Customer Groups (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose Price Management

From Price Management (G491022), choose Customer Pricing Rules

You use the Customer Pricing Rules program to establish the pricing relationship between an inventory pricing rule and a customer or customer group. You must assign a customer or customer group to a specific pricing level in an item's inventory pricing rule before the system adjusts prices. You can also use the Customer Pricing Rules program to remove the relationship between the inventory pricing rule and the customer or customer group.

### To assign rules to customers and customer groups

On Customer Pricing Rules



**Figure 25–3 Customer Pricing Rules screen**

4281 Customer Pricing Rules

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

Customer Pricing Rules

Customer Price Group: BULK Bulk customer price group

Pricing Rule: FUELS FUELS

All Levels (Y/N): Y

Rule	Lvl	Quantity	Basis	Value	Typ	Unit Price	Effect Date	Expire Date
FUELS 1	1	5	4	10.0000	%		08/14/07	08/14/19
FUELS 2	2	10	4	20.0000	%		08/14/07	08/14/19

Opt: 5=Reset Level 9=Remove F4=Fold F9=Name Search F24=More Keys

1. Complete one of the following fields:
  - Customer Group
  - Specific Address Book Number
2. Complete the following optional fields:
  - Pricing Rule
  - All Levels
3. Complete the following field to assign the customer to a specific level in the inventory pricing rule:
  - Option

### 25.3.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Creating new customer groups	When you assign inventory pricing rules to customer groups, you enter the user defined codes that you previously set up for customer price groups. If you need to create new user defined codes for customer price groups, you can choose the Customer Pricing Groups option from the Price Management menu.



---

## Work with Repricing

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 26.1, "Working with Repricing \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 26.2, "Updating Prices for an Item \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 26.3, "Updating Prices for a Customer \(ECS\)."](#)

### 26.1 Working with Repricing (ECS)

You reprice sales orders when you want to:

- Allow additional discounts or markups on groups of items
- Set up different pricing for specific items or customers
- Provide overall discounts based on total quantities of items within a product family
- Update sales orders with the most current prices

You update prices for an item to adjust the price for specific items or create special discounts. You can update prices for an item based on the amount of the order, weight of the items, or the total quantity of all items ordered.

You update prices for a customer to recalculate sales orders based on the most current price or price adjustment. You might need to do this for items with volatile prices. You can also use this process to update the unit and extended costs of items on sales orders with the most current costs.

### 26.2 Updating Prices for an Item (ECS)

You update prices for an item to adjust the price for specific items or create special discounts.

The Standard Order/Basket Reprice program uses the following two methods to update the price of an item:

- Basket repricing
- Order repricing

Standard Order/Basket Reprice is a DREAM Writer batch program.

Complete the following tasks to perform basket and order repricing:

- Define repricing groups
- Process basket and order repricing

You define repricing groups similar to the way you define customer and item groups. You first create user defined codes for basket and order repricing groups and enter this information for specific items in the Item Master table. You then set up either basket or order repricing in the inventory pricing rules.

When you run the Standard Order/Basket Reprice program, the system searches the detail lines of a sales order for items in either a basket or order repricing group. If the system must perform both basket and order repricing, it will perform the basket repricing calculations first.

### 26.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Limitations to repricing	If you have defined a trade discount or manually entered a price, the system will not reprice the order line.
Order entry repricing	You can run the Standard Order/Basket Reprice program when you enter a sales order by choosing the appropriate option on the Sales Order Entry form. You can also set the processing options for the Sales Order Entry program to automatically run the Standard Order/Basket Reprice program.
Performing repeated repricing	If you need to reprice an order line that has already been repriced, you can set the appropriate processing option for the Standard Order/Basket Reprice program to allow order detail lines to be repriced repeatedly.

### 26.2.2 Defining Repricing Groups (ECS)

#### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose Price Management

From Price Management (G491022), choose Inventory Pricing Rules

You define repricing groups similar to the way you define customer and item groups. After you create user defined codes for basket and order repricing groups, you enter this information for specific items on the Item Master Information form. You then complete the steps to define inventory pricing rules for basket and order repricing. You define the pricing method in the inventory pricing rule as either basket repricing or order repricing.

For example, you group pens, rulers, and erasers in the basket group called SUPPLIES. You can then define an inventory pricing rule for the SUPPLIES basket repricing group so that the system will reprice each of the items in this group at a discount of .25.

If you define both basket and order repricing for an item, the system will perform the basket repricing calculations first.

### 26.2.3 Before You Begin

- Verify that user defined codes for order and basket repricing groups have been created. See *Work with User Defined Codes* in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.
- Enter the user defined codes for order and basket repricing groups in Item Master Information. See [Section 23.3, "Setting Up Item Price Groups \(ECS\)."](#)

**To define repricing groups**  
On Inventory Pricing Rules

**Figure 26–1 Inventory Pricing Rules (Repricing) screen**

Lvl	Up To	Quantity	Basis	Factor	Value	Factor	Typ	Du	Price	Effect	Date	Expire	Date	Desc
1	12		P	1.0000							01/01/12	12/31/22		NO DISC
2	24		P	.9500							01/01/12	12/31/22		5% OFF
3	36		P	.9200							01/01/12	12/31/22		8% OFF
4	48		P	.9000							01/01/12	12/31/22		10% OFF

- Complete the following fields:
  - Pricing Rule
  - Pricing Method
- For basket repricing, access the fold area.

**Figure 26–2 Inventory Pricing Rules (Basket Repricing) screen**

Lvl	Up To	Quantity	Basis	Factor	Value	Factor	Typ	Du	Price	Effect	Date	Expire	Date	Desc
1	12		P	1.0000							01/01/12	12/31/22		NO DISC
Reprice Line: <input type="checkbox"/> Base on UOM: <input type="checkbox"/> Free Goods: Ln Ty: <input type="checkbox"/> Relat: <input type="checkbox"/> Contract: Limit: <input type="checkbox"/> Taken: <input type="checkbox"/> Reference: <input type="checkbox"/>														
2	24		P	.9500							01/01/12	12/31/22		5% OFF
Reprice Line: <input type="checkbox"/> Base on UOM: <input type="checkbox"/> Free Goods: Ln Ty: <input type="checkbox"/> Relat: <input type="checkbox"/> Contract: Limit: <input type="checkbox"/> Taken: <input type="checkbox"/> Reference: <input type="checkbox"/>														
3	36		P	.9200							01/01/12	12/31/22		8% OFF
Reprice Line: <input type="checkbox"/> Base on UOM: <input type="checkbox"/> Free Goods: Ln Ty: <input type="checkbox"/> Relat: <input type="checkbox"/> Contract: Limit: <input type="checkbox"/> Taken: <input type="checkbox"/> Reference: <input type="checkbox"/>														

## 3. Complete the following field:

- Reprice Line

Field	Explanation
Reprice Line or Order	<p>Code that is applicable only if you are using pricing method R (Basket Repricing). Y (yes) tells the system to apply the pricing rule to the unit and calculate the extended price. N (no) tells the system to write a new order detail line for the amount of the additional discount into the sales order.</p> <p>The Order Repricing Program (P421301) provides an option to reprice orders that had already been repriced. You can alter the results of this process by adjusting this field. If you would like to re-discount the order based on the original unit price, you must have this field set to N or blank PRIOR TO repricing the order. However, if you would like to re-discount based on the discounted unit price, set this field to Y to adjust the individual detail lines. For more detail on this process, please refer to the help instructions of the Order Repricing Program (P421301).</p>

## 26.2.4 Processing Basket and Order Repricing (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose Price Management

From Price Management (G4222), choose Standard Order/Basket Reprice

You process basket and order repricing to adjust the price for specific items or create special discounts. When you run the Standard Order/Basket Reprice program for basket repricing, the system searches the detail lines of a sales order for items in a basket group.

When you perform order repricing, the system searches the detail lines of a sales order for items in an order group. If it finds items that belong to the order group, it creates an adjustment for the order as a whole and writes a new order detail line with the amount of the adjustment.

For example, you attach a pricing rule to the SUPPLIES order repricing group so that the system will discount the entire order by .25 if it identifies an item from the SUPPLIES group. The system does not recalculate prices but adds a new line to the order to reflect the order discount.

Line	Item Name	Unit Price	Group Name
Line 1	PEN	10.00	SUPPLIES
Line 2	RULER	2.00	SUPPLIES
Line 3	ERASER	1.00	SUPPLIES
Line 4	Discount	.25-	

The Standard Order/Basket Reprice program generates a report listing the order lines that the program repriced.

**Figure 26–3 Order Repricing report**

421301									
JD Edwards World									
Order Repricing									
Order	Line	Ln	Item	Branch	Transaction	T	Item	Basket	Date
Number	Number	TY	Number	Plant		X	Group	Group	Order
-----									
1906	2.000	R	Line Added - Reprice	30	1-	.0000	N	REPRICER	REPRICER
1906	3.000	S	Line Added - Reprice	30	1-	.5950	.60-	Y	REPRICER
9084	2.000	S	Line Added - Reprice	DEPOT1	1	100.0000	100.00	Y	REPRICER
10155	2.000	S	Line Added - Reprice	DEPOT1	1-	20.0000	20.00-	Y	REPRICER
-----									
F3=Exit F12=Cancel F19=Left F20=Right F24=More keys									
									Bottom

## 26.2.5 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Defining the repricing method	<p>Depending on how you complete the Reprice Line field on the Inventory Pricing Rules form, you can instruct the system to do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Update the order line with the new price</li> <li>Write a new order line with the amount of the change</li> </ul>

## 26.2.6 Processing Options

See [Section 48.5, "Order Repricing for Standard Pricing \(P421301\)."](#)

## 26.3 Updating Prices for a Customer (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose **Price Management**

From **Price Management (G491022)**, choose **Update Sales Price/Cost**

You update prices for a customer to recalculate sales orders based on the most current price or price adjustment. You might need to do this for items with volatile prices. You can also use this process to update the unit and extended costs of items on sales orders with the most current costs. If multi-currency processing is activated in your system, the foreign unit and extended costs fields will be updated as well.

Update Sales Price/Cost is a DREAM Writer batch program.

You can use Update Sales Price/Cost to:

- Update sales order costs. When you use this program to update sales order costs, the system replaces the unit and extended costs in any open, unshipped orders with current costs from the Item Cost Ledger table (F4105).
- Update sales order prices. When you use this program to update sales order prices, the system recalculates the unit and extended prices in the Sales Order Detail table (F4211) using the most current base price and price adjustments. The system bases this recalculation on the date that you enter in the processing options.
- Update sales order exchange rates. You can use this program to update the currency exchange rate that the system uses to calculate costs and prices on an order. The system replaces the currency exchange rate that was in effect at the time you entered the order with the existing currency exchange rate.

You can set the processing options for the Update Sales Price/Cost program to define which date on the sales order that the system will use to determine if it should recalculate costs or prices. For example, you can instruct the system to base the

recalculations on the promised date. The system will update only those order lines with a promised date that is less than or equal to today's date. Sales order prices can be updated more than once.

When you run the Update Sales Price/Cost program, the system updates the order detail information for open sales orders and replaces the current price with the new base price. The program disregards any special pricing discounts that you have previously defined for the customer or item.

### 26.3.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Updating prices when you update customer sales	You can set the processing options for the Update Customer Sales program to run the Update Sales Price/Cost program when you run Update Customer Sales. The system will update all selected sales orders with current costs, exchange rates, and prices before you run invoices and create G/L records.
Month-end repricing	<p>If the price of an item fluctuates or is not known until the end of the month, you can perform month-end repricing for the item.</p> <p>You create a User Defined Price Code preference to flag the customer and item combination for month-end repricing (for example, EM). The system enters this code in the Price Codes field on the sales order to identify the orders to be repriced at the end of the month.</p> <p>At the end of the month, you run the version of the Update Sales Price/Cost program that performs repricing by preference at month end. You should set the data selection for this version to select the sales orders with a price code of EM. These orders are updated with the most current price for the item.</p> <p>The Update Sales Price/Cost program creates a separate record in the Sales Order Detail table. The next time you run the Cycle Billing program, it processes this record.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 20.4, "Running Cycle Billing (ECS)."</a></p>

### 26.3.2 Processing Options

See [Section 48.6, "Update Sales Cost, Price, or Exchange Rate \(P42950\)."](#)



# Part III

---

## Setup

This part contains these chapters:

- [Chapter 27, "Order Templates,"](#)
- [Chapter 28, "Work with Order Templates,"](#)
- [Chapter 29, "Preferences,"](#)
- [Chapter 30, "Understand Preferences,"](#)
- [Chapter 31, "Set Up Preferences,"](#)
- [Chapter 32, "Invoice Setup,"](#)
- [Chapter 33, "Define Related Addresses,"](#)
- [Chapter 34, "Set Up Invoice Cycles,"](#)
- [Chapter 35, "System Setup,"](#)
- [Chapter 36, "Set Up Constants,"](#)
- [Chapter 37, "Set Up Customer Billing Instructions,"](#)
- [Chapter 38, "Set Up Order Line Types,"](#)
- [Chapter 39, "Set Up Order Activity Rules,"](#)
- [Chapter 40, "Set Up Order Hold Information,"](#)
- [Chapter 41, "Set Up Commission Information,"](#)
- [Chapter 42, "Set Up Branch Sales Markups,"](#)
- [Chapter 43, "Set Up Automatic Accounting Instructions."](#)



---

## Order Templates

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 27.1, "Objectives,"](#)
- [Section 27.2, "About Order Templates \(ECS\)."](#)

### 27.1 Objectives

- To create order templates for frequently ordered items

### 27.2 About Order Templates (ECS)

You create order templates to save time and eliminate repetition in order entry. An order template displays frequently ordered items and quantities. You can create the following two types of templates:

- **Standard templates**

A standard template applies to all customers. You can assign a standard template to display every time you enter an order.

- **Customer-specific templates**

Customer-specific templates include a particular customer's most frequently ordered items. You can assign a customer-specific template to display only when you enter orders for that customer.

You can use a standard template as a model for creating a customer-specific template. You can also create a customer-specific template from an existing sales order.

You assign a default template to appear every time you enter an order by setting the order template processing options for the Sales Order Entry program. During order entry, you can also access any other templates you have created.

You can create templates either manually or automatically. You create templates automatically for customers who have placed previous orders with you. You use a batch program to build templates automatically from the Sales Order Detail History table (F42119). You can change and update the information on templates created both manually and automatically, as necessary.

**See Also:**

- [Section 3.6, "Entering an Order from a Template \(ECS\)."](#)



---

## Work with Order Templates

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 28.1, "Working with Order Templates \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 28.2, "Creating a Standard Template \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 28.3, "Creating a Customer-Specific Template \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 28.4, "Updating an Existing Template \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 28.5, "Creating a System-Generated Template \(ECS\)."](#)

### 28.1 Working with Order Templates (ECS)

You create and assign order templates to speed up the order entry process. A template contains information about frequently ordered items.

A standard template applies to all customers. For example, you might want to create a "Lubes" template that lists the most frequently ordered lubricants. Or, you could identify a standard template that lists all of the most frequently ordered items regardless of their classification. When you set the order template processing options for the Sales Order Entry program, the standard template displays every time you enter an order.

A customer-specific template contains the customer's Address Book number and includes only that customer's most frequently ordered items and quantities. You can create multiple templates for a customer, or you can use the same template for more than one customer.

After you create a standard template, you can use it as a model for creating a customer-specific template. You can use the same user defined code template name because you use a different customer's number. You can also use the items and quantities on an actual sales order to create a customer-specific template.

You should regularly update existing order templates to ensure that the order entry process remains accurate and efficient. For example, you might need to change the quantities or sequences on an existing template.

After a customer has an established ordering history, you can have the system automatically create order templates. The Customer Template Rebuild program is a standard JD Edwards World batch program.

## 28.1.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Deleting a template	You can delete any order template, whether you created it manually or automatically. When you delete a template name, you should also remove the user defined code on User Defined Code Revisions. If you delete a customer's default template, you should also change the information in the customer billing instructions.

### See Also:

- [Section 47.1, "Sales Order Entry \(P4211\)."](#)

## 28.2 Creating a Standard Template (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 27

From ECS Sales Order Advanced and Technical Ops (G491031), choose Order Template Revisions

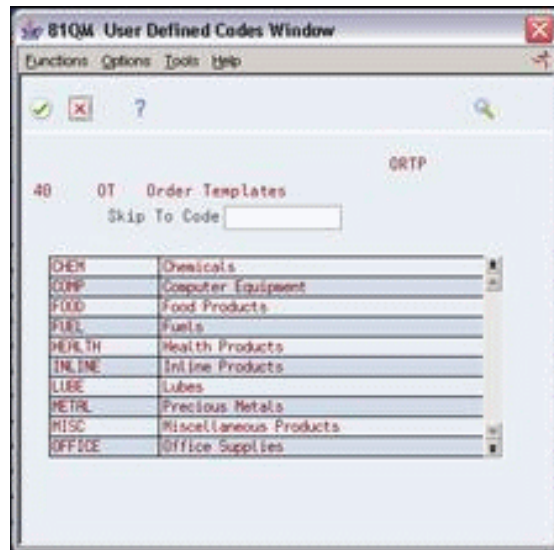
You create a template for frequently ordered items to speed the order entry process. You can create a standard template that applies to all customers and assign it to display every time you enter an order.

### To create a standard template

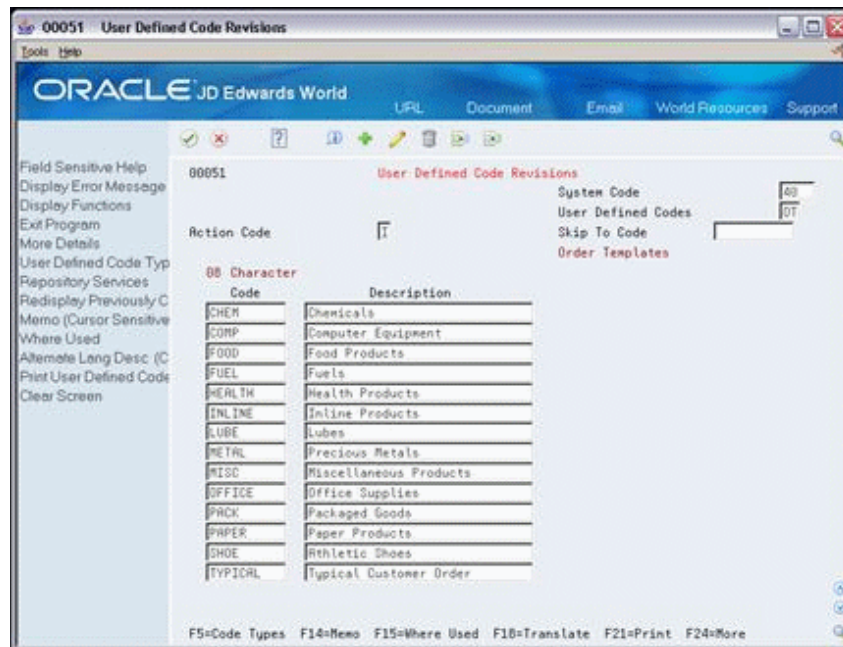
On Order Template Revisions

**Figure 28–1 Order Template Revisions screen**

1. Access the User Defined Codes Window from the following field:
  - Order Template

**Figure 28–2 User Defined Codes Window (Order Template) screen**

2. On the User Defined Codes Window, access User Defined Code Revisions.

**Figure 28–3 User Defined Code Revisions (Order Template) screen**

3. On User Defined Code Revisions, complete the following fields to name the template:
  - Character Code
  - Description

**See Also:**

- Work with User Defined Codes in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.

4. Return to Order Template Revisions.
5. On Order Template Revisions, complete the following fields:
  - Order Template
  - Item
6. Access the fold area.

**Figure 28–4 Order Template Revisions (Fold Area) screen**

7. Complete the following optional fields for each item:
  - Effective From
  - Effective Thru

Field	Explanation
Order Template	A list of items that are most frequently ordered. These items are usually grouped based on the product type such as fuels, lubricants, packaged goods and so forth.
Date - Effective	The date that a transaction, text message, contract, obligation, or preference becomes effective.
Date - Expired	The date that a transaction, text message, agreement, obligation, or preference has expired or been completed.

### 28.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Assigning a standard template	You can create as many standard templates as you need. You use the customer billing instructions to assign one standard template to a customer to display each time an order is entered. However, you can access all of the templates when you enter sales orders.



## 28.3 Creating a Customer-Specific Template (ECS)

You create a customer-specific template to display only when an order is added for a particular customer. You can either fill in all of the information for the template, or you can create a template from a previous sales order.

Complete the following tasks:

- Create a customer-specific template
- Create a customer-specific template from a sales order

### 28.3.1 Before You Begin

- Set the appropriate processing options for Sales Order Entry and Order Template Revisions to apply to either the Sold To customer number or the Ship To customer number

#### To create a customer-specific template

On Order Template Revisions

1. Complete one of the following fields:
  - Ship To
  - Sold To
2. Follow the steps to create a standard template.
3. Complete the following optional fields:
  - Usual Quantity
  - Unit of Measure
  - Sequence

Field	Explanation
Units - Usual Ordered	The quantity that is usually ordered.
Unit of Measure	A user defined code (system 00/ type UM) that indicates in what quantity an inventory item is expressed; for example, CS (case) or BX (box).
Sequence Number	A sequence or sort number that the system uses to process records in a user defined order.

#### To create a customer-specific template from a sales order

On Order Template Revisions

1. Access Order History Inquiry.

**Figure 28–5 Order History Inquiry screen**

40214 Order History Inquiry

Functions Tools Help

Order Type:

Ship To:

Order	To	Date	Ship To	Customer PO
112776	S3	09/18/18	500 Gas StationR	
112776	S3	07/18/18	500 Gas StationR	
112821	S3	12/12/17	500 Gas StationR	
112820	S3	12/12/17	500 Gas StationR	
112863	S3	11/07/17	500 Gas StationR	
112862	S3	11/07/17	500 Gas StationR	
112861	S3	11/07/17	500 Gas StationR	
112859	S3	11/07/17	500 Gas StationR	

2. On Order History Inquiry, complete one of the following fields:
  - Ship To
  - Sold To
3. Review order details to confirm which order you want to use as a template.
4. Choose the order you want to use as an order template.  
The system displays the order on Order Template Revisions.
5. On Order Template Revisions, complete the following field:
  - Order Template
6. Type over or accept the default information from the sales order.

### 28.3.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Assigning a customer's default template	<p>To define a default order template for a customer, you must first create the template and then assign it to the customer in the customer billing instructions.</p> <p>When you enter an order for this customer, the system displays all templates that you created for the customer in addition to the default template.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 37.1, "Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions (ECS)."</a></p>
Searching for specific document types	<p>To narrow your search on Order History Inquiry to a specific document type, complete the Order Type field. The system searches the Sales Order Header table (F4201). Therefore, all orders that meet your search criteria appear, including those that have not been updated by the Update Customer Sales program.</p>

### 28.3.3 Processing Options

See [Section 49.1, "Order/Supplier Template Revisions \(P4015\)."](#)

## 28.4 Updating an Existing Template (ECS)

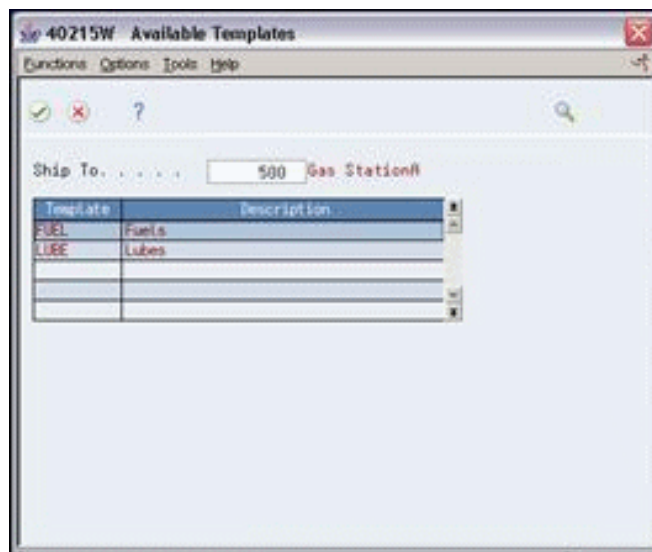
To ensure the accuracy and efficiency of the order entry process, you should maintain current templates. You can change the items, quantities, or sequences on any existing template at any time.

### To update an existing template

On Order Template Revisions

1. Complete one of the following fields:
  - Ship To
  - Sold To
2. Access the Available Templates window.

**Figure 28–6 Available Templates screen**



The system displays all of the templates assigned to the customer.

3. On Available Templates, choose the template you want to review and update.
4. Change the information in one or more of the following fields:
  - Usual Quantity
  - Unit of Measure
  - Sequence
  - Effective From
  - Effective Thru

## 28.5 Creating a System-Generated Template (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 27

From ECS Sales Order Advanced and Technical Ops (G491031), choose Customer Template Rebuild

You can use the Customer Template Rebuild program to automate the process of creating templates. Customer Template Rebuild creates a template from a customer's established ordering history.

Customer Template Rebuild is a DREAM Writer batch program.

After you have entered orders for a customer and run the Cycle Billing and Update Customer Sales programs, the system creates a record of the customer's ordering history in the Sales Order Detail History table. You can run the Customer Template Rebuild program to do any of the following:

- Create a generic template based on sales history
- Update a template based on current sales patterns
- Change a single order line in a template that contains many order lines

After you choose the version of the Customer Template Rebuild program that you want to run, you must set the data selection criteria to choose a specific customer and to control the selection of items that will appear on the template.

### 28.5.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that orders exist for the customer in the Sales Order Detail History table.
- Create a UDC name for the template you want the system to generate. See *Work with User Defined Codes* in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.

### 28.5.2 Processing Options

See [Section 49.2, "Customer Template Rebuild \(P42815\)."](#)

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 29.1, "Objectives,"](#)
- [Section 29.2, "About Preferences \(ECS\)."](#)

## 29.1 Objectives

- To set up preferences
- To understand the field information and processing that is standard for all preferences
- To set up logical preference groups that meet your business needs at the customer level, the item level, and a combination of these levels

## 29.2 About Preferences (ECS)

You can use preferences to customize the way sales orders are processed. For the ECS Sales Order Management system, JD Edwards World has provided 22 preferences. You can customize these preferences to meet your specific business requirements.

Typically, you create preferences when you have consistent business requirements that differ from the default values for the ECS Sales Order Management system. For example, you can create preferences to suit the needs of:

- Your customer's specific requirements
- Your company's policies
- Regulatory agencies' rules

Complete the following tasks to have the system apply preferences to sales orders:

- Understand preferences
- Set up preferences

Understanding preferences helps you determine if you have a consistent business requirement that is different from the system's default values for sales order processing. To create preferences, complete fields within each preference form by entering standard and specific preference information.

You can perform setup tasks to customize the JD Edwards World predefined preferences for your specific business requirements. As your business grows and changes, you perform the same setup tasks to further customize preferences.

Setting up and using each preference requires careful thought. Your business purpose for using preferences should be considered against the efficient use of the system's processing time. For example, you should not use preferences for occasional variances. In these instances, you can more efficiently use the system resources by manually entering exception information in the applicable fields of the customer or item form.

### 29.2.1 How Does the System Use Preferences?

Each preference contains standard fields. You can use these fields to define a preference for:

- A customer
- An item (product)
- A customer group
- An item (product) group
- Any combination of customers (or groups) and items (or groups)

You must activate preferences before the system can use them. When activated, preferences are used by such programs as Sales Order Entry, Trip Creation and Maintenance, Customer Freight Calculation, Supplier Freight Calculation, and Cycle Billing. These programs search for applicable preferences that contain information affecting the customer and item combination for each order line.

For sales order entry, the system uses this information to complete parts of the order. The system uses a hierarchy that you define to find the appropriate customer and item preference.

Some preferences override the system's default values. Other preferences are used by the system to add information during different stages of the sales order processing cycle. For example, the system applies the Invoice Cycle preference when the Cycle Billing program runs. As a result, some preference information might not be immediately displayed on the sales order.

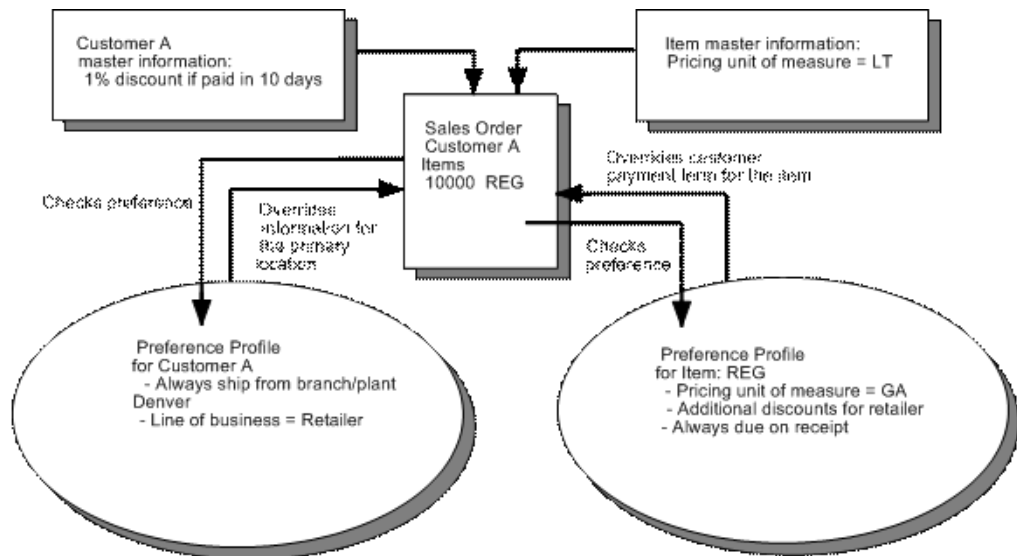
The following table lists the Sales Order Entry fields that can be overridden by a preference during sales order entry.

Field	Explanation
Accounting Branch/Plant	Revenue Cost Center
Branch Plant	Inventory Commitment
Carrier	Inventory Commitment
Currency Code	Customer Currency (ECS)
Duty	End Use
End Use	End Use
Line of Business	Line of Business
Load Date	Load/Promise Date (ECS)
Mode of Transport	Inventory Commitment
Payment Instrument	Payment Terms (ECS)
Payment Terms	Payment Terms (ECS)
Pricing Unit of Measure	Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS)
Price Codes	User Defined Price Codes 1 and 2

Field	Explanation
Promised Date	Load/Promise Date
Route Code	Inventory Commitment
Schedule	Price Adjustment Schedule
Status (Last/Next)	Next Order Status (ECS)

### Example: Applying a Preference

**Figure 29–1 Applying a Preference in a Saled Order**



## 29.2.2 What Are the Preference Fields?

Preference fields are generally categorized as:

- Key fields
- Search fields
- Definition fields

Key fields are shared by all preferences. You use these fields to enter standard preference information. Key fields are optional. You can use key fields as search criteria to have the system match preferences to sales orders. These fields are found in the header portion of the Preference Profiles Revisions form.

The key fields Customer and Customer Group are mutually exclusive. Likewise, the key fields Item and Item Group are mutually exclusive. That is, you cannot simultaneously use a preference with a customer and a customer group, or with an item and an item group. The system always uses the Customer (or Customer Group) and/or the Item (or Item Group) fields to match preferences to sales orders.

Search fields are marked with a greater than (>) sign next to the field name. The system uses these fields in the same way as it uses key fields. Each preference has search fields unique to its requirements. These fields are found in the detail portion of each preference's Preference Profiles Revisions form. Search fields are optional. You use these fields to further narrow the search criteria specified by key fields. For example, if you indicate that the search field called Branch/Plant should be used as

additional selection criteria, the system selects sales orders that match the unique combination of customer, item, and branch/plant criteria.

Preference definition fields are the fields that the system uses to resolve the preferences. Each preference has one or more definition fields unique to its requirements. These fields are found in the detail portion of each preference's Preference Profiles Revisions form. Definition fields are required, although in some cases a valid value can be a blank. Typically, the system uses the values you input in these fields to override or add information on a sales order.

The following table provides a brief overview of each preference.

Preference	Business Purpose	Overrides	When Applied and Where to View
Container Deposit/Rental	Define whether a customer/item combination will be billed for rentals or deposits on containers, on a transaction basis or summary time period, and to override the G/L offset from the item master.	None	Applied by the Container Management Extraction batch program. Typically, this occurs after you enter a sales order and either ship or load confirm product, and before you run invoicing. View the Container Billing Report.
Customer Currency (ECS)	Assign currency for a customer or customer group. Because the system uses Branch/Plant in the search criteria, you can base the currency on the branch/plant for the order. Only one currency code is allowed per order.  <b>Note:</b> You cannot use this preference for items and item groups.	Currency Code on Customer Master Information	Applied during entry. View in the Currency Code field in the order header.
Document Distribution (ECS)	Designate specific delivery documents and how many of each to distribute internally and to your customers.	None	Applied during either Bulk/Packaged Load Confirm or Preprint Delivery Documents.
Document Set (ECS)	Define the group of delivery documents to print. You can also assign different document sets by depot.	None	Applied during either Bulk/Packaged Load Confirm or Preprint Delivery Documents. View the document set selected on the Document Selection window.
End Use	Define a product's end use and duty status. For example, you might use this preference for regulatory, pricing, or market analysis purposes.	None	Applied during order entry. View end use results in the End Use field in the fold area of an order detail line. View duty status in the Duty field on the order detail line.
Freight (ECS)	Select the freight table that determines freight charges billable to customers or payable to contractors. Designate whether the freight is distance based, zone based, fixed fee, or time based. Also designate whether the freight is billable, payable, or both.	None	Applied when you run the Customer Freight Calculation and Supplier Freight Calculation batch programs to determine the billable and payable freight charges. Normally, this is part of end-of-day processing. You can also calculate billable freight prior to printing delivery documents.



Preference	Business Purpose	Overrides	When Applied and Where to View
Grade and Potency	Ensure that packaged products selected for delivery are within the customer's allowable grade or potency range. Designed to work in conjunction with the Inventory Commitment preference.	Default grade/potency range from Plant Manufacturing Data (included in the item branch/plant information)	Applied during order entry to the Sales Order Detail table (F4211). View the grade/potency ranges on the Order Detail Information forms.
Inventory Commitment	Specify one or more branch/plants (depots) to use as the supply source when a customer orders a product or group of products. You also specify the minimum of any order that must be filled before the system will select a branch/plant (depot).	Default branch/plant in Sales Order Detail that comes from the order header Branch/Plant field	Applied during order entry. View the source branch/plant, mode of transport, carrier, and route code in the sales order detail.
Invoice Cycle	Establish a special invoice cycle for customers who want to be billed periodically.	None	Applied when you run the Cycle Billing batch program (normally during end-of-day processing, prior to processing invoices). The system reads the preference and loads the scheduled invoice date and cycle into the Sales Order Detail - Tag table (F49211).
Line of Business	Identify a customer's line of business to use as a basis for price adjustments, sales analysis, or other business needs.	None	Applied during order entry. View line of business information in the Line of Business field in the order detail line.
Load/Promise Date (ECS)	Calculate the promised delivery date based on the order date, the order lag time (number of days following order entry until a product is loaded), and the leadtime (the number of days in transit). The preference can vary by depot, route, mode, and carrier.	None	Applied during order entry. In the fold area of the order detail line, the Load Date field displays the calculated loading date. The Promised Date field displays the calculated delivery date.
Next Order Status (ECS)	Change the next order status when a customer orders a specific product. By changing the order status after order entry, you can omit one or more steps in the standard processing for an order line or add processing steps.	Default Next Status code in the order activity rules	Applied during order entry. View the next status code in the Status (Last/Next) field in the fold area of an order detail line.
Payment Terms (ECS)	Specify the standard terms of payment for a customer. Payment terms affect invoice due dates and discounts.	Payment terms or instrument that appear on the order header and are set up on Customer Master	Applied during order entry. View payment terms in the Payment Terms or Payment Instrument fields in the fold area of an order detail line.
Price Adjustment Schedule	Use multiple pricing schedules per customer by item or item group.	Default schedule from Customer Billing Instructions	Applied during order entry. View in the Schedule field in the fold area of an order detail line.

Preference	Business Purpose	Overrides	When Applied and Where to View
Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS)	Set the unit of measure used to price an item and designate whether the price is determined by weight or by the quantity at ambient or standard temperature. You can also indicate the date to base the price on (for example, load date or invoice date) and vary the same customer/item combination by depot. This information is used to determine the correct price when invoices are printed.	Pricing unit of measure on Item Master Information, the price based on date set up in the system constants, and the ambient, standard, or weight defaults from the data dictionary	Applied during order entry. View in the Unit of Measure field that follows the Unit Price on an order detail line. The based on date and ambient/standard or weight information is included in the Sales Order Detail - Tag table (F49211) for later recalculation, but is not visible on order entry forms.
Print Messages (ECS)	Print specific messages on selected documents. You can vary print messages based on depot, mode of transportation, carrier, line of business, end use, duty status, and payment instrument.	None	Applied when printed. Documents are printed at different stages in the order processing cycle. For example, a preference applied to a loading note causes the system to print at a different occurrence than when it is applied to an invoice. Unlike other preferences, all print messages at all selected hierarchy positions are cumulative. That is, the system adds print message preferences to any other print messages already set up for the order.
Product Allocation (ECS)	<p>Restrict the amount of product a customer can purchase. Use this preference if demand outstrips supply. You can also use it if a product is produced only for a specific customer or group of customers, and you need to ensure that it is not distributed to others.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You receive a product allocation warning message if you enter a quantity on the order detail line that exceeds the allocation limit for a customer. The order is placed on hold if you do not reduce the quantity to the amount of the remaining allocation.</p>	None	Applied during order entry.

Preference	Business Purpose	Overrides	When Applied and Where to View
Quality (ECS)	<p>Request or require that your company perform a certain test for a particular customer or product. Also request or require that your company meet certain quality standards for a particular customer or product.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Test specifications, which you set up on the Product Specification Master form, apply to bulk products only. If a test is requested or required, you must enter test results on the On Vehicle Sampling/Quality form.</p>	None	Applied during Bulk Load Confirm.
Revenue Cost Center (ECS)	Assign the cost center (Accounting Branch/Plant) based on customer, product, or combinations. One reason you might use this preference is for a distributed warehouse operation, where revenue is recognized centrally.	Default branch/plant that comes from the order header Branch/Plant field	Applied during order entry. View the revenue cost center in the Accounting Branch/Plant field in the fold area of an order detail line.
Sales Commission (ECS)	Set up sales people and commission rates based on a customer/item combination. You can also vary the information by branch/plant and line of business.	Default Commission Code/Rate data in the Customer Billing Instructions (Page 2)	Applied during order entry. View the sales commission data for an order detail line on the Order Detail Information form.
User Defined Price Codes 1, 2, and 3	Define your own codes to use for unique pricing needs. For example, you might define a price code to identify order lines that need to be repriced when commodity prices are published for a specific period.	None	Applied during order entry. View Price Codes 1 and 2 in the two Price Codes fields in the fold area of an order detail line. Price Code 3 does not display but is included in the Sales Order Detail table (F4211).



---

## Understand Preferences

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 30.1, "Understanding Preferences \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 30.2, "Entering Standard Preference Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 30.3, "Entering Specific Preference Information \(ECS\)."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 27

From ECS Sales Order Advanced and Technical Ops (G491031), choose Preference Profiles

## 30.1 Understanding Preferences (ECS)

Understanding preferences helps you determine if you have a consistent business requirement that differs from the system's default values for sales order processing.

All preferences share common fields where you enter standard preference information. You must enter this information for each preference in the header portion of the Preference Profile Revisions form.

Each preference has additional fields unique to its requirements where you enter specific preference information. You enter this information for each preference in the detail portion of the Preference Profile Revisions form.

You can locate a specific preference to view how the preference has been defined. You can also locate preferences to determine if preferences exist for a customer and item combination before creating a new preference.

---

**Note:** If preferences already exist for the customer and item combination, you should determine the strategy of their use before creating another preference that might conflict with existing preferences.

---

### 30.1.1 Before You Begin

- Closely analyze your business requirements and the selection criteria for creating a preference. See [Section 29.2, "About Preferences \(ECS\)."](#)
- Activate each preference that you want the system to use during processing. Only active preferences are applied during the order processing cycle.

- Verify that appropriate default UDCs exist for each preference you want to use. See *Work with User Defined Codes* in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.

### 30.1.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Alternate entry format	You can also create preferences using the Profiles by Customer/Item form.
Adding a note about a preference	<p>You might find it helpful to attach descriptive or informational comments to a preference. These attachments can help you identify which preference you want to work with.</p> <p>Choose the Memo option for a preference to access the Preference Text window to review or add informational text to that preference.</p>

### 30.1.3 Using Profiles by Customer/Item

The procedures for creating preferences by customer/item are the same as those for creating preference profiles. See [Section 31.3, "Setting Up the Preference Master \(ECS\)"](#) for more information.

### 30.1.4 Adding a note about a preference

You might find it helpful to attach descriptive or informational comments to a preference. These attachments can help you identify which preference you want to work with.

Choose the Memo option for a preference to access the Preference Text window to review or add informational text to that preference.

## 30.2 Entering Standard Preference Information (ECS)

All preferences share common fields, called key fields, where you enter standard preference information. You must enter this information for each preference in the header portion of the Preference Profile Revisions form.

When entering standard preference information, you can also specify a sequence number. You use sequence numbers to determine the order that the system searches for preference records with otherwise identical fields. For example, if you want to set up a preference for a customer and item combination and vary the preference by an additional key field, you need to sequence your preference records. If you set the sequence for a preference with Business Unit A at 1, the sequence for Business Unit B at 2, and all other depots at 999, you can ensure that the system searches for the preferences for Business Units A and B before using the preference that applies to all other business units.

Consequently, you need to use care when sequencing preference records. If the preference that applies to all depots has a sequence number of 1, the more specific preferences for Depots A and B will not be found, because the system first finds the preference that applies to all depots. If you set up sequence numbers in increments, you can insert new preferences at a later date.

#### To enter standard preference information

On Preference Profiles

- 1. Choose the preference you want to create.
- 2. Access the Preference Inquiry form.

Figure 30–1 Print Messages screen

Oracle JD Edwards World - 40200 Print Messages

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
Preference Revisions  
Clear Screen

Customer Number  
OR Customer Group

Item Number  
OR Item Group

Effective From  
Effective Thru

Seq	Branch/Plant	Message	Trn	Line of Business	End Use
0	1	From	Thru		

Opt: 1=Revisions 2=Memo F24=More Keys

- 3. On Preference Inquiry, access the Preference Profile Revisions form.

Figure 30–2 Print Messages (Profile Revisions) screen

Oracle JD Edwards World - 40300 Print Messages

Action Code

Customer Number 500 Gas StationA  
OR Customer Group

Item Number UNL Unleaded Fuel  
OR Item Group

Effective From 08/15/07  
Effective Thru 08/15/19

Sequence Number

Preference Information

- > Branch/Plant
- > Mode of Trn
- > Carrier Number
- > Line of Business
- > End Use
- > Duty Status
- > Payment Instrument

Print Message

Default R/R  
Delivery Instructions

F9=Previous F14=Memo F24=More Keys

- 4. On the Preference Profile Revisions form, complete one or more of the following fields in the header portion of the form:
  - Customer Number

- Customer Group
  - Item Number
  - Item Group
  - Sequence Number
5. If displayed, complete the following fields:
- Effective From and Effective Thru
  - Quantity From and Quantity Thru
  - Unit of Measure as Input

Field	Explanation
Customer Number	<p>A number that identifies an entry in the Address Book system. Use this number to identify employees, applicants, participants, customers, suppliers, tenants, special mailing addresses, and so on.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you leave both the Customer Number and Customer Group fields blank, the system applies the preference to all customers.</p>
Item Number	<p>A number that the system assigns to an item. It can be in short, long, or 3rd item number format.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Enter the number of the item for which you want to define a preference. You can define the preference for the item only or for the item and a customer or customer group.</p> <p>If you leave both the Item Number and Item Group fields blank, the system applies the preference to all items.</p>
Effective From	<p>The date that a transaction, text message, contract, obligation, or preference becomes effective.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Leave this field blank if you want the preference to become effective today.</p> <p>Use the Enable Effective Dates (Y/N) field on Preference Master to activate or deactivate the display of this field.</p>
Effective Thru	<p>The date that a transaction, text message, agreement, obligation, or preference has expired or been completed.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you do not enter a date in this field, the system enters a date that you defined during system setup.</p> <p>If you want the preference in effect for an unlimited amount of time, leave this field blank and allow the system to enter the default. The system checks for the effective period during sales order processing.</p> <p>Use the Enable Effective Dates (Y/N) field on Preference Master to activate or deactivate the display of this field.</p>



Field	Explanation
Quantity From	<p>The quantity at which a preference or price adjustment becomes valid.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you do not enter a quantity, the system uses 0.</p> <p>Use the Enable Effective Quantity (Y/N) field on Preference Master to activate or deactivate the display of this field.</p>
Quantity Thru	<p>The quantity at which a preference becomes invalid.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you do not enter a quantity, the system enters a number defined during system setup.</p> <p>Use the Enable Effective Quantity (Y/N) field on Preference Master to activate or deactivate the display of this field.</p> <p>You must also enter the unit of measure for the quantity in the unmarked field next to Quantity Thru. If the preference is in effect for all quantities, leave the Quantity From and Thru fields blank. The system supplies the default minimum and maximum quantities. You must enter a valid unit of measure for the quantities.</p>
Unit of Measure as Input	<p>A user defined code (system 00/ type UM) that indicates in what quantity an inventory item is expressed; for example, CS (case) or BX (box).</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you use quantities for a preference, you must enter a unit of measure code.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The system does not perform unit of measure conversions. If you want the preference to apply to an item in multiple units of measure, you must enter a preference for each.</p>
Sequence Number	<p>A sequence or sort number that the system uses to process records in a user defined order.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Use this field when you have multiple preferences for the same customer/item combination, effective period, and quantity range. The sequence determines the order that the system searches for preference records with otherwise identical fields. The system searches records in ascending numerical order, that is, from lowest to highest.</p>

### 30.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Using group fields	<p>For each preference there is a unique field for customer group and a unique field for item group. You use these fields to create values for customer and item groups in the user defined code.</p> <p>The Customer Currency (ECS) preference forms (P40200EC and P40300EC) do not have an Item or Item Group field. These fields are not applicable to the Customer Currency (ECS) preference.</p>

**See Also:**

- [Section 31.3.2, "Defining the Display of Specific Preferences \(ECS\)"](#) for information about effective date and quantity fields,
- [Appendix A, "Understand Preference Fields \(ECS\)"](#) for information and tables of key, search, and preference definition fields.

### 30.3 Entering Specific Preference Information (ECS)

All preferences have unique fields where you enter specific preference information. You enter this information for each preference in the detail portion of the Preference Profile Revisions form. These specific preference fields are:

- Search fields
- Definitions fields

Search fields are marked with a greater than (>) sign next to the field name. The system uses these fields in the same way as it uses key fields. Each preference has search fields unique to its requirements. These fields are found in the detail portion of each preference's Preference Profiles Revisions form. Search fields are optional. You use these fields to further narrow the search criteria specified by key fields. For example, if you indicate that the search field called Branch/Plant should be used as additional selection criteria, the system selects sales orders that match the unique combination of customer, item, and branch/plant criteria.

Preference definition fields are the fields that the system uses to resolve the preferences. Each preference has one or more definition fields unique to its requirements. These fields are found in the detail portion of each preference's Preference Profiles Revisions form. Definition fields are required, although in some cases a valid value can be a blank. Typically, the system uses the values you input in these fields to override or add information on a sales order.

**See Also:**

- [Appendix A, "Understand Preference Fields \(ECS\)"](#) for information and tables of key, search, and preference definition fields.

**To enter specific preference information**

On Preference Profiles

1. Choose the preference you want to create.
2. Access the Preference Inquiry form.

**Figure 30–3 Print Messages (Specific Preferences) screen**

3. On the Preference Inquiry form, access the Preference Profile Revisions form.

**Figure 30–4 Print Messages (Specific Preferences, Revisions) screen**

4. On the Preference Profile Revisions form, complete the specific preference information in the detail portion for each preference you create.

The following paragraphs describe each preference in greater detail. The descriptions in this chapter are presented in alphabetical order.

### 30.3.1 Understanding the Container Deposit/Rental Preference

Use the Container Deposit/Rental preference to specify three aspects of Container Management:

- Deposit or Rental for a Customer/Item. You can specify that a customer/item combination will be billed for rentals or deposits on the containers.
- Transaction or Summary Level Billing. You can specify that a customer/item combination will be billed for container deposits on a transaction by transaction basis or on a summary period. You can specify summary periods over a given period (set up in the Invoice Cycle preference) for the empty container.
- Override the G/L Offset from the Item Master. When you define a Container Deposit/Rental preference, Container Management uses the preference's G/L offset in the sales order it creates for container deposits and rentals. The system uses this G/L offset instead of that defined in the Item Master. This allows you to separate potential sales of empty containers from the actual deposits.

#### 30.3.1.1 Before You Begin

- Ensure that you create the G/L offset account for container deposits and rentals

#### 30.3.1.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Using default information	The Container Deposit/Rental preference is applied by the Container Management Extraction program. Typically, you run this program during end-of-day operations. It extracts a sales order from the Sales Order Management system and applies preference information for each matched customer/item combination. If no match is found, the system uses the data dictionary default and assigns each customer as a deposit customer with summary level billing.
Viewing the Container Billing Report	You can use the Container Billing Report to determine how preferences are applied. This report shows items that either have a transaction by transaction detail or a summary detail level. Also, the report presents different formats for deposit and rental customers.

### 30.3.2 Understanding the Customer Currency (ECS) Preference

Use the Customer Currency (ECS) preference to assign a currency code to a customer number or to a customer group. Unlike other preferences, this preference does not include the item or item group, because the currency code must be the same for all items on an order.

This preference overrides the default currency code from Customer Master Information in the order header record. You must still include the customer currency in the Customer Master Information. This is because accounts receivable processing does not check preferences. Instead, it uses currency from each order detail line.

The header currency code applies to all detail lines in the order. Therefore, when you rely solely on the Customer Currency (ECS) preference to set the order's currency code, you can have only one currency code per order.

The Customer Currency (ECS) preference can be defined for a specific selling branch/plant or for all branch/plants. For example, if your company sells jet fuel to

international airlines, the order might be in French francs from a depot in France and British pounds from a depot in the United Kingdom.

#### **30.3.2.1 Before You Begin**

- Activate foreign currency to process this preference
- Set up exchange rates for the foreign currency to the base currency

### **30.3.3 Understanding the Document Distribution (ECS) Preference**

Use the Document Distribution (ECS) preference to define how many extra copies of a delivery document you want printed and who you want to receive copies. For a customer and item combination, you define:

- The trip depot
- The document code of the document to be printed
- The person who will receive each copy
- The number of copies to print

You use this preference to control printing of delivery tickets, priced delivery tickets, and invoices. You can also use this preference to print custom documents (those not programmed by JD Edwards World), such as certificates of analysis.

The system applies Document Distribution (ECS) preferences either during the Bulk/Packaged Load Confirm process or at Preprint Delivery Documents.

The system allows you to specify this preference with multiple line entries. In this case, you should include the sequence number with the unique preference information in place of the standard information fields.

## Example: Document Distribution (ECS) Preference

**Figure 30–5 Preference Selection screen**

98300 Preference Selection Form P40400

Skip to Version:

0	Version	Description	User	Chg Date
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZJDE0001	Preference Processing	DEMO	03/10/97
<input type="checkbox"/>	ZJDE0002	Preference Processing	MK74989	02/23/07

Opt: 1=Run 2=Chg 3=Add 4=Rpt Dist 5=Cover 6=Prt Ovr 8=Repair 9=Dlt

As defined in the sample form above, the system applies the following preference setup whenever a customer assigned to customer group "ABC" orders a product assigned to item group "123".

Shipped By	Shipped From	Documents	Number of Copies	To Whom	Where
Truck	Depot A	Document A	2 copies	Address 198281 - Freight Shipping Manager	Printer 123
Rail	Depot B	Document B	1 copy	Address 71004 - Shipping Manager	Printer 321
Rail	Depot B	Document B	1 copy	Address 82425 - Tracking Manager	Printer 333

### See Also:

- Confirming a Bulk Load by Trip in the *JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide*,
- Confirming a Packaged Load by Trip in the *JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide*,
- Printing Delivery Documents Before Load Confirm in the *JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide*.

### 30.3.4 Understanding the Document Set (ECS) Preference

Use the Document Set (ECS) preference to identify the set of delivery documents for a particular customer and item combination. The Document Set name is linked to the Document Set Assignment form where the individual document sets are assigned.

If you are using delivery documents, you must define at least one Document Set (ECS) preference. How you define the preference depends on types of products, such as bulk or lubes, or whether your customer is foreign or domestic. You can also vary the preference by branch/plant.

The system applies Document Set (ECS) preferences when documents print during the following stages:

- Bulk/Packaged Load Confirm
- Preprint Delivery Documents

At the end of each stage, you can view or change the document set information on the Document Selection form.

#### **Example: Document Set (ECS) Preference**

Generally, companies create separate Document Set (ECS) preferences for bulk and packaged products. This example summarizes an efficient method to set up two Document Set (ECS) preferences so that the appropriate document sets are shipped with each product.

1. Create an item group for bulk products.
2. Assign a Document Set (ECS) preference to the bulk item group.
3. Set up another Document Set (ECS) preference for all items and all customers by leaving the Customer, Customer Group, Item, and Item Group fields blank.
4. Set up the preference hierarchy for the Document Set (ECS) preference so that:
  - Item Group/All Addresses is first in the hierarchy.
  - All Items/All Addresses is second in the hierarchy.

When the system processes the Document Set (ECS) preference during Load Confirm, the preference hierarchy causes the system to first search for an Item Group preference. If the item in the sales order line is a bulk item and you have assigned it to the item group, the system uses the document set for bulk products. Otherwise, the system uses the default values and issues the document set for all items and all customers. In this case, the system uses the document set for packaged products because you have not assigned packaged products to the bulk product item group.

### 30.3.4.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Document sets and cycle billing requirements</b>	<p>When you set up a Document Set (ECS) preference, verify that it does not conflict with an Invoice Cycle preference for the customer and item combination. Cycle billing (deferred invoicing) and delivery document invoicing are mutually exclusive.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To generate the invoice with the delivery documents, choose a document set that includes a primary invoice.</li> <li>■ To generate the invoice on a cyclical basis (such as weekly or monthly), run the Cycle Billing and Periodic Invoice programs.</li> </ul> <p>See also <a href="#">Section 30.3.9, "Understanding the Invoice Cycle Preference."</a></p>

#### See Also:

- Creating Document Sets and Creating Document Set (ECS) Preferences in the *JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide* for information on creating document set codes.

## 30.3.5 Understanding the End Use Preference

Use the End Use preference as system criteria for applying price adjustments. You can also use this preference to set up a duty paid or duty free status for stock that is commingled for duty.

End use refers to the customer's end use of the product. For example, you might be required to charge different prices for the same item depending on its end use. A product specific to aviation might have a special duty applied where the amount of duty might depend on end use, in this case, different duty amounts based on different airports.

## 30.3.6 Understanding the Freight (ECS) Preference

Use the Freight (ECS) preference to link the sales order detail line to a freight table. The system uses freight tables to determine freight charges based on distance, zone, or fixed fee. The system also uses freight tables to determine whether the freight is billable, payable, or both. Use the Freight (ECS) preference to specify a freight table for a customer/customer group and item/dispatch group.

The Freight (ECS) preference differs from other preferences in that it does not have an Item Group selection. Instead, it uses the same dispatch groups that are used by the Load and Delivery Management system to group products for dispatch.

The Freight (ECS) preference works in conjunction with freight tables. You define your Freight (ECS) preferences based on your distance-based, zone-based, or fixed-fee-based freight tables. You can specify one or more freight tables, for example, if you charge a customer a fixed fee and an additional distance-based fee for the same item or dispatch group.

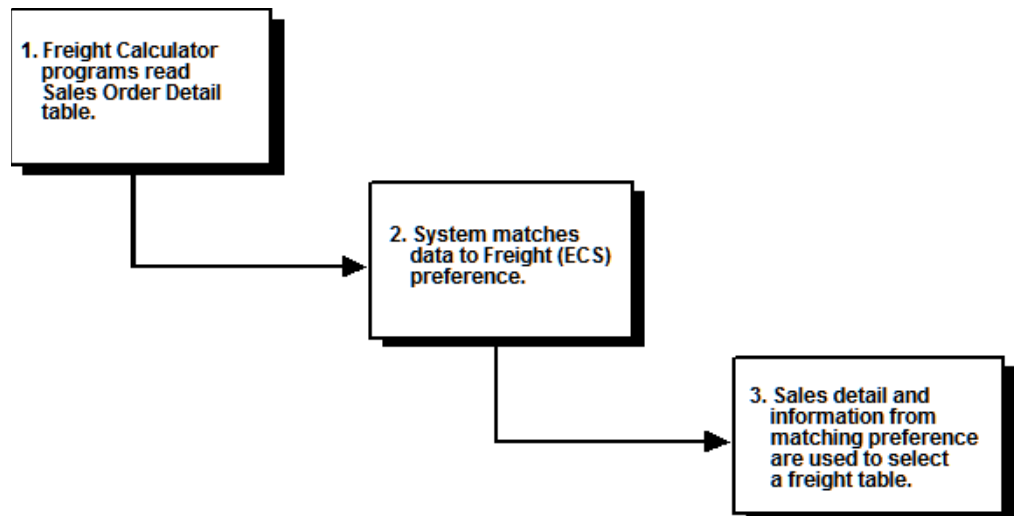
You must also designate whether the freight charge is billable to customers, payable to contractors, or both. Branch/Plant and Mode of Transport are optional search fields.

The system applies the Freight (ECS) preferences when you run the Customer Freight Calculator and Supplier Freight Calculator batch programs to determine billable and



payable freight charges. Normally, this is part of end-of-day processing. However, billable freight charges can also be calculated prior to printing delivery documents.

**Figure 30–6 Steps in Freight Calculation**



### 30.3.6.1 Before You Begin

- Before setting up Freight (ECS) preferences, determine the following:
  - Whether freight is billable to the customer, payable to a contractor, or both
  - If freight will be calculated by each delivery to a customer, by each sales detail line, or for each trip by a contractor
  - If the distance-based, zone-based, fixed-fee-based, or a combination of freight tables will be used
  - If the tariff code will be used for any of the freight tables in this preference

#### Example: Freight (ECS) Preference

A contractor delivers the following items to Customer A (the lines can be from the same sales order or from different sales orders):

- Line 1 10,000 GA UNLEAD
- Line 2 5,000 GA DIESEL

On the same trip, the contractor delivers the following items to Customer B:

- Line 1 50,000 GA UNLEAD
- Line 2 16,000 GA DIESEL

If the Delivery/Line/Trip field is L (line), each customer's freight charges are calculated separately for Line 1 and Line 2.

If the Delivery/Line/Trip field is D (delivery), each customer's freight charges are calculated for the sum of all lines in the delivery. This means that for Customer A, the quantities are added and the freight is calculated based on the total of 15,000 gallons. Freight charges for Customer B are based on a total of 66,000 gallons. If freight rates give the customer or carrier a price break based on quantity, the freight charges will be lower when they are calculated for a delivery.

If the Delivery/Line/Trip field is T (trip), the carrier's freight charges are calculated for the sum of all lines in the trip. This means that the quantities in the lines for both Customer A and Customer B are added and the freight is calculated based on a total of 81,000 gallons.

**See Also:**

- Creating Freight Tables and Calculating Freight Charges in the *JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide*.

### 30.3.6.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Using the dispatch group for the Freight (ECS) preference	<p>The Freight (ECS) preference forms (P40200EC and P40300EC) do not have an Item Group field. Instead, the system supplies the Dispatch Group field. Generally, you specify freight according to the type of products that you are delivering. You organize similar products by dispatch group.</p> <p>This field is typically more restrictive than the Item Group field. For example, you typically assign freight to items of a similar dispatch group, such as fuels or lubricants.</p>

## 30.3.7 Understanding the Grade and Potency Preference

Use the Grade and Potency preference to select inventory for a customer based on a specific grade or potency range for an item. You can set up base pricing by an item's grade or potency. You could use this preference if a customer requires a grade/potency range that differs from the standard range you define for an item through item branch/plant information.

---

**Note:** Because bulk products cannot be selected by grade or potency or load confirmed by lot, you should use this preference only for packaged products.

---

The Grade and Potency preference works in conjunction with the Inventory Commitment preference and the commitment method to determine the availability of products. The preference causes the system to ensure that available quantities are within a customer's specified grade/potency parameters.

In addition, the system uses the value you enter in the Days Expired Before field of the Grade and Potency preference to determine if the expiration date is within the customer's allowable days. This ensures the availability of product will be the quantity of the grades or potencies that the customer allows and within an expiration date.

You can only use the Grade and Potency preference if either the Potency Control or the Grade Control is activated for the item. This is done on the Plant Manufacturing Data form that is part of the Item Branch/Plant Information. You typically use this preference only if a customer requires a grade or potency range that differs from the standard ranges set up in the Item Branch/Plant Information.

You cannot specify both grade and potency for the same item. However, when you create the Grade and Potency preference, the system displays both the Grade and Potency fields. This display occurs regardless of the status of the Potency Control and Grade Control setting on the Plant Manufacturing Data form. Therefore, you must be aware of how the system is set up prior to creating a Grade and Potency preference.

If the grade and potency activation settings are not properly enabled on the Plant Manufacturing Data form, the system will not prevent you from creating a Grade and Potency preference. Also, the system does not prohibit you from completing both the Grade and Potency fields, although this is a violation of data entry rules. These rules state that you may specify only one field (Grade or Potency) for the same item. In either case, the system will not apply preference information that conflicts with activation settings or data entry rules.

#### **Example: Applying a Grade and Potency Preference for Grades**

If a customer preference is set to accept grades A and B only, the system checks for product availability of those grades only. For example:

- Location 1 has 500 quantity available of Grade A stock.
- Location 2 has 1000 quantity available of Grade B stock.
- Location 3 has 2000 quantity available of Grade C stock.

Only Locations 1 and 2 have product available for this customer. The quantity available is 1500 because this customer does not accept grade C. The system performs availability checking using the values of the Grade and Potency fields. The system eliminates any grades or potencies that are not within the range.

#### **Example: Applying a Grade and Potency Preference for Potency**

When you set up a potency preference, you define the allowable percentage of active ingredients for an item. The From Potency field should contain a smaller percentage than the Thru Potency field. For example:

- From Potency: 60.000
- Thru Potency: 75.000

The system commits inventory for this customer and item combination only for lots when the potency is greater than or equal to 60% and less than or equal to 75%.

### **30.3.7.1 What You Should Know About**

<b>Topic</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>Sales order fields updated</b>	When you place orders that meet the criteria of a Grade or Potency preference, the following fields are updated in the Sales Order Detail table: SDFRGD – From Grade SDTHGD – Thru Grade SDFRMP – From Potency SDTHMP – Thru Potency SDEXDP – Days Before Expiration

## **30.3.8 Understanding the Inventory Commitment Preference**

Use the Inventory Commitment preference to:

- Specify that each order line be filled from one or more branch/plants based on customer/customer group or item/item group
- Specify the branch/plants where you want products shipped from

- Determine the percentage of the order that a branch/plant must be able to fill before it is selected by the system
- Specify the mode of transport and carrier information in the sales detail line

If you use this preference to specify the branch/plants where you want products shipped from, use the Sequence Number and Branch/Plant fields to control the product's Ship From location. You can then sequence the preferences to establish a priority order.

If you use this preference to determine the percentage of the order to be filled from each branch/plant, use preference sequences to establish an order. If a branch/plant can fill 100% of an order, it will be the only branch/plant selected by the system. If the order can not be filled from any branch, the system creates a backorder on the branch/plant with the lowest sequence number.

The system applies this preference during sales order entry. You can view the specified source branch/plant in the Branch/Plant field in the fold area of an order detail line. Additionally, the system uses this preference to fill the Mode of Transport and Carrier fields on the sales order detail. These two fields are used by the system to control the Freight (ECS) preference.

You must activate this preference separately from all other preferences.

#### Example: Inventory Commitment Preference

The Percent to Fill field provides you with the flexibility to fill an order line from one or more branch/plants. The Inventory Commitment preference works in conjunction with the system's normal checking done for quantity available, and adds a check on all branches defined in the preference.

As each branch is checked, the order will be shipped from any one branch that can fill the entire order. Depending upon the number you typed in the Percent to Fill field, a portion of the order line can be filled from one or more branch/plants.

Percent to Fill Value	System Action
0%	The system performs normal processing. The system performs no checking for the quantity on hand, and regardless of the quantity on hand, it is shipped to fill the order.
1 to 99%	The system requires that any branch must be able to fill the quantity specified. If the branch can fulfill the percentage, the quantity available is shipped and the remainder carried to the next branch. The system checks each branch to determine if the quantity can be shipped.
100%	<p>The system requires that the branch must be able to ship the entire quantity. This prevents shipping from multiple branches, but allows the system to check all branches to determine if the entire quantity can be shipped.</p> <p>If you specify a Percent to Fill value of 100% for each of several branch/plants, an order can only be filled from a single branch/plant that has sufficient on-hand quantity to fill the order. If no branch/plant has sufficient quantity to fill 100% of the order, the order is put on backorder or partially shipped from the first preference.</p>

The following table identifies the action that the system performs based on the value in the Percent to Fill field.

Percent	Action
0%	The system performs normal processing. The system performs no checking for the quantity on hand, and, regardless of the quantity on hand, it is shipped to fill the order.
1 to 99%	The system requires that any branch must be able to fill the quantity specified. If the branch can fulfill the percentage, the quantity available is shipped and the remainder carried to the next branch. The system checks each branch to determine if the quantity can be shipped.
100%	<p>The system requires that the branch must be able to ship the entire quantity. This prevents shipping from multiple branches, but allows the system to check all branches to determine if the entire quantity can be shipped.</p> <p>If you specify a Percent to Fill value of 100% for each of several branch/plants, an order can only be filled from a single branch/plant that has sufficient on-hand quantity to fill the order. If no branch/plant has sufficient quantity to fill 100% of the order, the order is put on backorder or partially shipped from the first preference.</p>

The following table shows an example when an order is placed for a quantity of 500.

Branch/Plant: Quantity Available	Percent to Fill as set up in Preference	Minimum Order Quantity to Fill	Result
Depot A: 100	50%	250	Do not ship from this branch because the available branch/plant quantity is less than the minimum order quantity.
Depot B: 400	80%	400	Ship 400 from this branch.
Depot C: 96	95%	95	Ship 96 from this branch because the available branch/plant quantity is at least 95% of the order balance of 100.

The system backorders the remaining quantity of 4 to Depot B.

### 30.3.8.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that the sales order entry preference options for inventory commitment are blank

#### See Also:

- [Section 30.3.6, "Understanding the Freight \(ECS\) Preference,"](#)
- [Section 31.2, "Activating Preferences \(ECS\)."](#)

## 30.3.9 Understanding the Invoice Cycle Preference

Use the Invoice Cycle preference to establish a special invoice cycle for a customer and item combination. The invoice cycle controls when the invoice is generated. For

example, one customer might prefer a monthly invoice at the end of the month for all shipments made during that month. Another customer might want a daily invoice.

If you create an Invoice Cycle preference for a customer, ensure that the document set printed before or during the load confirm process does not include a primary invoice. If it includes a primary invoice, the system will not apply the Invoice Cycle preference.

After orders are confirmed for delivery, they are processed by the Cycle Billing program. The program accesses the Invoice Cycle preference and calculates the scheduled invoice date based on the invoice cycle, invoice calculation rules, and scheduled invoice date ranges.

### 30.3.9.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Invoice cycle calculation rules and scheduled invoice dates</b>	The Cycle Billing program uses invoice calculation rules and other key dates, along with the invoice cycle, to calculate the scheduled invoice date. Generally, these are set up during the install process. Scheduled invoice dates are revised, at a minimum, on an annual basis. You can access these programs from the Invoice Cycle preference form. You do not have to set up rules and dates each time you add a preference unless you have not defined a rule for the invoice cycle.
<b>Consolidated invoices</b>	Some customers prefer to have invoice consolidation, which is a single invoice for multiple sales orders instead of a separate invoice for each sales order. This preference does not consolidate invoices.  To consolidate invoices, set the Invoice Consolidation flag in customer billing instructions to Y (Yes). Then, set up an Invoice Cycle preference to schedule invoicing according to the customer's requirements.
<b>Document sets and cycle billing</b>	When you set up an Invoice Cycle preference, verify that it does not conflict with the document assigned to the customer and item.  See also <a href="#">Section 30.3.4, "Understanding the Document Set (ECS) Preference."</a>

### 30.3.10 Understanding the Line of Business Preference

Use this preference to specify a customer's line of business. Line of business preferences can be set for customer and item combinations.

Your business can derive useful data for sales analysis when you define line of business preferences. You can write your own World Writer Reports to produce reports by line of business. Price adjustments can be based on line of business.

This preference is applied during sales order entry. You can view line of business information in the LOB field in the sales order detail line.

#### See Also:

- Advanced Pricing Overview in the *JD Edwards World Advanced Pricing Guide*.

### 30.3.11 Understanding the Load/Promise Date (ECS) Preference

Use the Load/Promise Date (ECS) preference to calculate the date to load the product and the promised delivery date for an item or item group based on the order date.

When you set up this preference, you must define:

- Lag Days - the minimum number of days between order entry and scheduled load date
- Leadtime Transit - the number of days that goods are in transit between load and delivery

You can also vary this preference by branch/plant, route, mode of transportation, and carrier. The Load/Promise Date (ECS) preference is a convenient way to set up promise date calculations for groups of items.

When the Load/Promise Date (ECS) preference is applied, the system calculates the load date using a special calendar that defines standard working days. To determine the promised delivery date, the system then adds the delivery leadtime to the load date.

The Sales Order Entry program uses the lag days and leadtime days you specify in the preference to calculate the promised delivery date for the item or item group in the preference. The Promised Date field appears in the fold area of the order detail line.

### Example: Applying Load/Promise Dates

The following examples are based on the November 1998 Route Work Day calendar and assume that four lag days and five leadtime transit days are specified in the preference.

Action	Result
Order taker manually enters a load date	<p>The program enters the promised date in advance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales Order Entered: Friday 11/6/98</li> <li>■ Load Date Entered: Thursday 11/12/98</li> <li>■ Promised Date Calculated: Tuesday 11/17/98</li> </ul> <p>The system calculates the promised date by adding the leadtime transit days to the load date.</p>
Order taker manually enters a promised date	<p>The program backschedules the load date. The system subtracts the leadtime transit days from the promised date to calculate the load date:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales Order Entered: Friday 11/6/98</li> <li>■ Promised Date Entered: 11/23/98</li> <li>■ Load Date Calculated: Wednesday 11/18/98</li> </ul> <p>A warning appears if the ship date is prior to today.</p>
Order taker leaves Promised Date and Load Date fields blank	<p>The program calculates the promised date by adding the lag days to the leadtime transit days from the preference to the sales order date:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales Order Entered: 11/3/98</li> <li>■ Load Date Calculated: 11/9/98</li> <li>■ Promised Date Calculated: Saturday 11/14/98</li> </ul>

Action	Result
<b>System calculates a load date that is less than the sales order entry date</b>	<p>The program schedules the promised date in advance by placing the order date plus the lag time into the load date and then adding the leadtime to the load for the promised date:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales Order Entered: 11/6/98</li> <li>■ Requested Date Entered: Friday 11/13/98</li> <li>■ Load Date Would Need To Be: Monday 11/2/98</li> </ul> <p>The system recalculates to indicate the actual load and promise dates:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales Order Entered: Friday 11/6/98</li> <li>■ Load Date Calculated: Thursday 11/12/98</li> <li>■ Promised Date Calculated: Tuesday 11/17/98</li> </ul>

The following table identifies possible actions and their results.

Action	Result
<b>Order taker manually enters a load date</b>	<p>The program enters the promised date in advance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales Order Entered: Friday 11/6/98</li> <li>■ Load Date Entered: Thursday 11/12/98</li> <li>■ Promised Date Calculated: Tuesday 11/17/98</li> </ul> <p>The system calculates the promised date by adding the leadtime transit days to the load date.</p>
<b>Order taker manually enters a promised date</b>	<p>The program backschedules the load date. The system subtracts the leadtime transit days from the promised date to calculate the load date:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales Order Entered: Friday 11/6/98</li> <li>■ Promised Date Entered: 11/23/98</li> <li>■ Load Date Calculated: Wednesday 11/18/98</li> </ul> <p>A warning appears if the ship date is prior to today.</p>
<b>Order taker leaves Promised Date and Load Date fields blank</b>	<p>The program calculates the promised date by adding the lag days to the leadtime transit days from the preference to the sales order date:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales Order Entered: 11/3/98</li> <li>■ Load Date Calculated: 11/9/98</li> <li>■ Promised Date Calculated: Saturday 11/14/98</li> </ul>
<b>System calculates a load date that is less than the sales order entry date</b>	<p>The program schedules the promised date in advance by placing the order date plus the lag time into the load date and then adding the leadtime to the load for the promised date:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales Order Entered: 11/6/98</li> <li>■ Requested Date Entered: Friday 11/13/98</li> <li>■ Load Date Would Need To Be: Monday 11/2/98</li> </ul> <p>The system recalculates to indicate the actual load and promise dates:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sales Order Entered: Friday 11/6/98</li> <li>■ Load Date Calculated: Thursday 11/12/98</li> <li>■ Promised Date Calculated: Tuesday 11/17/98</li> </ul>



### 30.3.11.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Lag day and leadtime calculation</b>	<p>When you enter the lag days, the load date is calculated using the Route Work Day calendar (user defined code table 42/WD = Route). Holidays and weekends are excluded from the calculation of the load date. The load date is automatically extended if non-working days occur within the lag time.</p> <p>The leadtime calculation does not use the Route Work Day calendar. Holidays and work days are included as in-transit days.</p> <p>You can access the Route and other Work Day Calendars from the Miscellaneous Updates menu.</p>

#### See Also:

- Setting Up the Work Day Calendar in the *JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide*.

### 30.3.12 Understanding the Next Order Status (ECS) Preference

Use the Next Order Status (ECS) preference to skip or insert processing steps after sales order entry. The processing flow is determined by the order activity rules. The Next Order Status (ECS) preference overrides the next step in the order activity rules. You should only use this preference to change the steps after you enter an order.

For example, you might want to send an Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) order acknowledgement for a specific customer and item combination. For another customer, you might want to skip the trip maintenance and load confirmation steps defined in the order activity rules.

The order activity rules determine which steps you can skip. For example, to skip from Enter Sales Order (Status 520) to another status step, you must choose one of the Other Allowed status codes. You could not skip from Enter Sales Order to Cycle Billing (Status 580) because the order activity rules stipulate that the next status can only be 562 or 564.

---

**Caution:** During preference setup, the system does not prohibit you from entering invalid activity/status codes. However, during sales order processing, the system highlights fields on the sales order to indicate that you have entered an invalid activity/status code.

---

#### 30.3.12.1 Before You Begin

- Determine the order activity rules and the steps that can be skipped in the process flow.
- Verify that the order activity rules and the Other Allowed status information are valid. The Other Allowed codes for order activity rules can vary by company. Anyone with authority to set up a Next Order Status (ECS) preference should have the rules and information available.

### 30.3.13 Understanding the Payment Terms (ECS) Preference

Use the Payment Terms (ECS) preference to identify payment terms and instruments for specific customer and item combinations. The system applies payment terms only

at the item detail level. For any items not included in this preference, the system applies the payment terms from Customer Master setup at the order level.

### 30.3.14 Understanding the Price Adjustment Schedule Preference

Use the Price Adjustment Schedule preference to assign a price adjustment schedule to one or more items different from the schedule usually applied to orders for a specific customer. You can also use this preference to create penalty schedules for agreements with business partners.

This preference overrides the default schedule from Customer Billing Instructions. The system applies this preference during sales order entry.

**See Also:**

- Advanced Pricing Overview in the *JD Edwards World Advanced Pricing Guide*,
- Setting Up Agreement Penalties in the *JD Edwards World Agreement Management Guide*.

### 30.3.15 Understanding the Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS) Preference

Use the Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS) preference for the following:

Action	Result
<b>Override the Pricing Unit of Measure field</b>	<p>This field appears in the sales order detail line. The system completes the sales detail line based on the value you define in the Item Master. You use the Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS) preference to override this value.</p> <p>You might use this preference when your company has negotiated a price with a customer in a specific unit of measure. You then need to set up pricing for the customer and item in that unit of measure and enter a Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS) preference to ensure that the system automatically adds the pricing unit of measure to the order. The pricing unit of measure can differ from the transaction unit of measure and can vary by branch/plant.</p>
<b>Override the value in the Sales Price Based on Date field</b>	<p>This field is in System Constants.</p> <p>The Sales Price Based On Date field determines how the Price Effective Date field in the sales order detail tables will be updated.</p>

Action	Result
<b>Designate whether pricing is at ambient or standard temperature or by weight</b>	<p>When you set up prices for bulk products, they are not associated with ambient or standard temperature. During sales order entry, the system checks the setting (ambient, standard, or weight) in your company's data dictionary and stores it in the Sales Order Detail - Tag table. At this point, the system has no temperature information, so the extended price is calculated assuming that ambient volume will be delivered. Then, during bulk delivery confirmation, the volume is converted, if necessary, and the price recalculated. The system correctly displays the converted volume and recalculated price on the invoice.</p> <p>You can use this preference to override the default value in the data dictionary. For example, if the default is ambient and the customer requires that the quantity on the invoice be converted to standard temperature volumes, use the Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS) preference to specify standard temperature pricing. During bulk delivery confirmation, the volume is converted from ambient to standard and the extended price is recalculated.</p> <p>For example, suppose that the order quantity is 1000 liters and the base price is 0.20 per liter. The extended price on the sales order will be 200.00.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If the loaded quantity at ambient temperature is 1000 liters, the extended price on the invoice is also 200.00.</li> <li>■ If the preference is for standard volumes, the system converts the volume to standard temperature volume. If the quantity, such as 1000 ambient, is loaded and converted to 990 liters standard temperature volume, the extended price would then be recalculated as 990 x 0.20 or 198.00.</li> </ul>

You can assign a different Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS) preference for customer and item combinations based on the branch/plant.

#### 30.3.15.1 Before You Begin

- Set the sales price retrieval unit of measure in System Constants. See [Section 36.1, "Setting Up Constants \(ECS\)."](#)
- Confirm that a base price record exists for the pricing unit of measure to be entered in this preference.

##### See Also:

- [Section 24.2, "Defining Base Prices \(ECS\)."](#)

### 30.3.16 Understanding the Print Messages (ECS) Preference

Use the Print Messages (ECS) preference to choose the messages you want to automatically print on documents for a particular customer and item combination. This preference provides several search fields to use in conjunction with the customer/item combination.

The system applies this preference when a document is printed, not during order entry. The Print Messages (ECS) preference does not override any other messages you set up in Customer Billing Instructions and Item Branch/Plant information.

Unlike other preferences, the system applies print messages cumulatively. The system selects all messages that match the customer and item selection criteria and prints

them on documents. Print messages are also cumulative for all levels in the preference hierarchy. For example, if you choose three hierarchy levels and set up multiple preferences at each hierarchy level, the system applies all print messages at all hierarchy levels that match the customer and item combination you enter on an order.

---

**Note:** Leaving any of the search fields blank indicates you want to specify all valid values for that field. For example, a blank in the Business Unit field causes the system to apply the Print Messages (ECS) preference to all business units.

---

#### 30.3.16.1 Before You Begin

- You must create print messages before you can use this preference.

### 30.3.17 Understanding the Product Allocation (ECS) Preference

Use the Product Allocation (ECS) preference to restrict the amount of an item or item group that a customer or customer group can purchase. For example, use this preference if the demand for a product exceeds the supply or if government regulations restrict limits for certain products.

You can set quantity limits to define the quantity a customer or customer group is allowed to purchase or the quantity of each item or item group that is allowed to be sold. The system checks for allocation limits before checking availability. Product allocation indicates how product is distributed among customers. Product availability indicates how much of any product is at any branch/plant location.

Product allocations can be set up as either:

- A fixed number of item units
- A percentage of the available product

If the order quantity exceeds allocated quantity, a warning message appears when you enter a sales order. At that time, you can put the order on hold or reduce order quantity to the allowable or available quantity.

Each time you place an order for an allocated product, the quantity ordered during the effective date range accumulates toward the allocation limit. The system updates the Quantity Sold field each time you enter an order. This field shows the quantity ordered since the allocation went into effect. When you change or cancel an order, the system subtracts the quantity from the running total. The system applies the product allocation preference before checking availability.

---

**Caution:** You should disable the Quantity From and Quantity Thru fields on Preference Master for the Product Allocation (ECS) preference. This enables the system to automatically perform unit of measure conversions for this preference.

---

When you enter an order and it exceeds the Product Allocation (ECS) preference information, you can access the Product Allocation Information window to adjust the information.

#### 30.3.17.1 Before You Begin

You must identify the product allocation hold code in the sales order entry processing options if both of the following apply:

- You create Product Allocation (ECS) preferences.
- You want orders to be held if a customer's order exceeds their allocation.

### 30.3.17.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Quantity sold and balance calculations	<p>The balance column on the Product Allocation (ECS) inquiry form updates with the quantity available to purchase if one of the following apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Allocation Method 1 is used.</li> <li>■ Allocation Method 2 is used with the amount remaining in the Quantity Pool.</li> </ul> <p>If you place an order on hold because it exceeds the allocated amount, the balance will show as a negative amount for either Allocation Method 1 or 2.</p>

**See Also:**

- [Section 40.1, "Setting Up Order Hold Information \(ECS\)."](#)

## 30.3.18 Understanding the Quality (ECS) Preference

Use a Quality (ECS) preference to either request or require that a test be run and certain quality standards be met for a particular customer and item combination.

The system applies the preference when confirming a bulk load by trip. If a test is requested or required, you can either exit to On Vehicle Sampling/Quality or return to the menu to enter test results.

### 30.3.18.1 Before You Begin

- Set up test specifications, which require the system to run a test or set a quality standard. See *Setting Up the Vehicle Master in the JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide*.

**See Also:**

- *Confirming a Bulk Load by Trip in the JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide.*

## 30.3.19 Understanding the Revenue Cost Center (ECS) Preference

Use the Revenue Cost Center (ECS) preference to recognize revenue for a cost center different from the central cost center. This preference allows you to override the default accounting branch/plant cost center from the Branch/Plant or Detail Branch/Plant fields. The Revenue Cost Center (ECS) preference does not apply to interbranch sales.

The system applies this preference during order entry. You can view the revenue cost center in the Accounting Branch/Plant field in the fold area of an order detail line. This field can be filled by the cost center that the automatic accounting instructions (AAIs) normally use for the revenue entry to the general ledger. If you specify the AAIs to leave the Accounting Branch/Plant field blank, the system fills it with the value you specify on the Revenue Cost Center (ECS) preference.

Additionally, you can use this preference for a salesperson that might be located at the revenue cost center associated with the preference.

### 30.3.19.1 Before You Begin

- Set the Update Customer Sales processing option to blank or 3 to specify the revenue cost center

## 30.3.20 Understanding the Sales Commission (ECS) Preference

Use the Sales Commission (ECS) preference to set up sales personnel and commission rates based on customer and item combinations. Line of Business and Branch/Plant are additional search fields for this preference. You can assign different commission preferences for various customer and item combinations based on the line of business and branch/plant values.

The system normally provides default values from Customer Billing Instructions for the sales commission fields in the sales order header. If the billing instructions Rate fields are blank for the Commission Royalty Information, the system can provide default values for the commission rate. Normally, the system provides default values for each line on the sales order. The preference overrides the header information at the line level.

### 30.3.20.1 Before You Begin

- You must set up all salespeople in the address book and on the Commission/Royalty Information form before you can enter them on a preference. See [Section 41.1, "Setting Up Commission Information \(ECS\)."](#)

## 30.3.21 Understanding the User Defined Price Code Preferences

Use the User Defined Price Code preferences to define your own codes and use them for your unique pricing needs. Price codes are added to the sales order detail line during order entry. Price codes 1 and 2 appear in the fold area. Price code 3 does not appear, but it is included in the Sales Order Detail table. Because price code 3 does not appear, you can't add or change it during order entry.

Price codes can be used in Advanced Pricing programs to define price adjustments. They can also be used for your reporting requirements.

For example, you might use a price code for temporary pricing. You define a price code to identify order lines that need to be repriced when commodity prices are published for a specific period. If you don't want the price code to be manually changed during order entry, use the Price Code 3 preference.

When the price is known, you can run the Update Sales Price/Cost program. You should only select those lines with the price code equal to the specified value.

#### See Also:

- Updating Order Prices in the *JD Edwards World Advanced Pricing Guide*,
- [Section 24.2, "Defining Base Prices \(ECS\)."](#)

---

## Set Up Preferences

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 31.1, "Setting Up Preferences \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 31.2, "Activating Preferences \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 31.3, "Setting Up the Preference Master \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 31.4, "Assigning Customers and Items to Groups \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 31.5, "Arranging the Preference Hierarchy \(ECS\)."](#)

### 31.1 Setting Up Preferences (ECS)

JD Edwards World provides predefined preferences. Before you use preferences, you must perform some setup tasks to customize preferences for your specific business requirements. As your business grows and changes, you perform the same setup tasks to further customize preferences.

You must activate each preference that you want the system to use during processing. Preferences are activated within a DREAM Writer version of the Preference Processing program. The processing options contain a list on which you activate or deactivate each preference for processing by the system.

JD Edwards World displays all preferences in logical groups on the Preference Profiles form. You can use the Preference Master to define the order in which the preferences display. You can also use the Preference Master to activate or deactivate the display of the Effective Dates and Effective Quantity fields. When activated, these fields are displayed on the Preference Inquiry and Preference Profile Revisions form.

To save time while defining preferences, you can assign a customer or an item to a group. You can then define preferences once for a group rather than many times for several customers or items. For example, all customers for whom you apply the same payment terms could be grouped. Then, when you create payment term preferences, you can define one preference for the group.

For each preference type, you must define a hierarchy to indicate the order in which you want the system to apply preferences to sales orders.

### 31.2 Activating Preferences (ECS)

#### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 27

**From ECS Sales Order Advanced and Technical Ops (G491031), choose Preference Selection**

You must activate each preference that you want the system to use during processing. Preferences are activated within a DREAM Writer version of the Preference Processing program. The processing options contain a list on which you activate or deactivate each preference for processing by the system.

You must set the processing options of the Sales Order Entry program to enable preference profile processing for all of the programs to which you want to apply preferences. The preferences you activate are used by the Sales Order Entry program as well as other programs, including Trip Creation and Maintenance, Customer Freight Calculation, and Supplier Freight Calculation.

---

**Note:** To enable the Inventory Commitment preference, you must set a unique processing option in the Sales Order Entry program. This processing option is separate from the selection that enables all other preferences.

---

**To activate preferences**

On Preference Selection

**Figure 31–1 Preference Selection (Activate) screen**

0 - Version	Description	User	Chg Date
ZJDE0001	Preference Processing	DEMO	03/10/97
ZJDE0002	Preference Processing	MK74989	02/23/07

Opt: 1=Run 2=Chg 3=Add 4=Rpt Dist 5=Cover 6=Prt Out 8=Repair 9=Plt

1. Choose the option to change the Preference Processing version you want to use.
2. Choose Processing Option Value(s) to display the Processing Options Revisions form.



**Figure 31–2 Processing Options Revisions (1 of 2) screen**

98312 Processing Options Revisions

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Return to Versions List  
Exit to Printer Overrides  
Return to Version Identifier

98312 Processing Options Revisions Form ID P40400  
Version NLC  
Display Level.

Preference Processing

This job has various options described below. Enter the desired values and press ENTER to continue.

PROCESS CONTROL:

1. Enter a '1' next to each preference to be processed:

- Payment Terms
- Pricing Unit of Measure
- Revenue Cost Center
- End Use
- Preferred Cost Center
- Product Allocation
- Grade and Potency
- Delivery Date
- Line of Business
- Price Code 1
- Price Code 2

F5=Printer Overrides

**Figure 31–3 Processing Options Revisions (2 of 2) screen**

98312 Processing Options Revisions

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Return to Versions List  
Exit to Printer Overrides  
Return to Version Identifier

98312 Processing Options Revisions Form ID P40400  
Version NLC  
Display Level.

Preference Processing

This job has various options described below. Enter the desired values and press ENTER to continue.

- Price Code 3
- Price Adjustment Schedule
- Order Preparation Days
- Document Distribution (ECS)
- Next Order Status
- Sales Commission
- Customer Currency
- Freight (ECS)
- Advanced Lot Management

F5=Printer Overrides

- On Processing Options Revisions, choose each of the preferences you want to activate.

### 31.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Preference status	When you are working with individual preferences, you can determine if the preference is currently active. The Preference Status field on each preference revision form displays the preference status.  See also <a href="#">Chapter 30, "Understand Preferences."</a>

## 31.3 Setting Up the Preference Master (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 27

From ECS Sales Order Advanced and Technical Ops (G491031), choose Preference Profiles

JD Edwards World displays all preferences in logical groups on the Preference Profiles form. You use the Preference Master to define the order in which the preferences display on the Preference Profiles form.

You also use the Preference Master to activate or deactivate the display of:

- Individual preferences on the Preference Profiles form
- The Effective Dates and Effective Quantity fields on the Preference Inquiry and Preference Maintenance forms

Complete the following tasks:

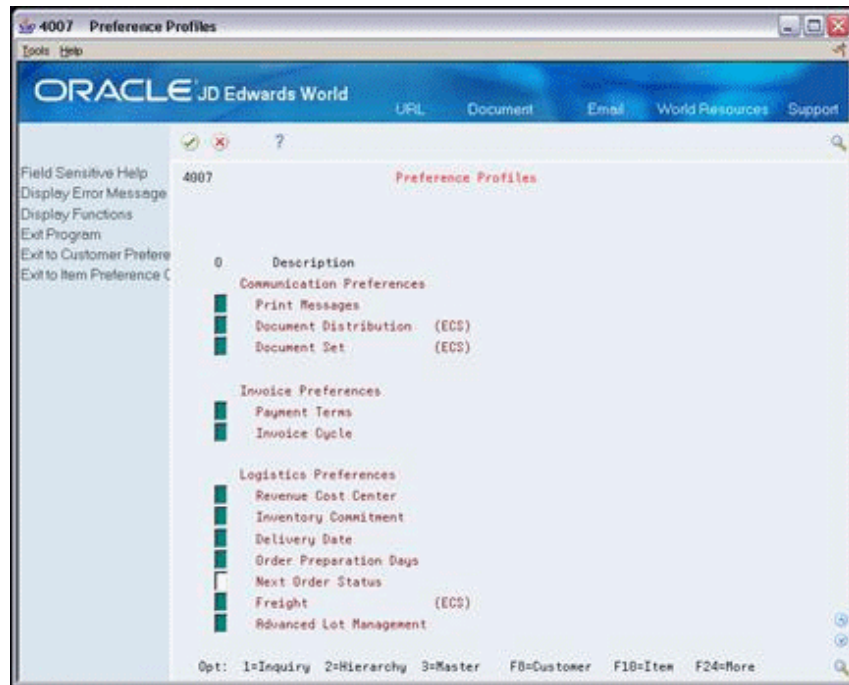
- Define the order of preferences
- Define the display of specific preferences
- Define the display of specific preference fields

### 31.3.1 Defining the Order of Preferences (ECS)

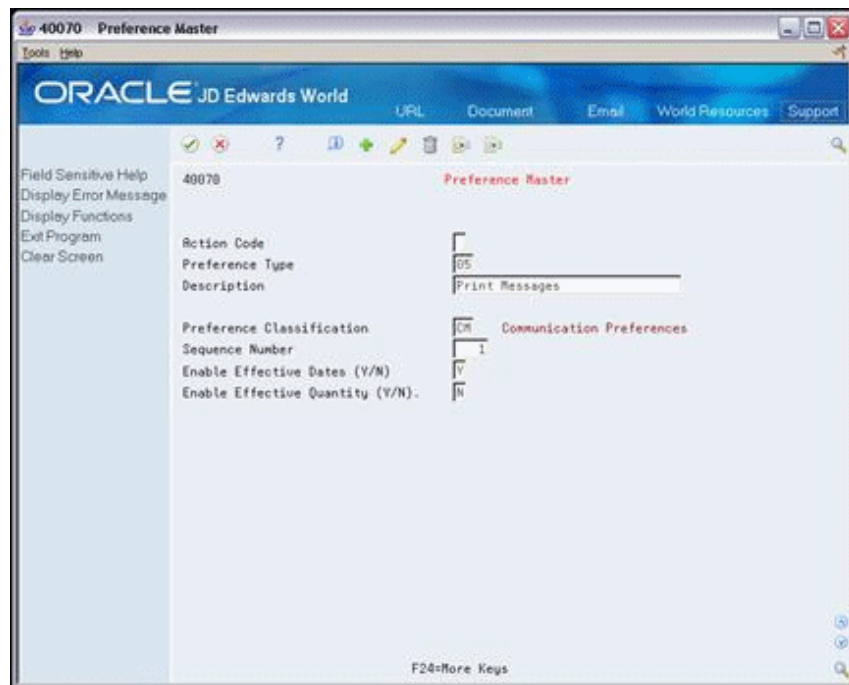
JD Edwards World displays all preferences in logical groups on the Preference Profiles form. You use the Preference Master to define the order in which the preferences display on the Preference Profiles form.

#### To define the order of preferences

On Preference Profiles

**Figure 31–4 Preference Profiles screen**

1. Choose a preference.
2. Access Preference Master.

**Figure 31–5 Preference Master screen**

3. On Preference Master, complete one or more of the following fields:
  - Description
  - Preference Classification

- Sequence Number

Field	Explanation
Preference Type	<p>A user defined code (system 40/type PR) that identifies a preference type or a price adjustment hierarchy.</p> <p>When you review the fold area of user defined code table 40/PR, a 1 in the first space of the Special Handling Code field identifies a preference that JD Edwards World supports.</p> <p>This field is hard coded for each preference.</p> <p>For Advanced Pricing</p> <p>When you define pricing hierarchies, identify each table with this code. Later, when you create adjustments, you use this code to identify the hierarchy the system should follow for this adjustment.</p> <p>For Agreement Penalty Schedules</p> <p>Set up a PN (for penalty) user defined code and enter it here.</p>
Description	<p>A user defined name or remark that describes a field.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The name or remark you enter should describe the preference type. What you enter here becomes the title of the preference throughout the system.</p> <p>You can modify the description to suit your company's needs.</p>
Preference Classification	<p>A classification or title that the system uses to group preferences on the Preference Profile form (P4007).</p>
Sequence Number	<p>A sequence or sort number that the system uses to process records in a user defined order.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Enter a number here to indicate where you want this preference to display within its classification on the Preference Profile form.</p> <p>The system uses the sequence number 1 for the group. Therefore, the first preference you can use within a grouping is sequence number 2.</p>

### 31.3.2 Defining the Display of Specific Preferences (ECS)

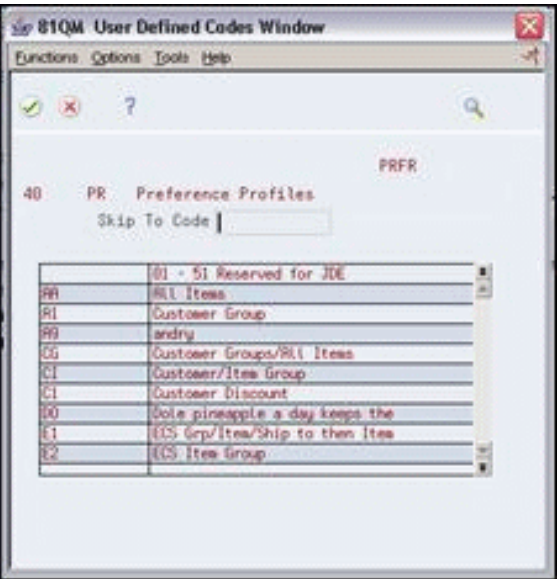
You use a special handling code to activate or deactivate the display of individual preferences on the Preference Profiles form. For example, to suppress the display of the Print Messages (ECS) preference, you can set the special handling code to 0. Then, when you access Preference Profiles, the system will not display the Print Messages (ECS) preference.

#### To define the display of specific preferences

On Preference Profiles

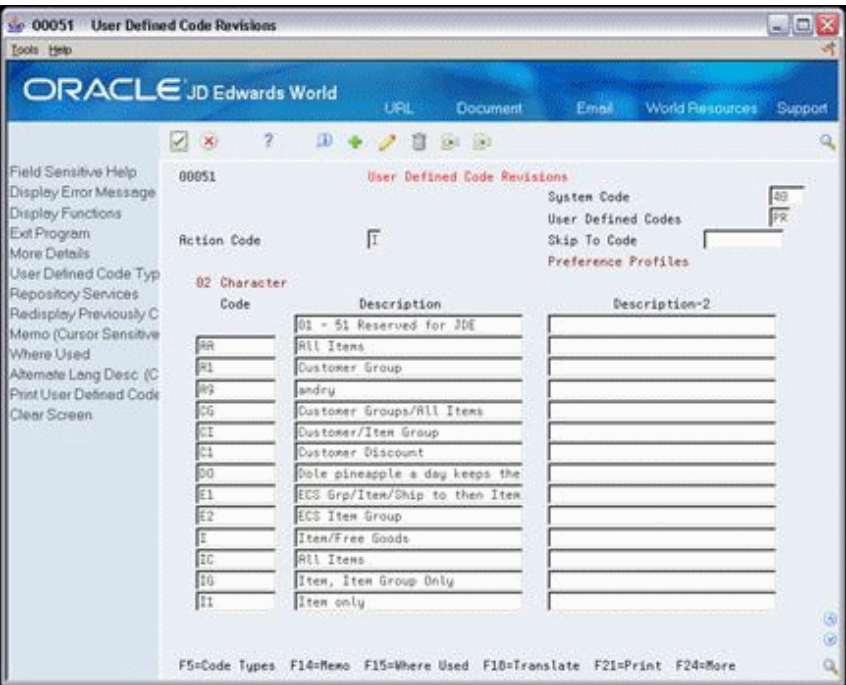
1. Choose a preference.
2. Access the Preference Master.
3. On the Preference Master form, use the Field Sensitive Help function on the Preference Type field to access the User Defined Codes Window.

Figure 31–6 User Defined Codes Window (Define Display) screen



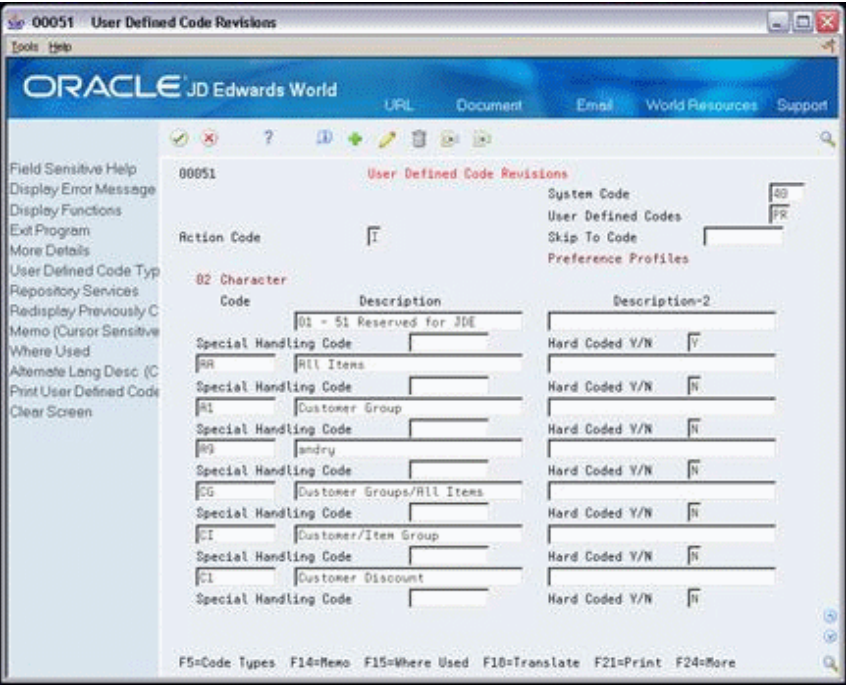
4. On User Defined Codes Window, choose the User Defined Codes Maintenance function to access the User Defined Code Revisions form.

Figure 31–7 User Defined Code Revisions (Display of Preferences) screen



5. On User Defined Code Revisions, access the fold area.

Figure 31–8 User Defined Code Revisions (Display of Preferences, Fold Area) screen



6. Complete the following field:
- Special Handling Code

Field	Explanation
Special Handling Code	<p>Indicates special processing requirements for certain user defined code values. The particular value you enter in this field is unique for each user defined code record type.</p> <p>The system uses the special handling code in many ways. For example, special handling codes defined for Language Preference specify if the language is double-byte or if the language does not have uppercase characters. Programming is required to activate this field.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If a "P" is in the second position, the system identifies that unit of measure as a potent unit of measure.</p>

31.3.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Entering special handling codes	For preferences, a 1 in this field activates the display of the specific preference on the Preference Profiles form. Conversely, a 0 in this field deactivates the display of the specific preference on the Preference Profiles form.

31.3.3 Defining the Display of Specific Preference Fields (ECS)

You can use the Preference Master form to activate or deactivate the display of the Effective Dates and Effective Quantity fields on the Preference Inquiry and Preference Maintenance forms.



If you activate the Effective Quantity field for a preference, no unit of measure conversions take place. Therefore, the system looks only for a preference with the same unit of measure as the unit of measure entered on the order.

For example, if you set up a preference with the unit of measure as LT (liters) and enter a sales order in gallons, the system will not select the preference because it does not convert the gallons to liters when searching preference records.

If you need the Effective Quantity fields active for a particular preference, you must create separate preferences for each unit of measure that can be used as the sales order transaction unit of measure.

### To define the display of specific preference fields

On Preference Profiles

1. Choose a preference.
2. Access Preference Master.
3. On Preference Master, complete one or more of the following fields:
  - Enable Effective Dates
  - Enable Effective Quantity

Field	Explanation
Enable Effective Dates	<p>A flag that indicates if you want to identify effective date ranges for a preference. Valid values are:</p> <p>Y – Yes, display Effective From and Effective Thru date fields on the Preference Profile Revisions forms (P40300 and P40300EC) for this preference.</p> <p>N – No, do not enable or display effective dates for this preference.</p> <p>Effective date fields are optional fields that you can set to N prior to setting up any preference records, but not after you have created preferences.</p> <p>You can assign effective dates without assigning effective quantity. However, if you assign effective quantity, you must assign effective dates.</p>
Enable Effective Quantity	<p>A code that indicates if you want to use quantity ranges for this preference. Valid values are:</p> <p>Y – Yes, display the Quantity From and Quantity Thru fields on the Preference Profile Revisions forms (P40300 and P40300EC) for this preference.</p> <p>N – No, do not enable or display the quantity range fields.</p> <p>Effective quantity fields are optional fields that you can disable prior to setting up any preference records, but not after you have created preference records.</p> <p>If you assign effective quantity, you must assign effective dates.</p>

## 31.4 Assigning Customers and Items to Groups (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 27

**From ECS Sales Order Advanced and Technical Ops (G491031), choose Preference Profiles**

To save time while defining preferences, you can assign a customer or an item to a group. You can then define preferences once for a group rather than many times for several customers or items. For example, you can group all customers for whom you apply the same payments terms. Then, when you create payment term preferences, you can define one preference for the group.

Complete the following tasks:

- Assign a customer to a customer group
- Assign an item to an item group

### **31.4.1 Before You Begin**

- Set up user defined codes for the customer group and item group. See *Work with User Defined Codes* in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.

### **31.4.2 Assigning a Customer to a Customer Group (ECS)**

You can assign a customer to a customer group for any preference.

For example, you can identify some customers as preferred customers and create specific payment terms for them. To do this:

- Set up a "Preferred" customer group UDC
- Assign all preferred customers to this group
- Create one Payment Terms (ECS) preference for the preferred customer group

You can assign any new preferred customers to the preferred customer group. The system automatically applies the Payment Terms (ECS) preference to all of the new customer's sales orders.

**To assign a customer to a customer group**

On Preference Profiles

1. Access Customer Preference Groups.



**Figure 31–9 Customer Preference Groups screen**

40071 Customer Preference Groups

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help 40071 Customer Preference Groups

Display Error Message

Display Functions

Exit Program

Display Previous Customer

Display Next Customer

Clear Screen

Action Code

Customer Number

Preference Type	Group	Description
Payment Terms		
Pricing Unit of Measure		
Revenue Cost Center		
End Use		
Print Messages		
Inventory Commitment		
Product Allocations		
Grade and Potency		
Delivery Date		
Line of Business		
User Defined Price Code 1		
User Defined Price Code 2		
User Defined Price Code 3		
Price Adjustment Schedule		
Invoice Cycle		

F19=Previous F20=Next F24=More Keys

2. On Customer Preference Groups, complete the following fields:

- Customer Number
- Group

### 31.4.3 Assigning an Item to an Item Group (ECS)

You can assign items to an item group for any preference.

For example, you might want to group like items to which the same Sales Commission (ECS) preference applies. To do this:

- Set up a UDC that describes the items in this group
- Assign all items to this group
- Create one Sales Commission (ECS) preference for the item group

#### To assign an item to an item group

On Preference Profiles

1. Access Item Preference Groups.

**Figure 31–10 Item Preference Groups screen**

40072 Item Preference Groups

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
Display Previous Item  
Display Next Item  
Clear Screen

40072 Item Preference Groups

Action Code  
Item Number

Preference Type	Group	Description
Payment Terms		
Pricing Unit of Measure		
Revenue Cost Center		
End Use		
Print Messages		
Inventory Commitment		
Product Allocations		
Grade and Potency		
Delivery Date		
Line of Business		
User Defined Price Code 1		
User Defined Price Code 2		
User Defined Price Code 3		
Price Adjustment Schedule		
Invoice Cycle		

F19=Previous F20=Next F24=More Keys

2. On Item Preference Groups, complete the following fields:

- Item Number
- Group

## 31.5 Arranging the Preference Hierarchy (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 27

From ECS Sales Order Advanced and Technical Ops (G491031), choose **Preference Profiles**

For each preference type, you must define a hierarchy to indicate the order in which you want the system to apply preferences to sales orders.

The Preference Hierarchy form contains rows identifying customers and customer groups and columns identifying items or item groups. You use the intersections of the rows and columns to enter your hierarchy sequence.

When the system searches for preference information, it starts with the hierarchy to determine the order in which to search preference information. The system begins with the intersection in which you entered 1 and searches for records defined for that customer and item combination. If no preference defined for that intersection is found, the system identifies the intersection in which you entered 2, and so forth.

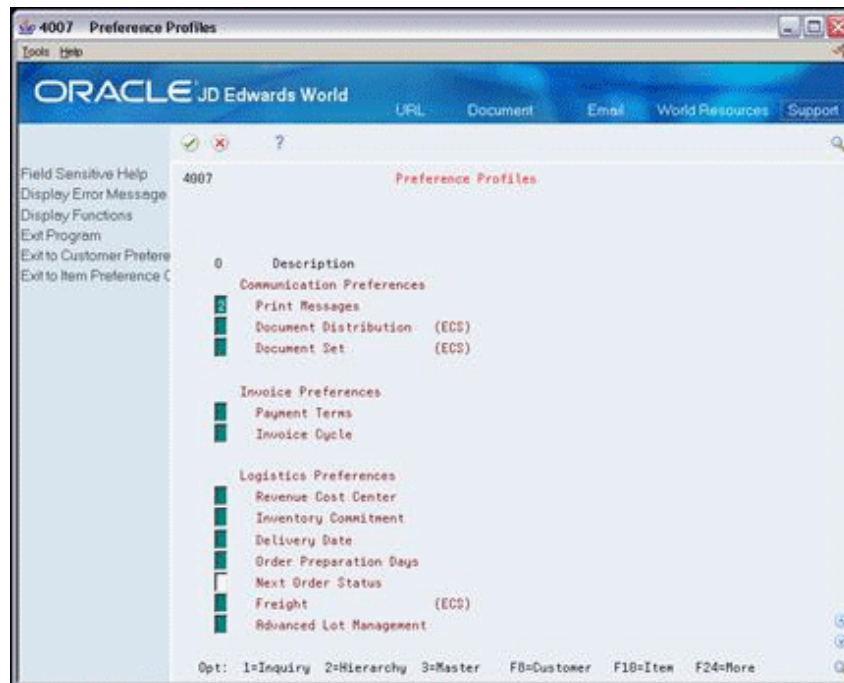
---

**Note:** JD Edwards World suggests that when you define hierarchies, you start with specific intersections, that is, item only and customer only, and work out to the broader groups.

---

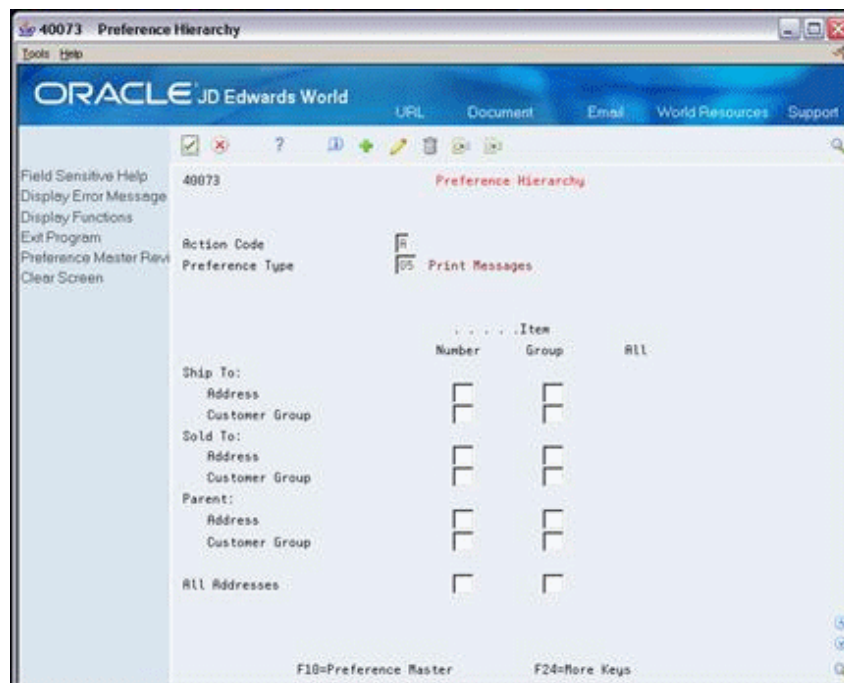
**To arrange the preference hierarchy**  
On Preference Profiles

**Figure 31–11 Preference Profiles (Preference Hierarchy) screen**



1. Choose a preference.
2. Access Preference Hierarchy.

**Figure 31–12 Preference Hierarchy screen**



- On Preference Hierarchy, type consecutive numbers to arrange the preference hierarchy for the specific preference.

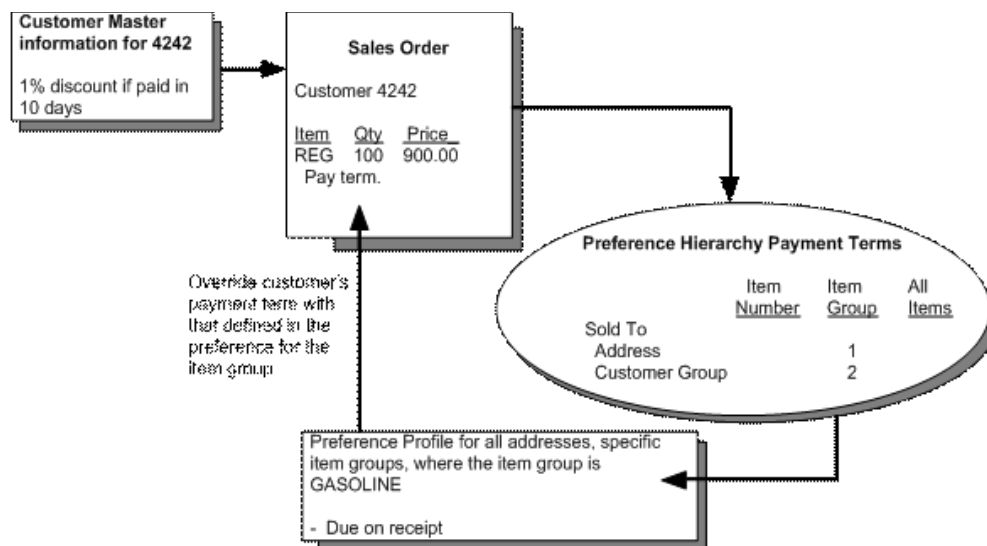
### 31.5.1 Example: Preference Hierarchy for Payment Terms

**Figure 31–13 Preference Hierarchy (Payment Terms) screen**

The screenshot shows the 'Preference Hierarchy' window in Oracle JD Edwards World. The window title is '40073 Preference Hierarchy'. The left sidebar contains a list of actions: Field Sensitive Help, Display Error Message, Display Functions, Exit Program, Preference Master Rev, and Clear Screen. The main area displays the 'Preference Hierarchy' for 'Print Messages'. It shows a table with columns for 'Ship To:', 'Sold To:', 'Parent:', and 'All Addresses'. Each row has checkboxes for 'Number' and 'Group'. The 'Sold To:' section is highlighted, showing 'Address' and 'Customer Group' with checkboxes for 'Number' and 'Group'. The 'Parent:' section also shows 'Address' and 'Customer Group' with checkboxes. The 'All Addresses' section has a checkbox for 'Number'. The bottom of the window shows 'F10=Preference Master' and 'F24=More Keys'.

When you enter an order, the system determines from the hierarchy for this preference that it should search first for information for a single Sold To address/item group combination and, second, for a group of Sold To addresses/item group combinations.

**Figure 31–14 Example Preference Hierarchy**



In this case, the system overrides the normal payment term for orders to that customer for items from the group with a due upon receipt payment term.

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 32.1, "Objectives,"](#)
- [Section 32.2, "About Invoice Setup \(ECS\)."](#)

## **32.1 Objectives**

- To define related addresses for customers
- To set up invoice cycles for customers

## **32.2 About Invoice Setup (ECS)**

You should set up customer-specific information to facilitate the processing of invoices.

Complete the following tasks:

- Define related addresses
- Set up invoice cycles

When you create a sales order, you must specify the address to which you send the invoice (Sold To address) and the address to which you send the shipment (Ship To address). These two addresses can be different. In addition, a customer might have a parent address to which you send all invoices and multiple subsidiary addresses to which you send shipments.

You can define related addresses for a customer and set up the system to automatically enter a related address when you enter either the Sold To or Ship To address on the sales order.

After you confirm orders for delivery, you process them through the Cycle Billing program. The Cycle Billing program calculates scheduled invoice dates based on the invoice cycle preference, invoice cycle calculation rules, and scheduled invoice date ranges.

You set up invoice cycles to apply different cycle calculation rules and schedules to different customer and item combinations. For example, one customer might prefer an invoice at the end of the month for all shipments made during that month, and another customer might want a weekly invoice for specific items. To set up invoice cycles, you set up invoice cycle calculation rules and create Invoice Cycle preferences.



---

## Define Related Addresses

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 33.1, "Defining Related Addresses \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 33.2, "Entering Related Addresses \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 33.3, "Defining the Invoicing Address \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 33.4, "Defining Default Address Types \(ECS\)."](#)

### 33.1 Defining Related Addresses (ECS)

When you create a sales order, you must specify the address to which you send the invoice (Sold To address) and the address to which you send the shipment (Ship To address). These two addresses can be different.

You can simplify the process of entering more than one address for a sales order by defining default addresses for each customer. For a given Ship To address, you can define a related Sold To address. For a Sold To address, you can define a related Ship To address. When you enter either address in a sales order, the system automatically fills in the other.

You can also designate other related addresses or a parent address for a customer. For example, a customer might have a Parent address to which you send all invoices and multiple subsidiary addresses to which you send shipments.

#### 33.1.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that the customer address and all related addresses have been entered in the Address Book table (F0101). See *Entering Basic Address Book Information (P01051)* in the *JD Edwards World Address Book and Electronic Mail Guide*.
- Verify that the customer has been set up in the Customer Master table (F0301). See *Entering Customer Master Information* in the *JD Edwards World Accounts Receivable Guide*.

### 33.2 Entering Related Addresses (ECS)

#### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose **Customer Revisions**

From Customer Revisions (G4221), choose **Address Book Revisions**



The Address Book table allows you to maintain information about all the companies and people with whom you do business. For each customer, you must define all related addresses - Ship To, Sold To, and Parent - in the Address Book.

### To enter related addresses

On Address Book Information

**Figure 33-1 Address Book Revisions screen**

The screenshot shows the 'Address Book Revisions' screen in Oracle JD Edwards World. The window title is '01051 Long Addr No'. The screen is divided into a left-hand menu and a main data entry area. The menu includes options like 'Field Sensitive Help', 'Display Error Message', 'Display Functions', 'Exit Program', 'Parent/Child Structure In', 'Who's Who Information', 'Additional Notes', 'Duplicate Alpha Name', 'Related Address Revis', 'Call Auxiliary Program (I', 'CIF Index', 'Phone Numbers', 'Address Book Control F', 'Category Codes', 'A/R Information', 'A/P Information', 'Mailing Address Windo', 'Additional Query Search', 'Previous Effective Addr', 'Next Effective Address', 'Mailing Name Addition', 'Clear Screen', and 'Customer Billing Instruct'. The main area contains the following fields:

- Action Code:** 1
- Address Number:** 4242
- Cons Code:**
- Alpha Name:** Corporate Office Systems Company
- Phone Number:** 383 773-1000 / 383 773-9227
- Mailing Name:** Corporate Office Systems Company
- Address:** 1156 Inverness
- Postal Code:** 80239
- City:** Denver
- State:** CO
- Country:** United States
- Industry Class:** 7000
- Credit Message:**
- Parent Number:**
- Long Addr No.:**
- Resp. Bus. Unit:** 1
- Search Type:** Customers
- Payables Y/N/M:** N
- Receivables Y/N:** Y
- Employee Y/N:** N
- User Code:** N
- Eff Date:**

At the bottom of the screen, there is a status bar with the text: 'F5=Who F9=RelAddr F11=CIF Index F12=Phones F13=Cntl Info F24=More'.

1. Complete the following field to access the record for a specific customer:
  - Address Number
2. Access Related Address Revisions. (F9).



**Figure 33–2 Related Address Book Revisions screen**

The screenshot shows the '01017 Related Address Revision' screen in Oracle JD Edwards World. The title bar indicates '01017 Related Address Revision'. The screen has a menu bar with 'Tools' and 'Help'. Below the menu bar is a toolbar with various icons. The main area contains a form with the following fields:

- Action Code:** A dropdown menu showing '1'.
- Address Number:** A text field containing '4242'.
- Corporate Office Systems Company:** A label on the right side of the form.
- Related Address Revisions Table:** A table with columns 'O R', 'P R', 'Related Address', and 'Alpha Name'. The first row shows '1' in the 'O R' column, '4343' in the 'Related Address' column, and 'Vector Mfg' in the 'Alpha Name' column. There are several empty rows below the first one.

At the bottom of the screen, there are two status bars: 'Opt: 1=Audit Window' and 'F24=More'.

3. On Related Address Revisions, complete the following fields:

- RA (Related Address Code)
- Related Address

For the Related Address Code, use the Add action and press Enter.

Field	Explanation
<b>Assigning Related Addresses</b>	<p>The related addresses in the Address Book Master file (F0101) relate to the Related Address Codes 1 - 6.</p> <p>There is no need to enter related addresses that are equal to the main address. You receive an error if you attempt to do this.</p> <p>The Related Address must be a valid address number set up in the Address Book Master file (F0101).</p>
<b>Reporting</b>	<p>If the sold to is the Parent and the ship to is the Child, you can not run financial reporting on the Child rather than the parent.</p>
<b>Related Address Code</b>	<p>The type of related address is determined by the Related Address Code which is setup in user defined code table 01/RA.</p> <p>There are five codes that are hard-coded with a predefined usage and they are not permitted to be entered in Related Address Revisions. They codes are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>blank – The Address Number itself</li> <li>C – The Address Number itself</li> <li>P – Parent Number</li> <li>N – No Print</li> <li>5 – Special/Factor Payee</li> </ul>

**See Also:**

- Enter Related Addresses in the *JD Edwards World Address Book and Electronic Mail Guide*.

### 33.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Assigning address numbers to related addresses	A related address must have an assigned number from the address book before it can be included on the Address Book - Additional Info form. If no related addresses exist, these fields contain the same address book number assigned to the customer.

## 33.3 Defining the Invoicing Address (ECS)

**Navigation**

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose **Customer Revisions**

From **Customer Revisions (G4221)**, choose **Customer Master Information**

After you enter related addresses in the address book, you must define the address to which you will send all invoices. You must also enter the Parent address here, if you have entered it in the address book.

**To define the invoicing address**

On **Customer Master Information**

**Figure 33–3 Customer Master Information screen**

The screenshot shows the 'Customer Master Information' screen (01053) in Oracle JD Edwards World. The interface includes a menu bar at the top with 'Tools' and 'Help'. A left-hand pane lists 'Field Sensitive Help' options such as 'Display Error Message', 'Display Functions', 'Address Book Control F', 'Exit Program', 'Who's who', 'Memo', 'Bank codes', 'Exit to Name Search', 'Auxiliary Pgm(may be in', 'Exit to Address Book', 'Address Status Window', 'Customer Billing Instruct', 'Category codes', 'Retrieve Vertex GeoCoi', 'CIF Index', 'Exit to Co/Business Unit', and 'Clear Screen'. The main area is titled 'Customer Master Information' and contains several sections of data entry fields:

- Action Type:** 1
- Customer Number:** 4242 Corporate Office Systems Company
- Long Address Number:** (blank)
- Credit/Collections Information:** Includes 'Credit Message', 'Temp Credit Msg.', 'Factor/Special P' (4242 Corporate Office Systems Company), 'Parent Number', 'Payment Terms' (Net 30 Days), 'Credit Manager', 'Collection Mgr', 'Last Cred Rvw', 'ABC (Slts/Marg/P)' (A C C), 'Pref Cust Status', 'Monthly Fin Chg%', and 'Reference'.
- Invoice Method:** Ledger Inq Seq (checked), Auto Receipt (Y/ (checked), Auto Cash Alg (checked), Payment Instr (checked), Bal Fwd/Open Itm (checked), No. of Reminders (checked), Collection Rpt. (checked), Bank Record Type (checked).
- Currency & Tax Information:** Includes 'Tax Expl Code', 'Tax Rate/Area' (CO), 'Currency Code', 'Ret. Currency' (USD).
- Accounting Distribution Information:** Includes 'G/L Class', 'Model JE Type/Doc/Co', 'Unappl Cash Offset', and 'Default Rev Acct'.

The footer contains navigation keys: F5=Who F6=Memo F8=Bank cd F9=Srcch F11=Addr F13=Billing F14=Cat cd F24=More.

1. Complete one or more of the following fields:

- Parent Number

- Invoice Method
- Print Statement
- Send Invoice to
- Send Statement to

2. Use the Add action and press Enter.

Field	Explanation
Print Stmt (Y/N)	<p>A code that indicates whether the system prints invoices and statements for the customer. Valid codes are:</p> <p>Y – Yes, print invoices and statements</p> <p>N – No, do not print invoices and statements</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you enter N, you cannot attach a draft to a statement. You do not need to print drafts when they are pre-authorized.</p>
Invoice Method	<p>A user defined code (03/IM) that provides information on how the customer would like to be invoiced. Examples: e-mail, fax, EDI, parcel post, and so on.</p>
Send Invoice to	<p>A code that identifies the address where accounts receivable invoices are sent. Examples:</p> <p>C – Customer</p> <p>P – Parent</p> <p>1 – 1st Address Number</p> <p>2 – 2nd Address Number</p> <p>3 – 3rd Address Number</p> <p>4 – 4th Address Number</p> <p>5 – 5th Address Number</p> <p>6 – 6th Address Number (Factor/Special Payee)</p>
Send Stmt To	<p>A code that indicates the address to which A/R statements, payment reminders, and delinquency mailers are sent. Examples:</p> <p>C – Customer</p> <p>P – Parent</p> <p>1 – 1st Address Number</p> <p>2 – 2nd Address Number</p> <p>3 – 3rd Address Number</p> <p>4 – 4th Address Number</p> <p>5 – 5th Address Number</p> <p>6 – 6th Address Number (Special Factor/Payee)</p>

## 33.4 Defining Default Address Types (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose Customer Revisions

From Customer Revisions (G4221), choose Customer Billing Instructions

You can simplify the process of entering more than one address for a sales order by defining default address information. You can define which of the following address types the system uses as the default for a customer:

- Sold To address only (Billing Address Type B)
- Ship To address only (Billing Address Type S)
- Sold To and Ship To address (Billing Address Type X)

You can also define a related address in the customer billing instructions. This is the same as the related address you entered in the address book.

### To define default address types

On Customer Billing Instructions

**Figure 33–4 Customer Billing Instruction screen**

1. Complete the following fields:
  - Billing Address Type
  - Related - Address Number
2. Use the Add action and press Enter.

Field	Explanation
Related - Address No	Use this field to relate a ship-to address to a sold-to address or vice versa. For example, if you enter only a ship-to address in sales order entry, it uses this field to determine which address number to select from the list of related address numbers which is then defaulted to the order's blank Sold To field.

Field	Explanation
Billing Address Type	<p>Code that tells the system to use this address as a Sold To address, a Ship To address, or both. Valid codes are:</p> <p>X – Indicates a bill to and a ship to address</p> <p>S – Indicates a ship to address only</p> <p>B – Indicates a bill to address only</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>When you enter an order for a Ship To customer, the Related Sold To customer defaults into the Sold To field of the sales order entry screen. If you enter the Sold To address, the related Ship To address will default.</p>



---

## Set Up Invoice Cycles

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 34.1, "Setting Up Invoice Cycles \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 34.2, "Setting Up Invoice Cycle Calculation Rules \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 34.3, "Creating Invoice Cycle Preferences \(ECS\)."](#)

### 34.1 Setting Up Invoice Cycles (ECS)

You set up invoice cycles to control how the Cycle Billing program calculates scheduled invoice dates. When you set up invoice cycles, you apply different cycle calculation rules and schedules to different customer and item combinations. For example, one customer might prefer an invoice at the end of the month for all shipments made during that month, and another customer might want a weekly invoice for specific items.

You set up an invoice cycle calculation rule to define the type of calculation that the system uses to compute an invoice date. After you set up invoice cycles, you can assign them to customer and item combinations with the Invoice Cycle preference. You can later revise scheduled invoice dates, if necessary.

#### 34.1.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
AAIs for invoice cycles	<p>You must set up the following AAIs when processing invoice cycle information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ 4221 - deferred COGS</li><li>■ 4231 - deferred revenue</li><li>■ 4232 - unbilled accounts receivable</li></ul> <p>See <a href="#">Section 43.1, "Setting Up Automatic Accounting Instructions (ECS)."</a></p>
User defined codes for invoice cycles	<p>You must set up the following code tables for use with invoice cycle processing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Invoice cycle - 40/CY</li><li>■ Day of week - 42/DW</li><li>■ Based on date name - 42/DN</li><li>■ Calculation rule - 42/CR (hard-coded)</li></ul> <p>See <i>Work with User Defined Codes</i> in the <i>JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide</i>.</p>

## 34.2 Setting Up Invoice Cycle Calculation Rules (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule

You set up an invoice cycle calculation rule to define the type of calculation that the system uses to compute an invoice date. For example, you can set up daily, bi-weekly, or based-on-date invoicing. You can then enter test dates to review the calculated invoice dates and ensure that you have set up the calculation correctly.

If the calculation rules are bi-weekly, semi-monthly, or at the end of each month, you must also set up scheduled invoice date ranges.

The following invoice cycle calculation rules are hard-coded and require specific settings:

Type	Requirements
Daily invoicing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Based On Date Name and Day of Week must be blank</li> <li>Days to Increment is optional</li> </ul>
Weekly invoicing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires Based On Date Name and Day of Week</li> <li>Days to Increment is optional</li> </ul>
Bi-weekly invoicing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires Based On Date Name</li> <li>Day of Week must be blank</li> <li>Days to Increment is optional</li> </ul>
Semi-monthly invoicing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires Based On Date Name</li> <li>Day of Week must be blank</li> <li>Days of Increment is optional</li> </ul>
End-of-month invoicing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires Based On Date Name</li> <li>Day of Week must be blank</li> <li>Days to Increment is optional</li> </ul>
Based-on-date invoicing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires Based On Date Name</li> <li>Day of Week must be blank</li> <li>Days to Increment is optional</li> </ul>

### 34.2.1 Example: Scheduled Invoice Date Calculation

This example illustrates how the Cycle Billing program calculates the scheduled invoice date and how the calculation affects the generation of invoices. The following values are entered for the invoice cycle calculation rule:

- Based On Date is Order/Transaction Date (9/27/98)
- Days to Increment is 0
- Calculation Rule is End of Month
- Scheduled Invoice Date Ranges are:
  - Start Dates = 9/1/98 and 10/1/98
  - End Dates = 9/30/98 and 10/31/98



- Invoice Dates = 9/30/98 and 10/31/98

If the delivery confirmation occurs on 9/29/98, the following events occur:

Date	Action
On 9/29/98	The Cycle Billing program processes the order line and calculates the scheduled invoice date to be 9/30/98. Because the scheduled invoice date is greater than the system date (9/29/98), the Cycle Billing program creates deferred journal entries.
On 9/30/98	Because the scheduled invoice date is less than or equal to the system date, the Periodic Invoice program generates the invoice and the Update Customer Sales program reverses the deferred entries and completes the required G/L entries.

### To set up invoice cycle calculation rules

On Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule

**Figure 34–1 Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule screen**

1. Complete one or more of the following fields:
  - Invoice Cycle
  - Calculation Rule
  - Number of Days Increment
  - Based on Date Name
2. Complete the following field if you are setting up a calculation rule for a weekly invoice schedule:
  - Day of Week

3. If you enter a bi-weekly, semi-monthly, or end-of-month invoice cycle, access Scheduled Invoice Dates.

**Figure 34–2 Scheduled Invoice Dates screen**

4. On Scheduled Invoice Dates, complete the following fields:
  - Start Date
  - Ending Date
  - Invoice Date
5. Return to the Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule form.
6. Complete the following field:
  - Test Dates
7. Choose the option to calculate the test scheduled invoice date.

Field	Explanation
Invoice Cycle	A code that defines the method of invoicing used by the Cycle Billing program. For example, the invoice cycle could be daily, weekly, monthly, and so on. This is a user defined code field.
Calculation Rule	A code that defines the type of calculation the system uses to compute the Scheduled Invoice Date. This is a user defined code field.
Number of Days Increment	The number of days the system adds to the Based On Date. For example, you might enter several days to allow for time between the order date and the delivery date. The system adds the number in this field to the Based On Date when the Cycle Billing program calculates the Scheduled Invoice Date.

Field	Explanation
Based On Date Name	The name of the specific date field from either the sales order header or sales order detail that will be used to calculate the Scheduled Invoice Date. For example, if your customer requires invoices at a specific date after delivery, then you would select the Actual Delivery Date. This is a user defined code field.
Day of Week	A one digit code that is used to represent the day of the week. This field must be left blank unless you invoice your customer on the same day each week. That is, this field is only filled in for the Weekly Invoicing Calculation Rule. This is a user defined code field.
Date - Effective	The date that a transaction, text message, contract, obligation, or preference becomes effective.
Date - Expired	The date that a transaction, text message, agreement, obligation, or preference has expired or been completed.
Date - Invoice	The date the invoice was printed. The system updates this date when you run the invoice print program in the Sales Order Processing System.
Date - Invoice Cycle Test 1	A date the system uses to test the invoice cycle calculation during setup.

## 34.3 Creating Invoice Cycle Preferences (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 27

From ECS Sales Order Advanced and Technical Ops (G491031), choose **Preference Profiles**

You use the Invoice Cycle preference to define a specific invoice cycle for a customer and item combination. The Cycle Billing program works in conjunction with the Invoice Cycle preference and the invoice cycle calculation rule to calculate scheduled invoice dates for a customer and item combination.

### See Also:

- [Section 30.1, "Understanding Preferences \(ECS\)"](#) and [Section 31.1, "Setting Up Preferences \(ECS\)."](#)

### To create Invoice Cycle preferences

On Preference Profiles

1. Access the Preference Inquiry for the Invoice Cycle preference.

**Figure 34–3 Invoice Cycle screen**

Oracle JD Edwards World - Invoice Cycle (40200)

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
Preference Revisions  
Clear Screen

Customer Number  
OR Customer Group

Item Number  
OR Item Group

Effective From  
Effective Thru

Seq	Branch/Plant	Inv	Descrip
1			

Opt: 1=Revisions 2=Menu F24=More Keys

- On the Invoice Cycle preference inquiry form, access the Preference Profile Revisions form.

**Figure 34–4 Invoice Cycle (Profile Revisions) screen**

Oracle JD Edwards World - Invoice Cycle (40300)

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
More Details  
Redisplay Previously C  
Create/View Preference  
Invoice Cycle Calc Rule  
Clear Screen

Action Code

Customer Number  
OR Customer Group

Item Number  
OR Item Group

Effective From  
Effective Thru

Sequence Number

Preference Information

Branch/Plant  
Invoice Cycle

F9=Previous F14=Menu F24=More Keys

- On the Invoice Cycle Preference Profile Revisions form, complete one or more of the following fields to define customer and item combinations:
  - Customer Number
  - Customer Group
  - Item Number

- Item Group
4. Complete the following fields to define specific preference information:
- Effective From
  - Effective Thru
  - Quantity From
  - Quantity Thru
  - Sequence Number
  - Branch/Plant
  - Invoice Cycle

Field	Explanation
Quantity From	<p>The quantity at which a preference or price adjustment becomes valid.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you do not enter a quantity, the system uses 0.</p> <p>Use the Enable Effective Quantity (Y/N) field on Preference Master to activate or deactivate the display of this field.</p>
Quantity Thru	<p>The quantity at which a preference becomes invalid.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you do not enter a quantity, the system enters a number defined during system setup.</p> <p>Use the Enable Effective Quantity (Y/N) field on Preference Master to activate or deactivate the display of this field.</p> <p>You must also enter the unit of measure for the quantity in the unmarked field next to Quantity Thru. If the preference is in effect for all quantities, leave the Quantity From and Thru fields blank. The system supplies the default minimum and maximum quantities. You must enter a valid unit of measure for the quantities.</p>
Sequence Number	<p>A sequence or sort number that the system uses to process records in a user defined order.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Use this field when you have multiple preferences for the same customer/item combination, effective period, and quantity range. The sequence determines the order that the system searches for preference records with otherwise identical fields. The system searches records in ascending numerical order, that is, from lowest to highest.</p>
Invoice Cycle	<p>A code that defines the method of invoicing used by the Cycle Billing program. For example, the invoice cycle could be daily, weekly, monthly, and so on. This is a user defined code field.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>For Invoice Cycle Preference:</p> <p>The system uses the value you enter in this field to load the Sales Order Detail Tag table (F49211).</p> <p>Do not use the Invoice Cycle preference if you want an invoice to accompany the delivery documents for a sales order.</p>

### 34.3.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Document sets	<p>When you set up the Invoice Cycle preference, verify that it does not conflict with the document set you assign to the customer and item combination in the Document Set (ECS) preference.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 30.3.4, "Understanding the Document Set (ECS) Preference."</a></p>
Primary invoice	<p>You must ensure that the document set printed before and during the load confirm process does not include a primary invoice. If it includes a primary invoice, the system will not apply the Invoice Cycle preference.</p>

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 35.1, "Objectives,"](#)
- [Section 35.2, "About System Setup \(ECS\)."](#)

## **35.1 Objectives**

- To understand how to set up the features and functions that allow you to process sales order information

## **35.2 About System Setup (ECS)**

Before you use the ECS Sales Order Management system, you need to define certain information that the system will use during processing. You use this information to customize the system for your business needs. For example, you might set up default customer information to simplify the order entry process and avoid repetition.

System setup includes the following tasks:

- Define related addresses
- Set up customer billing instructions
- Set up constants
- Set up order line types
- Set up order activity rules
- Set up order templates
- Set up order hold information
- Set up commission information
- Set up branch sales markups
- Set up workday calendar
- Set up freight information
- Set up automatic accounting instructions
- Define flexible account numbers

The following describes the information that you must set up for this system.

Information	Description
Related addresses	You must specify the address to which you send the invoice and shipment. These two addresses can be different. You can also designate related addresses or a parent address for a customer. For example, you might send all invoices to a parent address and send all shipments to subsidiary addresses.
Customer billing instructions	You can set up customer information that the system uses as default order, shipping, billing, and freight information. The system retrieves this information every time you enter an order for a customer.
Constants	<p>Constants provide the system with the following types of default information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ System constants determine which functions to perform</li> <li>■ Batch control constants determine whether an application requires management approval and batch control</li> <li>■ Branch/plant constants control day-to-day transactions within a branch/plant</li> <li>■ Location format determines how you identify item storage locations in a branch/plant</li> <li>■ Item availability defines how the system calculates the number of items that each branch/plant contains</li> <li>■ Pricing Information Defaults for Units of Measure and Dates</li> </ul> <p>Ship Ascending Date Rule Information which indicates whether the system applies the ship ascending date rule by customer and by item. When chosen, the system applies the ship ascending date rule during the sales order entry, pick slip/commitment processing, and ship confirmation processes. When it applies the rule, the system sorts shipping customers lots in ascending order by expiration date, sell by date, or best before date.</p>
Order line types	You can define codes that determine how the system processes a detail line in an order.
Order activity rules	You can establish the sequence of steps to process an order.
Order templates	You create and assign order templates to speed up the order entry process. A template contains information about frequently ordered items.
Order hold information	You can set up the information that the system uses to place sales orders on hold.
Commission information	You can set up commission information for a specific salesperson or a group of salespeople.
Branch sales markups	You can define the additional costs that are associated with interbranch sales orders.
Work Day calendars	You can set up a calendar for a depot in which you record the days that the depot is closed, such as weekends, holidays, or planned shutdowns.
Freight information	You can establish standard freight rates by associating each rate with a zone, commodity class, rate code, and carrier.
Automatic accounting instructions (AAIs)	AAIs provide the Sales Order Management system with accounting information and general ledger relationships that are needed to interact with the General Accounting system.



Information	Description
Flexible account numbers	You use flexible sales accounting for account numbers that use the standard JD Edwards World format, which is business.unit.subsidiary. The flexible format lets you customize each segment of the account number.

The following describes the information that you must set up in other systems, including the Inventory Management system, the Technical Foundation system, and the General Accounting system:

Information	Description
Warehouse locations	Warehouse locations group items in branch/plants.
Messages	Messages display depending on which programs you specify and which messages you determine to print.
Default location and printers	Default location and printer settings provide the system with branch/plant, printer output queue, and approval route code information to use as default settings.
Next numbers	Next numbers allows the system to automatically assign the next available number for document types and address book numbers when applicable.
Standard Units of Measure	The system applies the standard units of measure to all items across all branch/plants.
User Defined Codes	You can set up user defined codes to customize each system in your environment.
Item cross-references	Item cross-reference numbers allow the system to connect internal and external items.

**See Also:**

- Setting Up Warehouse Locations in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*,
- Defining a Message in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*,
- Setting Up the Work Day Calendar in the *JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide*,
- Assigning Default Print Queues in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*,
- Set Up Next Numbers in the *JD Edwards World General Accounting I Guide*,
- Setting Up Standard Units of Measure in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*,
- Work with User Defined Codes in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*,
- Setting Up Item Cross-References in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*,
- Setting Language-Specific Screens or Reports in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.



---

## Set Up Constants

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 36.1, "Setting Up Constants \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 36.2, "Defining Branch/Plant Constants \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 36.3, "Defining Item Availability \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 36.4, "Defining System Constants \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 36.5, "Defining Batch Control Constants \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 36.6, "Defining Locations \(ECS\)."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose **Branch/Plant Constants**

## 36.1 Setting Up Constants (ECS)

A constant is a piece of information that you associate with a branch/plant. The system uses constants as default information in many JD Edwards World systems.

After you determine the information that you want to use throughout your system, you can enter the appropriate values or change any predefined values.

This section contains the following:

- Defining Branch/Plant Constants (ECS)
- Defining Item Availability (ECS)
- Defining System Constants (ECS)
- Defining Batch Control Constants (ECS)
- Defining Locations (ECS)

### 36.1.1 Before You Begin

- Create an address book record for the branch/plant - use option 3 on menu G01
- Set up a branch/plant named ALL - use option 5 on menu G4241
- Set up the branch/plant as a business unit and associate the A/P to a company - use option 4 on menu G09411

- If applicable associate your Business Unit to specific accounts - use option 14 on menu G09411

**See Also:**

- Setting Up System Constants in the *JD Edwards World Advanced Pricing Guide* for more information on additional system constants that you can define.

## 36.2 Defining Branch/Plant Constants (ECS)

Branch/plant constants allow you to customize the processing of daily transactions for each branch/plant in your distribution and manufacturing systems.

### To define branch/plant constants

On Branch/Plant Constants

**Figure 36–1 Branch/Plant Constants screen**

41204 Branch/Plant Constants

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

41204 Branch/Plant Constants

Skip to Branch/Plant

Branch/Plant	Description	Back	Loc	Ware	G/L	Period	Inv.	Approval Route Code
DC	Distribution Center	Y	Y	Y	Y	07		
10	Modesto Distribution Cent	Y	Y	N	Y	06		
19	Phoenix Branch	Y	N	N	Y	06		
20	Valley Forge Distribution	Y	Y	N	Y	06		
27	Eastern Area Distribution	Y	Y	Y	Y	06		
30	Memphis Distribution Cent	Y	N	N	Y	06		
40	Ft. Worth Distribution Ct	Y	Y	Y	Y	06		
55	Portland Branch	Y	N	N	Y	06		
56	Cheyenne Branch	Y	N	N	Y	06		
80	Boston Branch	Y	N	N	Y	06		
95	Miami Branch	Y	N	N	Y	06		
M10	Modesto Distribution Ctr	Y	N	N	Y	06		
M19	Phoenix Branch	Y	N	N	Y	07		
M20	Valley Forge Mfg/Dist. Ct	Y	N	N	Y	07		
M21	Subcontract Material Loca	Y	N	N	Y	07		

Opt: 1=Constants 2=Page 2 3=Availability 4=Locations F8=Batch F24=More

1. Access Branch/Plant Constants - Pg 1 for a specific branch/plant.

**Figure 36–2 Branch/Plant Constants - Pg 1 screen**

2. On Branch/Plant Constants - Pg 1, complete the following fields:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Branch/Plant Address Number (Branch/Plant Address Number)
  - Current Inventory Period. This field affects the processing option set up behind the Buyer's Guide (P4115) and must be updated to keep current
  - Interface G/L (Y/N) (Interface General Ledger (Y/N))
  - Number of Days in Year
3. To enter commitment information, complete the following fields:
  - Commitment Method
  - Specific Commitment
  - Number of Days in Year
  - Approval Route Code
  - ABC Codes
  - Backorders Allowed
4. To enter cost information, complete the following fields:
  - Purchase Order Issue Cost
  - Inventory Carrying Cost
  - Sales/Inventory Cost Method - this field defaults into the Cost Revisions program (P4105)
  - Purchasing Costing Method - this field defaults into the Cost Revisions program (P4105)
5. To enter location information, complete the following fields:
  - Location Control

- Warehouse Control
- Foreign Depot
- Quality Management
- Branch/Plant Type
- Item Branch Creation
- Location Lot Creation

Field	Explanation
Symbol to Identify Short No	<p>A blank here indicates that the 8-character item number is used most often during entry and inquiry. Otherwise a special symbol needs to be entered to indicate that this number is not primary; this symbol must then be the first character entered if inquiry or entry using this number is desired.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Only one symbol may be left blank. The other two must have a symbol, so that all three item numbers are unique. Be sure that this symbol is not significant for any other purposes of entry (such as a period or a comma). Suggested symbols would be /, *, &amp;, and so forth.</p>
Symbol to Identify 2nd No	<p>A blank here indicates that the 25-character second item number is used most often during entry and inquiry. Otherwise a special symbol needs to be entered to indicate that this number is not primary; this symbol must then be the first character entered if inquiry or entry using this number is desired.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Only one symbol may be left blank. The other two must have a symbol, so that all three item numbers are unique. Be sure that this symbol is not significant for any other purposes of entry (such as a period or a comma). Suggested symbols would be /, *, &amp;, and so forth.</p>
Symbol to Identify 3rd No	<p>A blank here indicates that the 25-character third item number is used most often during entry and inquiry. Otherwise a special symbol needs to be entered to indicate that this number is not primary; this symbol must then be the first character entered if inquiry or entry using this number is desired.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Only one symbol may be left blank. The other two must have a symbol, so that all three item numbers are unique. Be sure that this symbol is not significant for any other purposes of entry (such as a period or a comma). Suggested symbols would be /, *, &amp;, and so forth.</p>
Symbol for Customer/Supplier	<p>A character that you use to identify the customer's or supplier's number in your system. When you enter a number preceded by this character, the system recognizes the number as the customer's or supplier's number. The system then goes to the cross-reference table to match the number to your item number. You cannot leave this field blank if you want the system to perform cross-referencing.</p>
Interface G/L (Y/N)	<p>A code that indicates whether inventory transactions that are processed through this branch/plant create general ledger entries. Valid codes are:</p> <p>Y – Yes</p> <p>N – No</p>

Field	Explanation
Update Units to G/L	<p>A code that indicates whether the system should move units to the general ledger after the system records a journal entry for the following programs:</p> <p>P4114 (Inventory Adjustments)</p> <p>P41413 (Cycle Count Update)</p> <p>P4113 (Inventory Transfers)</p> <p>P41610 (Tag Update)</p> <p>P4112 (Inventory Issues)</p> <p>P4116 (Item Re-Classification)</p> <p>P4312 (Receipts)</p> <p>P42800 (Sales Update)</p> <p>P4314 (Voucher Match)</p> <p>P31111 (Work Order Inventory Issues)</p> <p>P31112 (Work Order Completions)</p> <p>P31802 (Work Order Journal Entries)</p> <p>P31842 (Rate Base Journal Entries)</p>
Commitment Method	<p>A code that indicates the method that the system uses to commit lot items from inventory. Valid codes are:</p> <p>1 – The normal commitment method for inventory (default). The system commits inventory from the primary location and then from secondary locations. The system commits inventory from the locations with the most inventory before committing inventory from locations with the least. The system commits backorders to the primary location.</p> <p>2 – The inventory commitment method by lot number. The system commits inventory by lot number, starting with the lowest lot number and committing orders to available lots.</p> <p>3 – The inventory commitment method by lot expiration date. The system commits inventory from the locations with the earliest expiration date first. The system considers only locations with expiration dates greater than or equal to the sales order or parts list requested date.</p> <p>This field is no longer controlled in the constants but at the Item master and Item Branch/Plant level in the Distribution system.</p>
Specific Commitment (Days)	<p>Number used to determine when to commit inventory to an order in sales order processing. This value in days is added to today's date and compared with the Promised Ship Date for the order line. If the Promised Date is greater than the calculated date, then the order line is future committed in the Item Location record (F41021). Entering '999' eliminates future commits.</p>
Number of Days in Year	<p>The number of days that you are open for business in a year. This number must be between 252 and 365. The Purchase Management system uses this number to calculate economic order quantity (EOQ). This is a required field.</p>
Approval Route Code	<p>A code that determines to whom an order is routed for approval.</p>

Field	Explanation
ABC Codes Sales %	<p>Percentage that tells the system how to define the A group during ABC analysis. This number is the total of the A percentage added to the percentage you want the system to use when it assigns items to the B group. For example, you want items that make up the top 75% of your selling items in the A group and items that make up the next 20% in the B group. You would enter 95% in this field, which is the total of 75% and 20%. You enter each percentage as a decimal amount. For example, enter 75% as .75.</p> <p>During ABC analysis, the system compares the total sales of a single item to the total sales of all items to calculate the "value" of each item. An item's value is its percentage of the total sales. The system then arranges the values of all items from those of highest value to those of lowest value and adds the values together beginning with the highest. After it reaches the limit for A items, it continues to add values until it reaches the limit for B items. All items whose value is included in the total between the A limit and the B limit are B items. If an item's value causes the total to go over the B limit, the system assigns that item to the C group.</p>
Backorders Allowed (Y/N)	<p>A code that indicates whether you allow backorders for an item. You can allow backorders by item (through Item Master or Item Branch/Plant), or by customer (through Billing Instructions).</p> <p>Y – Yes, allow backorders for an item.</p> <p>N – No, do not allow backorders for an item, regardless of the backorders code assigned to the customer.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The system does not use this information if you have set the option on Branch/Plant Constants to indicate that you do not allow backorders in your operating environment.</p>
Customer Cross Ref. Code	<p>A code (UDC table 41\DT) that identifies the type of cross-reference you have set up for this customer. The system contains examples for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Substitutes</li> <li>■ Replacements</li> <li>■ Bar Codes</li> <li>■ Customer Numbers</li> <li>■ Supplier Numbers</li> </ul>
Supplier Cross Ref. Code	<p>User defined code (system 41, type DT) identifying the type of cross-reference you have set up for this supplier. Example cross-references have been set up for:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Substitutes</li> <li>2. Replacements</li> <li>3. Bar Codes</li> <li>4. Customer Numbers</li> <li>5. Supplier Numbers</li> </ol>



Field	Explanation
Purchase Order Issue Cost	<p>The amount that the Purchase Management system uses to calculate the Economic Order Quantity (EOQ). This cost should be the estimate of the cost of materials, labor, and overhead that you incur when you issue a single purchase order. The default value is .00. For example:</p> <p>S – Purchase Order Issue Cost = 15.0</p> <p>I – Inventory Carrying Cost = .09 (9%)</p> <p>Y – Annual Sales in Units = 3,000</p> <p>C – Unit cost of Item = 10.0</p> <p>Economic Order Quantity = Square root of <math>((2S/I) \times (Y/C))</math></p> <p>Square root of <math>[(2)(15) \text{ divided by } 0.09] \times 3,000 \text{ divided by } 10.0</math> = 316.23</p>
Inventory Carrying Cost (%)	<p>The percentage of inventory investment that the Purchase Management system uses to calculate Economic Order Quantity (EOQ). The default is .00. Enter a percentage as a decimal value.</p> <p>The following example shows how EOQ is determined using the Inventory Carrying Cost Percentage:</p> <p>S – Purchase Order Issue Cost = 15.0</p> <p>I – Inventory Carrying Cost = .09 (9%)</p> <p>Y – Annual Sales in Units = 3,000</p> <p>C – Unit Cost of Item = 10.0</p> <p>EOQ = Square root of <math>((2S/I) \times (Y/C))</math> = the square root of <math>(2(15) \text{ divided by } .09) \times (3000 \text{ divided by } 10) = 316.23</math></p> <p><b>Note:</b> Access field help for the Economic Order Quantity field for information on the EOQ formula.</p>
Sales/Inventory Cost Method	A code (table 40/CM) that indicates the cost method that the system uses to calculate the cost of goods sold for the item. Cost methods 01-08 are hard-coded. This field defaults into the Cost Revisions program (P4105).
Purchasing Costing Method	A code (table 40/CM) that indicates the cost method that the system uses to determine the cost of the item for purchase orders. Cost methods 01-08 are hard-coded. This field defaults into the Cost Revisions program (P4105).
Location Control (Y/N)	<p>A code that indicates what type of location control the system requires. Use location control if you want to use only locations that are in the Location Master table.</p> <p>Valid codes are:</p> <p>Y – Yes, use only locations in Location Master (F4100).</p> <p>N – No, do not restrict locations to those in Location Master. Use all locations, as long as they conform to the location format defined on Branch/Plant Constants - Page 2.</p> <p>If Warehouse Control is set to Yes, Location Control also must be set to Yes.</p>
Warehouse Control (Y/N)	A code that determines whether the system creates warehouse transactions for the branch/plant.

Field	Explanation
Foreign Depot	This flag indicates whether or not this branch/plant is owned by another company. This field is checked by the Bulk and Packed Load Confirmation programs to determine if the depot from which product is being loaded is a foreign depot. If it is a foreign depot, a valid borrow agreement is required to be entered during load confirmation.
Quality Management (Y/N)	This flag indicates whether to activate the Quality Management system (System 37) for your branch/plant.
Branch/Plant Type	Type of Branch/Plant: C – Consigned M – Manufacturing/Distribution V – VMI Facility
Item Branch Creation	A code that indicates whether the inventory and distribution programs can create new item branch (F4102) records. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If you leave this option at the default of 0, the system allows the inventory and distribution programs to create new item branch records</li> <li>■ If you change this option to 1, the system does not allow the inventory and distribution programs to create new item branch records</li> </ul>
Location Lot Creation	A code that indicates whether the Inventory and Distribution programs can create new item location (F41021) records. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If you leave this option at the default of 0 (or Y) the system allows the Inventory and Distribution programs to create new item location records</li> <li>■ If you change this option to 1(or N), the Inventory system transaction programs do not allow the creation of new item location records for new lot numbers. New item location records can be created for existing lots</li> <li>■ If you change this option to 2, the Inventory system transaction programs do not allow the creation of new item location records</li> <li>■ If you change this option to 3, the Inventory and Distribution programs do not allow the creation of new item location records</li> </ul>

### 36.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Defining warehouse control specifications	If you use the Advanced Warehouse Management system, you must define the warehouse information on Branch/Plant Constants - Pg 2.

## 36.3 Defining Item Availability (ECS)

You must define how you want the system to calculate item availability for each branch/plant. The way that you set up this calculation impacts how the system later calculates backorders, cancellations, and customer delivery time.

**To define item availability**  
On Branch/Plant Constants

1. Access Item Availability Definition for a branch/plant.

**Figure 36–3 Item Availability Definition screen**

2. On Item Availability, enter a minus (-) or plus (+) sign in fields with quantities that you want to subtract from or add to, respectively, the quantity on hand.

Notice that the sales commitment types of soft, hard, future and other quantity 1 and 2 display underneath the Subtract heading. The Quantity Hard Committed to WO relates to the Manufacturing system. The Soft Committed to SO & WO is updated by both the Sales and Manufacturing systems. Quantities that appear under the Add heading relate to the Purchasing system.

By specifying which sales commitment types are subtracted from an item's on-hand quantity you are defining the way availability is calculated. As in this example you would normally specify that soft and hard commitments decrease availability hence the subtraction sign, whereas you may not want future commitments and other quantities to affect availability hence no subtraction sign next to the fields.

You can also determine whether to include quantities on hold and safety stock in the on-hand quantity. Items can be put on hold in the Item Lot/Location Information program (P41024) and the safety stock quantity is defined in the Item Branch Quantities program (P41022). Both of these programs can be accessed from Item Branch/Plant Information (P41026) using a function key.

The other quantity 1 and other quantity 2 fields relate to the use of blanket and quote orders.

Once you have set up the item availability definition for each branch, the calculations apply to every item in the branch.

### 36.3.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Checking availability for configured items	<p>The Sales Order Management system does not support availability checking for configured items. To check availability during sales order entry, you must set the Check Availability field in Configurator Constants in the Configuration Management system. If the system finds the exact item and string match, a window displays all locations containing the specific configuration. However, no component availability checking is performed.</p> <p>See Checking Availability and Setting Up Constants in <i>JD Edwards World Configuration Management Guide</i>.</p>

**See Also:**

- Review Performance Information in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide* for information about quantities.

## 36.4 Defining System Constants (ECS)

Set up system constants to tell the system which functions to perform. For example, assume that you have several branch/plants and use different units of measure for the items in each branch/plant. You can set a system constant to automatically convert units of measure by branch.

System constants apply to all branch/plants. You cannot customize the settings for each branch/plant.

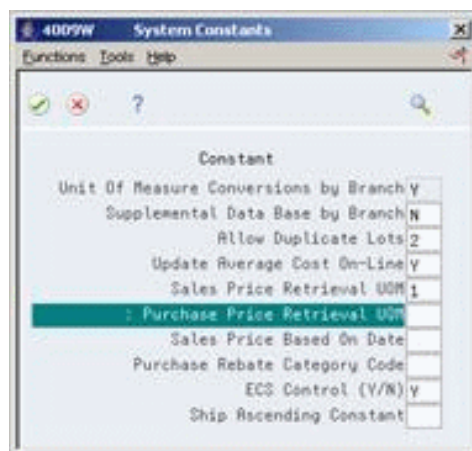
You must activate the ECS control for the system to process orders with advanced ECS functionality.

**To define system constants**

On Branch/Plant Constants

- Access System Constants (Function key F10).

**Figure 36–4 System Constants screen**



- On System Constants, complete the following fields:
  - Unit of Measure Conversions by Branch

- Supplemental Data Base by Branch
- Allow Duplicate Lots
- Update Average Cost On-Line
- Sales Price Retrieval Unit of Measure
- Purchase Price Retrieval Unit of Measure
- Sales Price Based On Date
- Purchase Rebate Category Code
- ECS Control (Y/N)
- Ship Ascending Constant

Field	Explanation
Unit Of Measure Conversions by Branch	<p>A code that indicates how the system uses the branch/plant within the Item Specific Unit of Measure Conversion tables. Valid values are:</p> <p>Y – The system displays the item specific conversion table when you add an item to a specific branch/plant.</p> <p>N – The system displays the item specific conversion table for all branch/plants from the Item Master table.</p>
Supplemental Data Base by Branch	<p>A code that indicates how the system uses the branch/plant within the Inventory Management Supplemental Database. Valid values are:</p> <p>Y – The supplemental data is unique by item and branch.</p> <p>N – The supplemental data is unique by item only.</p>
Allow Duplicate Lots	<p>A flag that determines whether the system can assign the same lot to multiple items. Valid values are:</p> <p>1 – Do not allow duplicate lots. The lot is restricted to one item and one branch/plant.</p> <p>2 – Allow duplicate lots. You can create a lot that contains multiple items and branch/plants.</p> <p>3 – Do not allow duplicate lots. The lot is restricted to one item, but can contain quantities in multiple branch/plants.</p>
Update Average Cost On-Line	<p>A code that indicates when the system calculates the new average cost for an item. Valid values are:</p> <p>Y – The system calculates a new average cost online immediately after any transaction that affects the average cost of an item.</p> <p>N – All processes that affect average cost create transactions to an Average Cost Work table (F41051). The system calculates a new average cost when you run the Average Cost Update program (P41811).</p>
Sales Price Retrieval UOM	<p>A value that specifies the unit of measure that the system uses for retrieving base prices and price adjustments during sales order processing. The system allows you to define your base prices in the Base Price table (F4106) and price adjustments in the Adjustment Detail table (F4072) in various unit of measures.</p> <p>If you specify the Transaction or Pricing UOM and the system does not find a record in that unit of measure, the system repeats the process using the primary UOM of the item.</p>

Field	Explanation
Purchase Price Retrieval UOM	<p>A value that represents the unit of measure that the system retrieves for the purchase base price (F41061) during purchase order processing.</p> <p>If you specify the Transaction or Purchasing UOM and the system does not find a record in that unit of measure, the system repeats the process using the primary UOM of the item.</p>
Sales Price Based On Date	A value that determines how the system updates the Price Effective Date in the Sales Order Header (F4201) and Detail (F4211) tables. In the Sales Order Management system, the system uses the Price Effective Date to retrieve the base price from F4106 and price adjustments from F4072.
Purchase Rebate Category Code	A number in the system constants that determines which category code the system uses in the criteria for inclusion comparison.
ECS Control (Y/N)	The Energy and Chemical System Control code that you use to indicate whether to use the ECS application.
Ship Ascending Constant	An option that indicates whether the system applies the ship ascending date rule by customer and by item. When you choose this option, the system applies the ship ascending date rule during the sales order entry, pick slip/ commitment processing, and ship confirmation processes. When the system applies the Ship Ascending Date rule, the system sorts shipping customers' lots in ascending order by expiration date, sell by date, or best before date.

## 36.5 Defining Batch Control Constants (ECS)

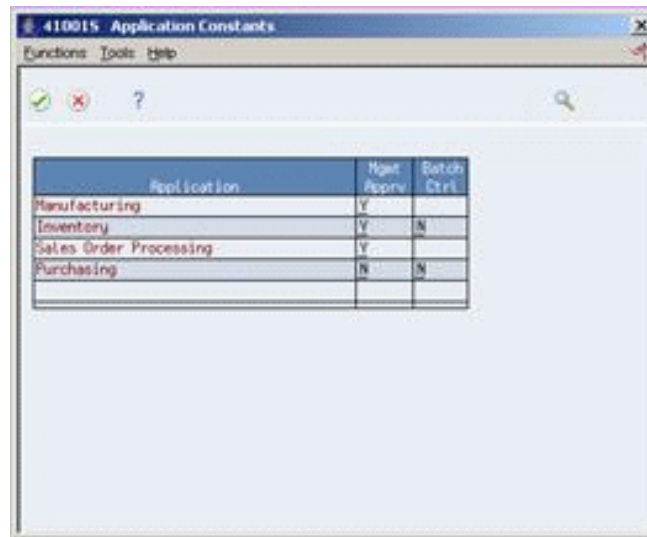
Defining batch control constants prevents the system from applying changes that personnel make in each system, such as the ECS Sales Order Management system, to the general ledger. Also, you can define a constant that requires you to enter batch control information before the system runs a batch processing job. You might want to enter batch control information for comparing the anticipated size of the job to the end result.

You must define management approval and batch control separately for each distribution and manufacturing system that you use.

### To define batch control constants

On Branch/Plant Constants

1. Access Application Constants (Function key F8).

**Figure 36–5 Application Constants screen**

2. On Application Constants, complete the following fields:

- Management Approval
- Batch Control

Field	Explanation
Batch Management Approval Required - Inv	<p>A code that indicates whether you want to require approval of batches before they can be posted to the general ledger. Valid values are:</p> <p>Y – Y (yes) instructs the system to assign a status of Pending to each batch that you create within the listed systems.</p> <p>N – N (no) instructs the system to assign a status of Approved to each batch.</p>
Batch Control Required (Y/N) - Inv	<p>A code that indicates whether you want to require entry of batch control information. For each batch, the system displays a batch control screen where you must enter information about the number of documents and the total amount of the transactions you expect in the batch. The system uses these totals to edit and display differences from the actual transactions you entered. This field applies only to the Inventory Management and the Purchase Order Management systems. Valid values are:</p> <p>Y – In Inventory Management, Y (yes) instructs the system to display a batch control screen before you issue, adjust, or transfer inventory. In Purchase Order Management, Y instructs the system to display a batch control screen before you enter receipts.</p> <p>N – N (no) indicates that you do not require entry of batch control information.</p>

## 36.6 Defining Locations (ECS)

Defining the location format allows you to specify how each of your item locations is set up. For example, assume that you store pencils in branch/plant "A." To be more specific about where the pencils are located in the warehouse, you can define a series of elements that comprise the actual location. An element is an alphanumeric entry

that represents a more specific location than just the branch/plant. For example, an element can represent an aisle, bin, shelf, or any other location you use in a branch/plant.

You can define a location's format using up to 10 different elements, such as aisle, shelf, and bin. For each element, define the following:

- Length
- Justification
- Separator character

If you are using the Advanced Warehouse Management system, you must define not only warehouse location information, but also default units of measure for volumes, dimensions, and weights.

### To define location the location format

On Branch/Plant Constants

1. Access Branch/Plant Constants - Pg 2 for a specific branch/plant.

**Figure 36–6 Branch/Plant Constants - Pg 2 screen**

The screenshot shows the 'Branch/Plant Constants - Pg 2' screen in Oracle JD Edwards World. The title bar indicates '410012: Branch/Plant Constants - P'. The main window has a menu bar with 'Tools' and 'Help'. Below the menu bar, there's a toolbar with various icons. The screen is divided into several sections:

- Action Code:** C
- Branch/Plant:** 30 Memphis Distribution Center
- Location Format Specifications:**
  - Separator Character: [ ]
  - Length of Aisle: [ ] L/R: [ ]
  - Length of Code 6: [ ] L/R: [ ]
  - Length of Code 7: [ ] L/R: [ ]
  - Length of Code 8: [ ] L/R: [ ]
  - Length of Code 9: [ ] L/R: [ ]
  - Length of Code 10: [ ] L/R: [ ]
- Warehouse Control Specifications:**
  - Request Inclusion Vers: [ ] Warehouse Management
  - Dimen. Display U/R: [ ] Inches
  - Volume Display U/R: [ ] Cubic Feet
  - Weight Display U/R: [ ] Pounds
  - Default Receiving Loon: [ ]
  - Default Shipping Loon: [ ]

At the bottom right, there's a status bar with 'F24=More'.

2. On Branch/Plant Constants - Pg 2, decide which elements to use for the location format and complete the following fields for each element:
  - Length (of Aisle, of Bin, of Code 3 - 10)
  - L/R (Left/Right)
  - Separator Character

Field	Explanation
Length of Aisle	Identifies the number of characters to represent the tank (or aisle for packaged stock). Valid values are numbers 1 through 8.



Field	Explanation
Justify - Aisle	A character (L or R) that specifies left or right justification for Aisle in the location format.
Separator Character	<p>A character that divides the elements of the location when you display them on forms or reports.</p> <p>Separators are not stored in the tables, but are used to edit a location on a form or report. If you do not want to use separators, leave this field blank. The system displays the location as one string of characters.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The system uses the character you enter in this field to separate the combination of tank/owner and aisle/bin when displayed on forms or reports. Companies commonly use a period (.) as the separator character.</p>

### 36.6.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Location length	The total length of all elements, including separators, cannot exceed 20 characters. The system does not store separators in the tables, but uses separators to edit a location on a form or report. If you do not want to use separators, leave the separator field blank. The system displays the location as one string of characters.

**See Also:**

- Setting Up Locations in the *JD Edwards World Advanced Warehouse Management Guide*.



---

## Set Up Customer Billing Instructions

This chapter contains the topic:

- [Section 37.1, "Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions \(ECS\)."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose Customer Billing Instructions

## 37.1 Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions (ECS)

Before you process sales orders, you must set up default customer information in the customer billing instructions.

This section includes instructions for the following:

- To enter order processing information
- To enter shipping information
- To enter freight information
- To enter commission information
- To enter billing information

For example, if a customer wants you to bill the parent company for items that are shipped to several branch offices, you can specify this information in the customer billing instructions. The system retrieves this default information every time you enter an order for this customer.

### 37.1.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that an address book record exists for your customers

### 37.1.2 Entering Order Processing Information

#### To enter order processing information

On Customer Billing Instructions.

1. Complete the following fields:
  - Address Number
  - Customer PO Required

- Credit Check Level
- Exempt from Credit Hold
- Customer Price Group
- Item Restrictions
- Trade Discount
- Minimum Order Value
- Maximum Order Value
- Allow Backorders
- Allowed Substitutes
- Print Message
- Order Template

2. Use the Add action and press Enter.

**Figure 37-1 Customer Billing Instructions**

Field	Explanation
Exempt from Credit Hold	Code indicating if the customer is exempt from credit checking in the Sales Order Processing cycle. Valid codes are:  Y – Sales order entry should not check the customer's credit.  N – This customer is not exempt from credit checking. If credit checking is activated through the Sales Order Entry processing options and the customer goes over the limit, the order is put on hold. (You set up a credit limit for the customer in the address book).

Field	Explanation
Credit Check Level	<p>A code that controls the way the system conducts credit checking.</p> <p>Codes are:</p> <p>P – Credit check based on the customer's parent number (P for Parent).</p> <p>C – Credit check against the customer number only.</p> <p>S – Credit check against the customer number only.</p> <p>If you use method P, the system compares the open accounts receivable and open sales orders for the sum of the children and the parent against the credit limit for the parent number. Use this, for example, when a customer with multiple offices or branches, each of which order from you, asks that all credit checking be reflected in a single account.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Even though credit checking can be conducted at the parent or customer number level, all accounts receivable are posted to the customer number (SDAN8) during Sales Update (P42800).</p>
Customer PO Required	This field is used to indicate if the Customer Purchase Order Number field is required to be entered for the customer. This field is edited during Sales Order Entry.
Customer Price Group	A user defined code (system 40, type PC) that identifies a customer group. You can group customers with similar characteristics, such as comparable pricing.
Trade Discount	Percentage by which the system reduces the price of each item. This is the only discount that applies. You can override it if you enter a price. Enter the percentage as a whole number (that is, 5 for 5%).
Minimum Order Value	<p>Value below which an order is placed on hold. This process is activated by a processing option in Sales Order Entry. If you try to enter an order whose total is less than the minimum order value, the system displays an error message.</p> <p>This field is maintained as an integer without decimals.</p>
Maximum Order Value	<p>Value above which an order is placed on hold. This process is activated by a processing option in Sales Order Entry. If you try to enter an order whose total is more than the maximum order value, the system displays an error message.</p> <p>This field is maintained as an integer without decimals.</p>
Print Message	A user defined code (system 40/type PM) that represents a predefined message set up on Print Message Revisions. You can print the message on sales orders, purchase orders, and so forth.

### 37.1.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Restricting items from a sale	<p>If you specify items in customer billing instructions, you can list any items that are not to be shipped to a customer in Item Restrictions Revisions.</p> <p>If you specify items to include in Item Restrictions Revisions, you can limit your customer's orders to the items that are listed in Item Restrictions Revisions.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Item Restrictions that work in the sales programs include: Page Mode, Line Mode, Quotes, Direct Ship, Credit Orders, and Credit Orders from History</li><li>■ Item Restrictions does not work in the sales programs Transfer Orders and Recurring / Batch Order Entry</li><li>■ Item Restrictions was not intended for Non-stock. Only order line types with an Inventory Interface of Y or D work with Item Restrictions</li><li>■ Item Restrictions are not document specific</li><li>■ Item Restrictions can not use Classification Codes</li><li>■ Item Restrictions are listed in order of the short ID number</li><li>■ If the system errors on a restricted item at order entry, use option 8 to bypass writing a record to the Sales Order Detail file (F4211)</li><li>■ Item Restrictions can not be done by Lot number</li><li>■ Item Restrictions information is held in the Order Processing Cross Reference file (F4013)</li></ul>

### 37.1.3 Entering Shipping Information

#### To enter shipping information

On Customer Billing Instructions.

1. Complete the following fields:
  - Address Number
  - Delivery Note (Y/N)
  - Partial Line Shipment
  - Partial Order Shipments
  - Delivery Instructions
2. Access Billing Instructions - Page 2.

Figure 37-2 Billing Instructions - Pg 2 screen

3. On Billing Instructions - Page 2, complete the following fields:
- Held Orders Code
  - Priority Code
  - Display Weight UOM
  - Display Volume UOM

Field	Explanation
Delivery Note	<p>Code that indicates whether the system prints delivery notes for this customer.</p> <p>Valid codes are:</p> <p>Y – The customer's order can produce delivery notes.</p> <p>N – The system does not generate delivery notes for the customer.</p> <p>If you leave this field blank, the system uses N.</p>
Partial Line Shipments Allowed (Y/N)	<p>Code that indicates whether the customer requires the entire line be shipped at one time or whether the customer accepts multiple partial shipments instead. Valid codes are Y (yes), which is the default, and N (no).</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>This field is used in conjunction with the Allow Backorders field. Backorders must be allowed before the system makes partial shipments to a customer.</p>

Field	Explanation
Partial Order Shipments Allowed (Y/N)	<p>Code that indicates if the customer requires that the entire order be shipped at one time or if the customer accepts multiple partial shipments instead.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This feature is only activated when adding orders in Sales Order Entry with availability checking on since Sales Order Entry is the only time that all lines can be grouped together as an order. Availability checking performed at Pick Slips or Shipment Confirmation does not guarantee that all lines are together for the order.</p>
Delivery Instructions Line 1	<p>One of two fields that you use to enter delivery instructions.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The system copies this text to the Sales Order Header Information form.</p>
Hold Orders Code	User defined code (table 42/HC) that identifies why the order is on hold.
Priority Code - Processing	<p>A code that tells the system to handle this customer's orders on a priority basis. Use this value to set up print pick slips so you can choose to print them on a priority basis. This code is assigned from the Customer Billing Instructions.</p> <p>This field is informational only and can be used in DREAM Writer selection to expedite order lines.</p> <p>In addition, the backorder print report and automatic batch release program can be sequenced by this code to release those orders with the highest priority first.</p>
Display Weight UOM	A user defined code (system 00, type UM) that identifies which unit of measure the system should use to display the weight of individual order lines and the order as a whole for this customer when you use the order summary form.
Display Volume UOM	A user defined code (system 00/type UM) that identifies the unit of measure that the system uses to display volume for this branch/plant. The system inputs a value in this field from Branch/Plant Constants - Page 2 (P410012). You can override this default value.

### 37.1.4 Entering Freight Information

#### To enter freight information

On Customer Billing Instructions

- Complete the following field:
  - Address Number
- Access Billing Instructions - Page 2.
- On Billing Instructions - Page 2, complete the following fields:
  - Apply Freight (Y/N)
  - Freight Handling Code
  - Route Code
  - Stop Code
  - Zone Code
  - Preferred Carrier



Field	Explanation
Apply Freight (Y/N)	<p>A code indicating whether the system should perform freight calculations during processing. Valid codes are:</p> <p>Y – yes, perform calculations</p> <p>N – no, do not perform calculations</p> <p>If you leave this field blank, the system automatically enters Y.</p>
Freight Handling Code	<p>A user defined code (system 42/type FR) designating the method by which supplier shipments are delivered. For example, the supplier could deliver to your dock, or you could pick up the shipment at the supplier's dock.</p> <p>You can also use these codes to indicate who has responsibility for freight charges. For example, you can have a code indicating that the customer legally takes possession of goods as soon as they leave the supplier warehouse and is responsible for transportation charges to the destination.</p>
Route/Stop/Zone	<p>The route field is a user defined code (system 42, type RT) that represents the delivery route on which the customer resides. This field is one of several factors used by the freight summary facility to calculate potential freight charges for an order.</p> <p>For picking, use the route code with the stop and zone codes to group all of the items that are to be loaded onto a delivery vehicle for a specific route.</p> <p>You set up a default for each of these fields on the Customer Billing Instruction form.</p>
Preferred Carrier	<p>The address number for the preferred carrier of the item. The customer or your organization might prefer a certain carrier due to route or special handling requirements.</p>

### 37.1.5 Entering Commission Information

#### To enter commission information

On Customer Billing Instructions.

- Complete the following field:
  - Address Number
- Access Billing Instructions - Page 2.
- On Billing Instructions - Page 2, complete the following fields:
  - Commission Code 1
  - Commission Rate 1
  - Commission Code 2
  - Commission Rate 2

Field	Explanation
Commission Code/Rate 1	<p>The first of two eight-character codes used to designate the salespeople who should receive credit for a sale to the customer. This code is first created in either the Address Book or through the Related Salespersons program.</p>

Field	Explanation
Commission Code/Rate 2	The second of two eight-character codes used to designate the salespeople who should receive credit for a sale to the customer. This code is first created in either the Address Book or through the Related Salespersons program.

### 37.1.5.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Setting up standard freight rates	<p>You can define standard freight rates by associating a zone, a commodity class, a delivery zone, and a carrier with a charge amount.</p> <p>See Calculating Freight Charges in the <i>JD Edwards World Load and Delivery Management Guide</i>.</p>
Setting up commissions	<p>You can customize the default commission information for a salesperson or a sales group.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 41.1, "Setting Up Commission Information (ECS)."</a></p>

## 37.1.6 Entering Billing Information

### To enter billing information

On Customer Billing Instructions.

Complete the following fields:

- Address Number
  - Billing Address Type
  - Related - Address Number
  - Invoice Consolidation
1. Access Billing Instructions - Page 2.
  2. On Billing Instructions - Page 2, complete the following fields:
    - Invoice Copies
    - Price Pick List
    - Tax Service Date Selection

Field	Explanation
Billing Address Type	<p>Code that tells the system to use this address as a Sold To address, a Ship To address, or both. Valid codes are:</p> <p>X – Indicates a bill to and a ship to address</p> <p>S – Indicates a ship to address only</p> <p>B – Indicates a bill to address only</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>When you enter an order for a Ship To customer, the Related Sold To customer defaults into the Sold To field of the sales order entry screen. If you enter the Sold To address, the related Ship To address defaults.</p>

Field	Explanation
Invoice Consolidation	Code that tells the system whether a customer wants consolidated invoices. Valid codes are:  Y – Customer wants consolidation.  N – Customer does not want consolidation.  If you specify consolidation, the system generates a single invoice from multiple sales orders.
Price Pick List	Code that indicates whether price information appears on the customer's pick list, purchase order, or sales order. Valid codes are:  Y – Yes, which is the default  N – No
Tax Service Date Selection	Code which indicates the date used as the tax service date for orders entered through the sales order processing system. Values are:  1 – Order date is used as tax service date 2 – Invoice date is used as tax service date 3 – Ship date is used as tax service date Blank – Order date defaults as tax service date  Value can be specified at the ship to address number level or the header branch plant company level. If the ship to address number value is blank, the header branch plant company value is retrieved. If both values are blank, the order date defaults as the tax service date.

### 37.1.7 Sales Order Information from Customer Billing Instructions

JD Edwards World populates information on the Sales Order Entry screen (P4211) from the Customer Billing Instructions (F0301). Some of these fields come from the Sold To address book number, and some come from the Ship To address book number.

From	Field	From	Field
Sold To	Adjustment Schedule	Ship To	Delivery Notes
Sold To	Customer Pricing Rule	Ship To	Partial Line Shipment
Sold To	Trade Discount	Ship To	Partial Order Shipment
Sold To	Minimum and/or Maximum Order Value	Ship To	Delivery Instructions
Sold To	Print Message	Ship To	Apply Freight
Sold To	Credit Check Level	Ship To	Freight Handling
Sold To	Exempt from Credit Hold	Ship To	Route/Stop/Zone
Sold To	Invoice Consolidation	Ship To	Preferred Carrier
Sold To	Item Restrictions	Ship To	Display Weight UOM
Sold To	Allow Backorders	Ship To	Display Volume UOM

From	Field	From	Field
Sold To	Allow Substitutes	Ship To	Commission Code/Rate
Sold To	EDI-Batch Processing Mode		
Sold To	Price Pick List		
Sold To	Invoice Copies		
Sold To	Held Orders Code		
Sold To	Priority Code		

### 37.1.7.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Defining the default address type	<p>Complete the Billing Address Type field to define which of the following address types the system uses as the default for the customer:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Sold To</li><li>■ Ship To</li><li>■ Sold To and Ship To</li></ul> <p>See <a href="#">Section 33.4, "Defining Default Address Types (ECS)."</a></p>
Setting up commissions	<p>You can customize the default commission information for a salesperson or a sales group.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 41.1, "Setting Up Commission Information (ECS)."</a></p>

---

## Set Up Order Line Types

This chapter contains the topic:

- [Section 38.1, "Setting Up Order Line Types \(ECS\)."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose Order Line Types

### 38.1 Setting Up Order Line Types (ECS)

When you enter detail information for a sales or purchase order, you enter the quantity, price, and cost for each item or service. You can also enter a credit item, a non-stock item, and text information in the same sales or purchase order.

Each entry is a line. A line is the information for an item or service that you are ordering as it pertains to the order. A line type is a code that the system uses to process each line that you enter. For example, you can specify line type S for stock items. The system determines whether it should increase or decrease the quantity of the item in inventory. You can specify line type F for freight charges. The system determines from your definition of the line type that this item is not an inventory item.

You can specify how the system uses line types in the general ledger and with the Inventory Management system. For example, when you purchase or sell an inventory item, you might assign a line type for stock items. The system records the transaction according to the information that you specified for the line type. In this case, the system reflects the cost or price of the item in the general ledger. The transaction line also affects item availability in the Inventory Management system.

The line types that you define are applicable throughout distribution systems. For example, line types are processed in the same way in the ECS Sales Order Management system as they are in the Purchase Order Management system.

### To set up order line types

On Order Line Types

**Figure 38–1 Order Line Types screen**

40205 Order Line Types

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
More Details  
Clear Screen

40205 Order Line Types

Action Code

Ln	Description	...Interface	Rev	Txt	.Include	In.	A	R	A	W	E			
Ty		G/L	Inv	A/R	A/P	Sign	Y/N	G/P	C	T1	R	F	O	V
R	Sales or Use Tax	Y	N	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
A	Asset Movements	N	Y	N	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
B	G/L Account & Item Number-Bulk	Y	N	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
BC	Stock Inventory Tax Brazil PUR	N	Y	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N
BE	Expenses - Brazil	N	N	Y	Y	N	N	Y	Y	N	Y	N	N	N
BF	Freight - Brazil	N	N	Y	Y	N	N	Y	Y	N	Y	N	N	N
BI	Insurance - Brazil	Y	N	Y	Y	N	N	Y	Y	N	Y	N	N	N
BS	Stock Inventory Item Brazil	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N
BX	Tax line - Brazil	Y	N	Y	Y	N	N	Y	Y	N	Y	N	N	N
BY	Freight - Tax Brazil PUR	Y	N	Y	N	N	N	Y	Y	N	Y	N	N	N
B1	Brazil services	Y	N	Y	Y	N	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
C	Credit line	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
CD	Credit Line Ship To - Brazil	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N
CR	Credit Line Ship From - Brazil	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N
CS	Commingled Stock	N	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	N	N
CT	Container Transactions	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	N	N

F4=Full Detail F24=More Keys

1. Complete the following fields:
  - Line Type
  - Description
  - General Ledger Interface
  - Inventory Interface
  - Accounts Receivable Interface
  - Accounts Payable Interface
  - Reverse Sign
  - Text
  - Include Sales/COGS for Gross Profit
  - Include in Cash Discount Calculation
  - Include in Tax 1
  - Apply Retainage
  - Apply Freight
  - Generate Work Order
2. Access the fold area.

**Figure 38–2 Order Line Types (Fold Area) screen**

3. Complete one or more of the following fields:

- G/L class
- Journal Column
- Variance

Field	Explanation
Line Type	<p>A code that controls how the system treats lines on a transaction. It controls the systems with which the transaction interfaces (General Ledger, Job Cost, Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and Inventory Management). It also specifies the conditions under which a line prints on reports and is included in calculations. For example:</p> <p>S – Stock item</p> <p>J – Job cost</p> <p>N – Non-stock item</p> <p>F – Freight</p> <p>T – Text information</p> <p>M – Miscellaneous charges and credits</p>
Description - Line Type	<p>The first 30 characters of the description that identifies each defined line type. The system uses this description as the default description for all non-inventory line items you create through order entry.</p>
G/L Interface Y/N - Distribution	<p>A code that indicates whether the system reflects the dollar or unit value of any activity containing this order line type in the general ledger. Valid codes are Y (yes), which is the default, and N (no).</p>

Field	Explanation
Inventory Interface Y/N - Distribution	<p>A code that identifies the type of interface to the Inventory Management system. Valid codes are:</p> <p>Y – The dollar or unit value of any activity containing this line type will be reflected in inventory. The system also edits the item you enter to ensure that it is a valid item. Y is the default.</p> <p>A – The number entered will be recognized as a G/L account number. This code is used in purchasing only.</p> <p>B – The system edits when using format 4 in purchase order entry. The system retrieves price data from the inventory tables, but does not update to the quantity on the purchase order. This code is valid only when the G/L Interface field is Y (yes). Budget checking is fully functional with this interface type.</p> <p>D – The item in this line is an inventory item that will not affect availability or quantities.</p> <p>N – This item is not an inventory item.</p>
A/R Interface Y/N - Distribution	Code that indicates whether the system will reflect the dollar or unit value of any activity containing this order line type in Accounts Receivable. Valid codes are Y (yes), which is the default, and N (no).
A/P Interface Y/N - Distribution	A code that indicates whether the system reflects the dollar or unit value of any activity containing this order line type in accounts payable. Valid codes are Y (yes), which is the default, and N (no).
Reverse Sign	<p>A code that indicates whether the system reverses the sign of the quantity in the line. This code is used to allow easy entry of credit memos. Valid codes are:</p> <p>Y – Yes</p> <p>N – No. This is the default</p>
Text	<p>A code that indicates whether this line contains only memo information. Valid codes are:</p> <p>Y – (yes)</p> <p>N – (no, which is the default)</p>
Include Sales/COGS for Gross Profit	A code indicating that the system includes sales and cost of goods sold in gross profit calculations. Valid codes are Y (yes) and N (no, which is the default).
Include in Cash Discount Calculation	A code indicating whether the system includes the extended dollar amount of the transaction in the cash discount or payment terms discount calculation. Valid codes are Y (yes) and N (no). N is the default.
Include in Tax 1	<p>A code that indicates whether the monetary value of this order line is subject to applicable taxes and which taxes to apply. Valid values are:</p> <p>Y – Yes, the line is subject to applicable taxes.</p> <p>N – No, the line is not subject to applicable taxes.</p> <p>3-8 – Yes, the line is subject to applicable taxes at the rate indicated by the group number (3-8). The system uses group numbers for VAT (value added tax).</p>



Field	Explanation
Apply Retainage - Y/N	<p>A code that indicates whether the system includes the item's values in the calculation of an accounts payable retainage. Use this field only if the interface between the Purchasing system and Accounts Payable system is active.</p> <p>Valid codes are:</p> <p>Y – Include the item's values in the accounts payable retainage calculation.</p> <p>N – Do not include the item's values in the accounts payable retainage calculation.</p> <p>If you leave this field blank, the system automatically enters N.</p>
Apply Freight - Y/N	<p>A code indicating whether the system should perform freight calculations during processing. Valid codes are:</p> <p>Y – yes, perform calculations</p> <p>N – no, do not perform calculations</p> <p>If you leave this field blank, the system automatically enters Y.</p>
Generate Workorder	<p>A code indicating whether the system automatically generates an internal work order for this line. Valid codes are Y (yes) and N (no, which is the default).</p>
Category - G/L	<p>A code that identifies the general ledger class that you want the system to use when it searches for the account to which it will post the transaction. If you do not want to specify a class code, you can enter **** (four asterisks) in this field.</p> <p>The table of Automatic Accounting Instructions (AAIs) allows you to predefine classes of automatic offset accounts for the Inventory, Purchasing, and Sales Order Management systems. G/L categories might be assigned as follows:</p> <p>IN20 – Direct Ship Orders</p> <p>IN60 – Transfer Orders</p> <p>IN80 – Stock Sales</p> <p>The system can generate accounting entries based upon a single transaction. As an example, a single sale of a stock item can trigger the generation of accounting entries similar to these:</p> <p>Sales-Stock (Debit) xxxxx.xx</p> <p>A/R Stock Sales (Credit) xxxxx.xx Posting Category: IN80</p> <p>Stock Inventory (Debit) xxxxx.xx</p> <p>Stock COGS (Credit) xxxxx.xx</p> <p>Although this field is four characters, only the last two characters of the Category and the last character of the Document Type are used to find the AAI.</p>
Column to Include on Sales Journal	<p>The Sales Journal report has four columns. The value in this field controls which of the four columns receives the sales value, if any, of this line. Allowed codes are 1, 2, 3, and 4.</p>

Field	Explanation
Record Variance (Y/N)	<p>Code that tells the system to which account it should book a variance. Valid codes are:</p> <p>Y – Tells the system that a variance generated during voucher match should be booked to the variance account.</p> <p>N – Indicates to the system that it should book any variance back to the expense account for the order line.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is used in conjunction with an inventory interface of A or B in the Purchasing system only.</p>

---

## Set Up Order Activity Rules

This chapter contains the topic:

- [Section 39.1, "Setting Up Order Activity Rules \(ECS\)."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose Order Activity Rules

### 39.1 Setting Up Order Activity Rules (ECS)

To advance an order line through the order process, you must create order activity rules, which establish a sequence of steps for processing.

The system processes an order line based on the order activity rules that you set up for the order type and line type combination. For example, you could set the order activity rules for stock line types in sales orders as follows:

- Enter order
- Load confirm
- Delivery confirm

For stock line types on purchase orders, you could set the order activity rules as follows:

- Enter order
- Approve order
- Print

You must assign a status code for every step in the order process. A status code is a number that the system uses to identify the current status of an order line. You must also identify a next status code that determines the next step to which the system will advance the order. You must arrange status codes in ascending numerical order for the system to establish the sequence of steps.

You can change the progression of steps or include alternate steps in the order activity rules. For example, you can set up order activity rules for non-stock items in sales orders so that the system bypasses the step to print pick slips and advances the order line to shipment confirmation.

You can specify at which point in the order process the system writes records to the general ledger for sales and purchasing.

### 39.1.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that you have set up the status codes in the user defined codes table (system 40, type AT). See *Work with User Defined Codes in the JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.
- Verify that you have set up order types in the user defined codes table (system 00, type DT). See *Work with User Defined Codes in the JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.
- Verify that you have set up line types. See [Section 38.1, "Setting Up Order Line Types \(ECS\)."](#)

#### To set up order activity rules

On Order Activity Rules

**Figure 39–1 Order Activity Rules screen**

40204 Order Activity Rules

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
More Details  
User Defined Codes  
Print Order Activity Rule  
Clear Screen

40204 Order Activity Rules

Action Type: 1  
Order Type: 53 Sales Order - ECS  
Line Type: 5 Stock Inventory Item  
Next Number: 01

Ln	Ty	Sta	Description	Nxt	Sta	Other Allowed	Ledger
5	520		Enter Sales Order	525	562 564 542		Tr
5	525		Trip Creation	542	540 564 575 575 999		N
5	540		Print Pickslip (pack only)	542	540 564		N
5	542		Print Loading Note (bulk/pack)	562	542 564 573		N
5	562		Load Confirm (bulk/pack)	564	573 575 576 578		N
5	564		Delivery Document Selection	565			N
5	565		Print Delivery Documents	573	575 576 578 582		N
5	573		Delivery Confirm (bulk/pack)	575	576 578 588		N
5	575		Billable Freight	576	578 564 588		N
5	576		Payable Freight	578	576		N
5	578		Cycle Billing	588	588 578		N
5	588		Print Invoices	608	588		N

F4=Full Detail F5=User Defined Codes F21=Print F24=More Keys

Complete the following fields:

- Order Type
- Line Type
- Next Number
- Status Code
- Description
- Next Status Code
- Other Allowed
- Ledger

Field	Explanation
Order Type	<p>A user defined code (system 00/type DT) that identifies the type of document. This code also indicates the origin of the transaction. JD Edwards World has reserved document type codes for vouchers, invoices, receipts, and time sheets, which create automatic offset entries during the post program. (These entries are not self-balancing when you originally enter them.)</p> <p>The following document types are defined by JD Edwards World and should not be changed:</p> <p>P – Accounts Payable Documents</p> <p>R – Accounts Receivable Documents</p> <p>T – Payroll Documents</p> <p>I – Inventory Documents</p> <p>O – Order Processing Documents</p> <p>J – General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing Documents</p> <p>S – Sales Order Processing documents</p>
Line Type	<p>A code that controls how the system processes lines on a transaction. It controls the systems with which the transaction interfaces (General Ledger, Job Cost, Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable, and Inventory Management). It also specifies the conditions under which a line prints on reports and is included in calculations. For example:</p> <p>S – Stock item</p> <p>J – Job cost</p> <p>N – Non-stock item</p> <p>F – Freight</p> <p>T – Text information</p> <p>M – Miscellaneous charges and credits</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Header field: Use this field to help define an inquiry. You can enter a specific code or you can enter an asterisk (*) to indicate all line types.</p> <p>Detail field: The code identifying the line type of the order activity rule.</p>
Next Number	<p>A code that tells the system which next number series to use when creating order numbers for this order type. There are ten available Next Number series. For example:</p> <p>If this field is set to a 1 then the system looks at bucket 1 for its next number series for that order type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ A Sales Transfer Order or Blanket Order may each have a different number range from standard sales orders</li> <li>■ A Blanket PO or Requisition may each have a different next number range than a standard PO</li> </ul>
Status Code - Stat	A user defined code (system 40/type AT) that indicates the status of the line.
Next Status Code	A user defined code (system 40/type AT) indicating the next step in the order flow of the line type.

Field	Explanation
Other Allowed (Status Codes)	This is an optional field indicating a status that can be performed as the next step in the order process. Although this is not the preferred or expected next step, this field is an allowed override. The system does not allow you to initiate an order line step or status not defined as either the expected next status or an allowed status. Other allowed status codes let you bypass processing steps. These codes are often referred to in processing options as "override next status codes."
Ledger	A code that tells the system to write a record to the history table (F42199 for Sales Order Management and F43199 for Purchase Order Management). Valid codes are:  Y – Write a record for selected fields to the history table  N – Do not write a record to the history table
Description	Text describing the order status that the system retrieves from the user defined code table (system 40/type AT).

### 39.1.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Using status codes	You can use the order activity rules for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To locate the status of an order</li> <li>■ To select orders for a procedure</li> <li>■ To prepare reports based on the current status of an order</li> </ul>
Copying an order activity rule	You can copy an order activity rule by accessing a current combination of an order type and a line type combination and making the necessary changes. You cannot delete an order activity rule if it has active orders against a status and line type. If a line type is protected there is an active order in the file at the particular status associated to that line type.

---

## Set Up Order Hold Information

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 40.1, "Setting Up Order Hold Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 40.2, "Defining Order Hold Codes \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 40.3, "Setting Up Minimum and Maximum Order Amounts \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 40.4, "Setting Up Order Hold Codes for Credit Checking \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 40.5, "Setting Up Order Hold Codes for Margin Checking \(ECS\),"](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose Order Hold Information

## 40.1 Setting Up Order Hold Information (ECS)

You can put an order on hold to prevent the order from being processed. You might want to do this because:

- The order does not meet the minimum order amount.
- The order does not meet or exceeds your sales margin.
- The order exceeds the customer's credit limit.

You can define the conditions that the system uses to place orders on hold and attach those conditions to a hold code. For example, you can define minimum and maximum order values. If the total order amount is not within this range, the system assigns the hold code to the order to place the order on hold and stop further processing.

You can also define sales margin and credit holds. Based on this information, the system places an order on hold if the order or order line does not meet the sales margin. The system also places an order on hold if the order exceeds the customer's credit limit.

You must specify hold codes in the processing options for the Sales Order Entry program to activate hold codes. To continue processing an order, you must run the Order Release program to release held orders.

### 40.1.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that you have set up the hold codes in user defined codes. See *Work with User Defined Codes* in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.

- Verify that you have specified hold codes in the processing options for the Sales Order Entry program.

**Figure 40–1 Order Hold Information screen**

Oracle JD Edwards World Order Hold Information screen. The screen displays the following information:

- Form Fields:**
  - Branch/Plant: DEP01
  - Hold Code: C1
  - Responsible Person: D'Angelo, Suzanne
- Table:**

Brn/Plt	Hold Code	Cd	Lm	Ty	Responsible Person
DEP01	C1	0	R	2057	D'Angelo, Suzanne

**See Also:**

- [Section 11.2, "Releasing Orders on Hold \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Chapter 3, "Work with Interactive Sales Orders"](#) for the sales order entry processing options that activate order holds.

## 40.2 Defining Order Hold Codes (ECS)

You can set up order hold information that the system uses to place orders on hold. The system applies this information if you set the appropriate processing options for the Sales Order Entry program.

### To define order hold codes

On Order Hold Information

1. To locate existing order hold codes, complete the following fields:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Hold Code
  - Responsible Person
2. Access the fold area.



**Figure 40–2 Order Hold Information (Fold Area) screen**

3. Complete the following fields:

- Password

## 40.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Locating existing hold codes	You can search existing hold codes by hold code, branch/plant, or responsible person.
Setting up hold codes in customer billing instructions	<p>If you specify a hold code in customer billing instructions, the system will display an error message and will not process any order for that customer.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Chapter 37, "Set Up Customer Billing Instructions"</a> for field information.</p>
Updating order hold information	<p>You can use the Batch Order Holds program to update a customer's existing order with a hold code that has been entered in customer billing instructions. For example, if you have entered an order before you have reconciled any administrative issues with the customer, you can withdraw the order from the processing cycle by placing the order on hold.</p> <p>After you set up the hold code in the customer billing instructions, you can run the Batch Order Holds program to update the customers' open sales orders. This batch program can be run on an individual customer or all customers whose hold code is not blank.</p>

Field	Explanation
Hold Code	<p>A user defined code (table 42/HC) that identifies why an order was placed on hold (for example, credit, budget, or margin standards were exceeded).</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Enter the Hold Code that you want to review in the first Hold Code field. You define hold codes (user defined code table 42/HC) to identify why a particular order was placed on hold.</p> <p>Enter each hold code that you want to define in the Hold Code column. This is a required field when you add a new code. The system retrieves the description from the user defined code table 42/HC.</p>
Person Responsible	<p>The address number of the person responsible for reviewing and releasing orders placed on hold.</p>
Password	<p>A series of characters that you must enter before the system updates a table. In the Distribution systems, the password secures commissions setup and the release of held orders. Only users with access to the password can release an order. The system does not display the password on the form. You should not enter blanks anywhere in the password.</p>

## 40.3 Setting Up Minimum and Maximum Order Amounts (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose Customer Billing Instructions

You can set minimum and maximum order amounts that your customer must order before the system advances the order through the processing cycle. For example, if you fill small orders from a branch office and large orders from a warehouse, you might require all or your customers who place orders at the warehouse to order a minimum amount.

After you have activated this hold process with the corresponding processing options, the system compares the minimum and maximum values with the order amount. If the order amount is not within the appropriate range, the system will display an error message and will not process the order further.

### To set up minimum and maximum order amounts

On Customer Billing Instructions

**Figure 40–3 Customer Billing Instructions screen**

Complete the following fields:

- Minimum Order Value
- Maximum Order Value

Field	Explanation
Minimum Order Value	Value below which an order is placed on hold. If you try to enter an order whose total is less than the minimum order value, the system displays an error message. This field is maintained as an integer without decimals.
Maximum Order Value	Value above which an order is placed on hold. If you try to enter an order whose total is more than the maximum order value, the system displays an error message. This field is maintained as an integer without decimals.

## 40.4 Setting Up Order Hold Codes for Credit Checking (ECS)

You can set up a credit hold code to automatically compare the credit limit that you set up for your customer in Customer Master Information to the order and any outstanding balances in accounts receivable. For example, you set a customer's credit limit to 1,000.00. If your customer has an accounts receivable balance of 100.00, the order must be 900.00 or less or the system places the order on hold.

You can also specify a hold based on the percentage of the outstanding balance in accounts receivables. You must specify aging periods, such as 0 to 30 days or 31 to 60 days, to verify balance information. If you specify the 31 to 60 day period, the system does not include balance information from the first period in its comparison.

For example, a customer has a total accounts receivable balance of 6,000.00, 5,000.00 in the 0 to 30 day period and 1,000.00 in the 31 to 60 day period. You set up a hold based on the percentage of the outstanding balance to be 20% of the total accounts receivable balance. You specify the 31 to 60 day aging period for the system to compare to the

allowable percentage. Based on this information, the maximum allowable outstanding balance for the 31 to 60 day period is 1,200.00. With an outstanding balance of 1,000.00 in the 31 to 60 day aging period, this customer would pass a credit check.

There are two types of Credit Checking:

- Credit Limit - Amount set up in the Customer Master is compared against the order amount and any outstanding balances.
- Aging - Based on how old your receivables are and what percentage of receivables can be that old.

The system can handle both methods; however, if your order goes on hold the system does not notify you on what method caused the order to go on hold.

#### 40.4.1 Credit Limit

From menu G491012 access the Order Hold Information (P42090), option 2.

Add a credit hold code specific to your branch plant.

The CD TY and LM TY fields apply to margin hold codes and do not affect credit checking.

Responsible Person should be the person responsible for maintaining the credit holds.

Password can be specific to the responsible person.

#### 40.4.2 Aging

Use the same process as Credit Limit, except you need to populate the Age From and Allowable % fields.

- Age From - Number that designates the aging period the system should use when you specify a credit check based on the aging of the customer's accounts receivable
- Allowable % - Number that tells the system what percentage of total receivables to accept in the aging buckets starting with the one specified in the Age from field. When aging credit checking is used, the allowable % field is required entry

---

---

**Note:** For Aging credit checking to work correctly, you must populate both the Age From and the Allowable % fields.

---

---

For example, your customer has a total A/R balance of 10,000 and 2,500 of that is in the 31-60 day column. The Age From value is 3 (31-60 days) and the allowable % value is 10 (10%). Therefore, this customer could have as much as 1,000 (10,000 × 10%) in columns 3 through 6 and still pass this credit check. Since the customer has more, the system places its orders on hold.

The system allows you to use both Aging Credit Checking and Credit Limit Checking.

If an order is entered under the credit limit amount but the aging percent is over, the order will go on hold. Or, if an order is entered and the Aging percent is under but the credit limit is over, then the order will go on hold. If an order is on hold, it assigns the credit checking hold code you defined in the processing option, without a distinction between Credit Limit hold and Aging hold.

#### C.O.D. payment

It is possible for a customer to place an order even if they have exceeded their Credit Limit/Aging Credit. This method is based on C.O.D. using a payment instrument of 5.

If you enter a payment instrument of 5 the system knows the client is paying cash (because the special handling code of "5" is set to 1 in UDC table 00/PY) and bypasses the credit checking process. This allows the customer to maintain business and not increase their debt.

### Credit Holds and Multi Currency

When using multi currency, Customer Master displays two additional fields: Currency Code and Amount Currency. Check Credit always displays in domestic currency of the company.

### Currency Code

This identifies your customer's currency. This currency defaults into your sales order for this customer.

### Amount Currency

This is currency in which amounts are stored in Customer Master. It is the currency in which the credit limit is stored. Typically you let the system default domestic currency in this field. You cannot change this field once it has been populated.

**Figure 40–4 Customer Master Information screen**

### To set up order hold codes for credit checking

On Order Hold Information

1. Complete the following fields:
  - Branch/Plant
  - Hold Code
  - Responsible Person
2. Access the fold area.
3. Complete the following fields:

- Age From
- Allowable Percent
- Password

Field	Explanation
Age From	<p>Number that designates the aging period the system should use when you specify a credit check based on the aging of the customer's accounts receivable.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>This field is required for credit checking when you enter a value in the Allowable % field.</p>
Allowable %	<p>Number that tells the system what percentage of total receivables to accept in the column specified in the Age From field. When aging credit checking is used, the allowable % field is required entry.</p> <p>For example, Your customer has a total A/R balance of 10,000 and 2,500 of that is in the 31-60 day column. The Age From value is 3 (31-60 days) and the Acceptable % value is 10 (10%). Therefore, this customer could have as much as 1,000 (10,000 x 10%) in columns 3 through 6 and still pass this credit check. Since the customer has more, the system will place its orders on hold.</p>

## 40.5 Setting Up Order Hold Codes for Margin Checking (ECS)

You can set up a hold code to verify that all sales orders or sales order detail lines meet any margin that you specify.

The system uses the following equation to calculate margin:

$$(\text{Price} - \text{Cost}) / \text{Price} = \text{Margin}$$

For example, if you purchase an item for .42 and sell it for 1.00, the calculation is:

$$(1 - .42) / 1 = .58 \text{ or } 58\%$$

You can set up a hold code that verifies the sales margin percentage of a detail line or an entire order. If you set up a hold code that compares the sales margin to detail lines in the sales order, the system verifies that each detail line is between the minimum and maximum margins that you specify. For example, if your sales margin is between 25% and 27%, but the margin for one item is 28%, the system places the order on hold.

You can set up hold code information that verifies the sales margin of the order total. The system verifies that the order total meets the minimum and maximum margins that you specify. For example, if your sales margin is between 25% and 27%, and the margin for one item is 28%, but the margin for your order total is 25%, the system will not place the order on hold.

### To set up order hold codes for margin checking

On Order Hold Information

1. Complete the following fields:

- Branch/Plant
- Code Type
- Hold Code

- Limit Type
  - Responsible Person
2. Access the fold area.
  3. To enter margin and credit checking information, complete the following fields:
    - Password
    - Upper Limit
    - Lower Limit

Field	Explanation
Limit - Upper Comparison	A number that indicates the upper limit that the system uses as the high end of a range of acceptable margin percentages or amounts. Use this code when you want to establish a maximum gross margin percentage or amount for an order or an individual order line.
Limit - Lower Comparison	A number that indicates the lower limit that the system uses as the low end of the range of acceptable margin percentages or amounts. You can establish a minimum gross margin percentage or amount for an order or for an individual order line.

### 40.5.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Placing a hold on sales orders during sales order entry	You can manually enter a hold code in the order heading information. A value in the hold code field prevents the system from processing the order. <a href="#">See Section 3.2, "Entering Header Information (ECS)."</a>
Placing a hold in customer billing instructions	You can specify a hold code in customer billing instructions. The customer's orders will not be processed until the person responsible for reviewing that customer's orders releases the order into the processing cycle. <a href="#">See Section 37.1, "Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions (ECS)."</a>
Negative Numbers	Do not use negative numbers in the Order Hold Information Upper and Lower Limits.
Releasing Holds	To release holds inquire on your order and use option 7 at 3/G491012 and the password to release it.
Hold orders display	Held orders are records in the F4209. If there are multiple hold codes on an order, there are multiple records in the F4209. Only one hold code is displayed on the order header. Press F2 with the cursor on the hold code to see additional holds on the order. Once the displayed hold on the header is released, the next hold code populates and is displayed.





---

## Set Up Commission Information

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 41.1, "Setting Up Commission Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 41.2, "Setting Up a Sales Group \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 41.3, "Assigning Commission Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 41.4, "Setting Up Additional Commission Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 41.5, "Setting Up Variable Commission Percentages within a Group \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 41.6, "Reviewing Commission Information."](#)

### 41.1 Setting Up Commission Information (ECS)

To define commission information in the ECS Sales Order Management system, you must associate a salesperson or a sales group, a commission percentage, a customer, and an order type.

You can specify the method that the system uses to calculate commission percentages. A commission percentage is the percentage of an order calculated from the gross margin or the order total that is distributed to a salesperson or a group of salespeople. If you set up commissions based on the gross margin, the system calculates the sales margin for the order or line before calculating commissions.

You can set up your commission information to reflect your company's sales environment. You can assign a maximum of two salespeople or two sales groups to each customer. After you enter an order and update customer sales, the system applies a calculated commission amount to the salesperson's address book number or the address book number of each salesperson in the sales group.

You can set up a sales group to distribute commissions to a group of two or more salespeople who contribute to a customer's sale. For example, if your sales group consists of a sales manager, account representative, and sales assistant, you assign a group code that represents the three salespeople. Sales groups are useful for identifying salespeople who are responsible for a customer's orders and maintaining multiple commission percentages.

You can set up commission percentages according to your company's commission payment policies. You can distribute commissions by entering a fixed commission percentage or variable commission percentages. When you set a fixed commission percentage, the system applies the same percentage for any order type that generates a commission.

You can also set variable commission percentages for an individual salesperson. The system includes variables, such as effective dates, order types, fixed costs and

minimum amounts, before calculating commissions. For example, you might have a different commission percentage for sales orders than you have for blanket orders. Or, you might need to deduct fixed costs from an order before you calculate commissions.

If you assign a sales group to a customer, you can distribute commissions on a fixed commission percentage. You can set a fixed percentage that distributes the same commission percentage to each salesperson within a group. You can also set a variable commission percentage for the group or variable commission percentages for salespeople within the sales group. If commission percentages differ within a group, you can set up different commission percentages for each salesperson. For example, a manager might have a higher rate of commission than a sales assistant.

### 41.1.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that address book numbers exist for all salespeople. See *Entering Basic Address Book Information (P01051)* in the *JD Edwards World Address Book and Electronic Mail Guide*.
- Verify that you have set the processing options for the Update Customer Sales program to update the commission information. See [Section 21.1, "Updating Customer Sales \(ECS\)."](#)

### 41.1.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Applying commissions during order entry	To apply salesperson or sales group and commission information to a single order, enter the information in the order header during order entry. The salesperson and commission information overrides any default information for the order.  See <a href="#">Section 3.2, "Entering Header Information (ECS)."</a>
Applying commissions to an order detail line	To apply salesperson or sales group and commission information to a single line within an order, enter the commission information in the order detail information. The commission information applies only to this order line. The system also calculates the commission percentages for the sales number that you specified in the order header information.  See <a href="#">Section 3.3, "Entering Detail Information (ECS)."</a>
Locating commission information	You can review the commission information on the Commission/Royalty Inquiry form to verify that the salespeople received the correct amount or to change the commission information, if necessary.  You must perform a Sales Update (P42800) before you review commission information. Processing option 14 (commissions) controls whether the program updates the Sales Commission table (F42005).
Creating commission reports	You can create reports of commission information from the Sales Order Detail Ledger table (F42199) and the Sales Order Detail History table (F42119).

## 41.2 Setting Up a Sales Group (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

**From Commission/Royalty Management (G4223), choose Related Salesperson**

After you enter an order and update customer sales, the system applies the corresponding commission amounts to the address book numbers of the salespeople in the sales group.

- Verify that you have set up a code for the sales group in the user defined code table (system 42, type RS). See *Work with User Defined Codes* in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.

## On Related Salesperson

[illegible]

- Sales Code
- Salesperson Number
- Effective Date
- Expire Date
- Basis (optional)
- Code - Line or Order (optional)

■ Related Percent (optional)

Field	Explanation
Sales Code	A code that you use in place of the salesperson number when more than 2 salespersons are responsible for an order.
Date - Effective (Julian)	<p>The date on which a level within a pricing method takes effect. There can be multiple records within a pricing method that have the same level identifier, discount percentage, and so forth, with the only difference being the effective date. This may occur due to special promotion periods.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The date on which this commission percentage is effective.</p>
Date - Expiration (Julian)	<p>The date a particular pricing level within a pricing method expires. Within a pricing method there might be multiple records that have the same level identifier, discount percentage and so forth, but have different expiration dates. This might occur due to special promotion periods.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The date on which this commission percentage expires.</p>
Salesprs Number	<p>The standard for commission calculations requires a maximum of two salespersons and respective commission rates for each order line.</p> <p>To create a commission liability for more than two salespersons, you can relate individuals or entities (for royalties) to a single order line. To do so, set up a sales/commission/salesperson code that represents not one but many salespersons in the related salesperson file. The system inserts this code in the billing instructions record for any customer or during sales order entry to create multiple commission records at the appropriate point in the order processing cycle (one record for each related salesperson).</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The address book number of this salesperson.</p>
Basis	<p>A code that designates whether the system calculates commission using invoice amount (I) or gross margin (G).</p> <p>The default is invoice amount.</p>
Code - Line or Order	<p>A code that identifies whether the system bases commissions on order totals (O) or line totals.</p> <p>The default is order total.</p>
Related Percent	The percent of the sale for which a related salesperson is responsible. A related salesperson is any salesperson in a designated (related) sales group. For a given group, the percent of the sale does not have to equal 100%.

## 41.2.2 What You Should Know

Topic	Description
<b>Deleting a salesperson from a group</b>	To delete salesperson information, inquire on the existing group, change the action code to C and clear out the information that is to be deleted. Simply placing a D in the action code is not a valid method for deleting records in this program.  Related Salesperson information is stored in the Related Salesperson file (F42003).
<b>Variable commission rates within a group</b>	You can set a variable commission percentage for the group or variable commission percentages for salespeople within the sales group. If commission percentages differ within a group, you can set up different commission percentages for each salesperson. For example, a manager might have a higher rate of commission than a sales assistant.
<b>Setting fixed commissions with additional variables</b>	You must assign each salesperson's address book number to the group code in Related Salesperson but specify the additional commission information and fixed commission percentage in Commission/Royalty Information.
<b>Import/Export</b>	This program supports Import/Export functionality. See the <i>JD Edwards World Technical Tools Guide</i> guide for more information.

## 41.3 Assigning Commission Information (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose Customer Billing Instructions

You can set up your commission information to reflect your company's sales environment. You can assign a maximum of two salespeople or two sales groups to each customer. After you enter an order and update customer sales, the system applies a calculated commission amount to the salesperson's address book number or the address book number of each salesperson in the sales group.

Assigning commission information includes the following tasks:

- Assigning a salesperson or group to a customer
- Assigning fixed commission percentages

You can set up commission percentages according to your company's commission payment policies. You can distribute commissions by entering a fixed commission percentage or variable commission percentages.

When you set a fixed commission percentage, the system applies the same percentage rate for any order. If you assign a group of salespeople to a customer, you can distribute commissions on a fixed commission percentage. When you set a fixed percentage for a group, the system distributes the same commission amount to each salesperson within a group.

You cannot assign commission percentages in the customer billing instructions for a salesperson or a sales group if you want the system to calculate variable commission percentages or set up additional commission information.

**See Also:**

- [Section 41.5, "Setting Up Variable Commission Percentages within a Group \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 41.4, "Setting Up Additional Commission Information \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 37.1, "Setting Up Customer Billing Instructions \(ECS\)."](#)

**To assign a salesperson or group to a customer**

On Customer Billing Instructions.

1. To locate a customer, complete the following field:
  - Address Number
2. Access Billing Instructions - Page 2.

**Figure 41–2 Billing Instructions - Pg 2 screen**

3. On Billing Instructions - Page 2, complete the following fields:
  - Commission Code 1
  - Commission Code 2

**To assign fixed commission percentages**

On Customer Billing Instructions

1. Complete the steps to assign a salesperson or a group to a customer.
2. Access Billing Instructions - Page 2.
3. On Billing Instructions - Page 2, complete the following fields:
  - Commission Rate 1
  - Commission Rate 2

Field	Explanation
Rate - Commission 1	The first of two percentages to be applied to either the gross sales amount or the gross margin for an order or order line in computing your commission liability. This percent can default from Billing Instructions or be entered directly to the order.
Rate - Commission 2	The second of two commission percentages to be applied to either the gross sales amount or the gross margin for an order or order line in computing your commission liability. This percent can come in from the Billing Instructions or be entered in the sales order.

### 41.3.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Calculating fixed commission percentages	When you assign a fixed commission percentage in the customer billing instructions, the system calculates the commission amount based on the order total.
Sales Order Entry	<p>The commission codes or rates that you enter on the customer billing instructions are defaulted into the header during Sales Order Entry (P4211). This information can be changed and applies to all detail lines created for the order unless you modify the information at the order line level.</p> <p>The Commission fields can be suppressed from Sales Order Entry by setting processing option 39.</p>

## 41.4 Setting Up Additional Commission Information (ECS)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose Commission/Royalty Setup

From Commission/Royalty Management (G4223), choose Commission/Royalty Information

You can include additional information before calculating the commission amount for a salesperson, a sales group, or salespeople within a group. The system compares the additional commission information, such as order type, fixed costs, and effective dates, to the order information before calculating the commission percentage. You can designate different commission percentages for order types. For example, you can designate that a salesperson earns 5% commission on a sales order, 2% on a direct ship order, and 7% on a blanket order.

You can also designate commission percentages for a limited period of time with variables that apply during the effective dates. For example, you might specify that a sales trainee earns a 7% commission on sales order totals during the training period. During that time, the order must meet a minimum gross margin amount or the system does not calculate commissions. If the order qualifies for a commission, then you must deduct fixed costs before calculating the commission percentage. After the training period, the salesperson earns a 5% commission on the gross margin of all orders after the system deducts the fixed costs. You can enter multiple commission percentages at one time when you anticipate changes in the future.

---



- Expire Date
  - Order Type
  - Load Factor
  - Fixed Costs
  - Minimum Gross Margin
2. To set a commission percentage for the group, complete the following field:
    - Commission Percent
  3. Access the fold area.

**Figure 41–4 Commission/Royalty Information (Fold Area) screen**

4. Complete the following fields:
  - Division
  - Trade Class
  - Ship Method
  - Password

Field	Explanation
Commission Code Type	A code that designates whether the system calculates commission using Invoice Amount or Gross Margin. No matter which item the system uses, you should consider an amount as the starting point in the commission calculation and apply loading factors, fixed costs, minimum margins and so on.

Field	Explanation
Order Type	<p>A user defined code (system 00/type DT) that identifies the type of document. This code also indicates the origin of the transaction. JD Edwards World has reserved document type codes for vouchers, invoices, receipts, and time sheets, which create automatic offset entries during the post program. (These entries are not self-balancing when you originally enter them.)</p> <p>The following document types are defined by JD Edwards World and should not be changed:</p> <p>P – Accounts Payable Documents</p> <p>R – Accounts Receivable Documents</p> <p>T – Payroll Documents</p> <p>I – Inventory Documents</p> <p>O – Order Processing Documents</p> <p>J – General Accounting/Joint Interest Billing Documents</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>A code that indicates the type of order for which this commission percentage is valid. A salesperson (or related salesperson) can receive a higher rate for one type of order over another.</p>
Load Factor	<p>The factor that the system uses as multiplier of product cost.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>A fixed percentage that the system deducts from the sales invoice total (if the commission type is I) or from the gross margin (if the commission type is G).</p>
Fixed Costs	The dollar amount of processing overhead per order.
Minimum Gross Margin \$	The order-based minimum gross margin. If the gross margin is not equal to at least this amount, then the order does not qualify for a commission.
Commission %	The percentage of an order sales amount payable to the salesperson.
Division	<p>One of thirty reporting codes that you can assign to an address in the Address Book system. Use these codes to identify addresses for reports, mailings, and so on. Category codes are user-defined (system 01, types 01 through 30). Examples:</p> <p>Category code 01 - Location or Branch</p> <p>Category code 02 - Salesperson</p> <p>Category code 03 - New tenant</p> <p>Category code 04 - Credit officer</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>User-defined code (system 01, type 01) that indicates the branch for which this is a valid commission percentage.</p>
Ship Method	<p>A user defined code (system 42/type FR) designating the method by which supplier shipments are delivered. For example, the supplier could deliver to your dock, or you could pick up the shipment at the supplier's dock.</p> <p>You can also use these codes to indicate who has responsibility for freight charges. For example, you can have a code indicating that the customer legally takes possession of goods as soon as they leave the supplier warehouse and is responsible for transportation charges to the destination.</p>

Field	Explanation
Password	A series of characters that you must enter before the system updates a table. In the Distribution systems, the password secures commissions setup and the release of held orders. Only users with access to the password can release an order. The system does not display the password on the form. You should not enter blanks anywhere in the password.

#### 41.4.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Setting up variable commission percentages	You can set up variable commission percentages with additional commission information. You must verify that the commission percentage in Commission/Royalty Information is blank.  See <a href="#">Section 41.5, "Setting Up Variable Commission Percentages within a Group (ECS)."</a>
Setting commission information with passwords	You must enter a password to locate commission information in Commission/Royalty Inquiry or to change commission information if you have set up a password in Commission/Royalty Information.
Import/Export	This program supports Import/Export functionality. See the <i>JD Edwards World Technical Tools Guide</i> guide for more information.

### 41.5 Setting Up Variable Commission Percentages within a Group (ECS)

#### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose Commission/Royalty Setup

From Commission/Royalty Management (G4223), choose Related Salesperson

You can also set a variable commission percentage for the group or variable commission percentages for salespeople within the sales group. If commission percentages differ within a group, you can set up different commission percentages for each salesperson. For example, a manager might have a higher rate of commission than a sales assistant.

#### 41.5.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that a code for the sales group is set up in the user defined code table (system 42, type RS). See *Work with User Defined Codes* in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.
- Verify that the commission rate code fields for each customer in the customer billing instructions is blank.
- If you set up variable commission percentages that have additional commission information, verify that the Commission Percent field on Commission/Royalty Information is blank.
- Verify that a salesperson or group has been assigned to the customer. See [Section 41.3, "Assigning Commission Information \(ECS\)."](#)

**To set up variable commission percentages within a group**

On Related Salesperson

Complete the following fields:

- Salesperson Number
- Effective Date
- Expiration Date
- Basis
- Line/Order
- Related Percent

Field	Explanation
Basis - Related Salesperson	A code that designates whether the system calculates commissions using Invoice Amount or Gross Margin.
Code - Line or Order	A code that indicates whether the system bases commissions on order totals (O) or line amounts (L).
Percent - Related	The percent of the sale for which a related salesperson is responsible. A related salesperson is any salesperson in a designated (related) sales group. For a given group, the percent of the sale does not have to equal 100%.

## 41.5.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Setting fixed commissions with additional variables	You must assign each salesperson's address book number to the group code in Related Salesperson but specify the additional commission information and fixed commission percentage in Commission/Royalty Information.

## 41.6 Reviewing Commission Information

**Navigation**

From Sales Order Management (G42), choose hidden selection 29

From System Setup (G4241), choose Commission/Royalty Setup

From Commission/Royalty Setup (G4223), choose Commission/Royalty Inquiry

**Navigation**

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), choose hidden Selection 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose Commission/Royalty Setup

From Commission/Royalty Setup (G4223), choose Commission/Royalty Inquiry

You can set up your commission information to reflect your company's sales environment. You can assign a maximum of two salespeople or two sales groups to each customer. After you enter an order and update customer sales, the system applies a calculated commission amount to the salesperson's address book number or the address book number of each salesperson in the sales group by populating the Sales Commission File (F42005).

After the sales update, you can review commission information to ensure your salespeople receive the correct amount. If necessary, you can modify existing information if you have proper security access.

### To review commission information

On Commission/Royalty Inquiry.

**Figure 41–5 Commission/Royalty Inquiry screen**

Order /Margin	Line /Margin	Sales Person	Comm	Commission
2069 355.52	1.000 166.67	2049	I 8.000	13.3335
2069 355.52	2.000 188.85	2049	I 8.000	15.1060

At the bottom of the screen, there are function key prompts: F12=Open Orders, F4=Fold, F9=Name Search, and F24=More Keys.

Use the first processing option behind the inquiry program to select whether the commission is calculated by line 'L' or by order 'O'.

1. Complete one of the following fields:
  - Salesperson
  - Customer
  - Order Number
  - Item Number
2. Review the information in the following fields:
  - Order/Amount Margin
  - Line Amount/Margin
  - Salesperson
  - Commission Code Type
  - Commission Percent
  - Commission Amount
3. Press F4 for More Details and review the following fields:
  - Load Factor
  - Fixed Cost

**Figure 41–6 Commission/Royalty Inquiry (Details) screen**

42120 Commission/Royalty Inquiry

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
More Details  
Exit to Name Search  
Customer Service Inquiry  
Clear Screen  
Export Subfile

42120 Commission/Royalty Inquiry

Salesperson 2049 McLind, Rod

Or Customer

Order Number

Item Number

Password

Order	Order Amt /Margin	Line	Line Amt /Margin	Sales Person	Comm	Commission
2069		1.000	166.67	2049	I 8.000	13.3326
Sfx- 000			1448.33-	Ld Fact		Fx Cost
Customer	4245 Cloud Nine Health Supply					
Item Number	V001			Natureway High Energy Vitamins		
2069	355.52	2.000	188.89	2049	I 8.000	15.1089
Sfx- 000			1567.15-	Ld Fact		Fx Cost
Customer	4245 Cloud Nine Health Supply					
Item Number	V002			Natureway High Energy Vitamins		
Sfx-				Ld Fact		Fx Cost
Customer						
Item Number						

F12=Open Orders F4=Fold F9=Name Search F24=More Keys

4. To revise any information, complete the following field:

- Password

Field	Explanation
Commission \$	The system computes this dollar amount as a potential commission liability. Based upon the sales amount at the order or line level, this amount might be the result of cost of sales, overhead load factor, minimum gross margin, and so forth.
Comm %	The percentage of an order sales amount payable to the salesperson.
Ld Fact	The Load Factor that the system uses as multiplier of product cost. <i>Form-specific information</i> A fixed percentage that the system deducts from the sales invoice total (if the commission type is I) or from the gross margin (if the commission type is G).
Fx Cost	The Fixed Cost dollar amount of processing overhead per order. This is also deducted from the invoice total (if the commission type is I) or from the gross margin (if the commission type is G).

In this specific example, you see that salesman receive 8% commission on the sales order. This is because the group is assigned 40% in the Commission Royalty Information program (P42110), and the specific salesman is responsible for 20% of the sales of the group as assigned in the Related Salesperson program (P42100). Since there are not load factors, fixed costs or margin limits and there have been no overrides the basic calculation is the multiple of the two percentages. So the individual salesman receives 20% of the 40% which works out to 8% of the order amount.

## 41.6.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Sales Update	Most commission information is calculated and written to F42005 at Sales Update (P42800). However, the Commission Amount (COMA) is not written to F42005 at this time; it is updated at Commission/Royalty Inquiry (P42120).
Preference Profiles	Commissions can default in from Customer Billing Instructions for the Ship To only, and are not item specific. With the Sales Commission Preference you can attach commission based on the Ship To or Sold To, and based on individual customers, customer groups, and items or item groups.
Advanced Pricing Rebates	Advanced Pricing Rebates are also used as a substitute for Commissions in JD Edwards World. To learn more about this functionality, see <i>Setting Up Rebate Adjustments the JD Edwards World Advanced Pricing Guide</i> .
Import/Export	This program supports Import/Export functionality. See <i>JD Edwards World Technical Tools Guide</i> for more information.





---

## Set Up Branch Sales Markups

This chapter contains the topic:

- [Section 42.1, "Setting Up Branch Sales Markups \(ECS\)."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose **Branch Sales Markups**

## 42.1 Setting Up Branch Sales Markups (ECS)

You use branch sales markups to set up the additional costs that are associated with an interbranch sales order. You enter an interbranch sales order to fill a sales order from a different branch/plant where you placed the order. For example, if your company sells from one location but fills and ships orders from another location, such as a central supply warehouse, you can have the order shipped from the central supply warehouse directly to the customer.

Companies can apply additional costs to interbranch sales. The additional costs that you set in the Branch Sales Markups program are the amounts that the branch/plant charges in addition to the base price.

You can use the Branch Sales Markups program to set the markup amount for any interbranch sales order. You can also define the relationship between the selling branch/plant and the supplying branch/plant. For example, if you are setting up the branch sales markup table from the perspective of a central supply warehouse, you can define the amount that you charge every location that places an order.

You can also set markup amounts that are specific to either an item or an item group. For example, whenever you fill an order that contains an item with an additional markup amount, the system adds the markup amount for that item to the order total. Or, whenever you fill an order that contains an item from a specific group, the system adds the markup amount for the group. You cannot set a markup for both an item and a markup for a group that includes the item.

### 42.1.1 Before You Begin

- Verify that you have set the processing option in Sales Order Entry to use the cost markup pricing method. See [Section 3.1, "Working with Interactive Sales Orders \(ECS\)."](#)
- Verify that you have set up item groups in user defined codes. See *Work with User Defined Codes* in the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.

**To set up branch sales markups**  
On Branch Sales Markups

**Figure 42-1 Branch Sales Markups screen**

3403 Branch Sales Markups

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
More Details  
Clear Screen

3403 Branch Sales Markups Supply/Demand

Action Code

From Branch/Plant 30 Memphis Distribution Center

Item Number

Sales Catalog Section

To Branch/Pl	Sls	Item	Percent	Description
20		CD-SINGLE LOAD	10.00	Valley Forge Distribution C
20		CD-5 DISK TRAY	10.00	Valley Forge Distribution C
10	DRP		.00	Modesto Distribution Center
20	DRP		.00	Valley Forge Distribution C
10	DR2		.00	Modesto Distribution Center
20	DR2		.00	Valley Forge Distribution C
40	DFS		10.00	Ft. Worth Distribution Ctr/

F24=More Keys

- Complete the following fields:
  - Supply/Demand
  - From Branch/Plant
  - To Branch/Plant
  - Sales Code
  - Item
  - Percent
- To set up a markup table for an item group, complete the following field:
  - Sales Catalog Section
- To set up an item-specific markup table, complete the following field:
  - Item
- Access the fold area.

**Figure 42–2 Branch Sales Markups (Fold Area) screen**

5. Complete the following fields:

- Effective From
- Effective Thru

Field	Explanation
Supply or Demand Plant	<p>This field allows you to view messages from the viewpoint of either the supply or demand branch. Changing this field from S to D also changes the Supply Plant field immediately below the Action Code field to Demand Plant.</p> <p>S – Supply branch/plant D – Demand branch/plant</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you are viewing messages for the supply branch/plant, the fold area shows branch/plants generating demand for each re-supply order.</p> <p>If you are viewing messages for the demand branch/plant, the fold area shows branch/plants to which each re-supply order is directed.</p>

Field	Explanation
From Branch/Plant	<p>A code that represents a high-level business unit. It can be used to reference a branch or plant that might have departments or jobs, which represent lower-level business units (data item MCU), subordinate to it. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Branch/Plant (MMCU)</li> <li>■ Dept A (MCU)</li> <li>■ Dept B (MCU)</li> <li>■ Job 123 (MCU)</li> </ul> <p>Business unit security is based on the higher-level business unit.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Depending on the entry in the Supply/Demand field, this field will be either the branch/plant receiving the items (the demand branch/plant) or the branch/plant producing the items (the supply branch/plant).</p>
To Branch/Plant	<p>A secondary or higher level business unit. Sometimes used to reference a branch or plant with several departments or jobs subordinate to it.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Branch/Plant - (MMCU)</li> <li>■ Dept A - (MCU)</li> <li>■ Dept B - (MCU)</li> <li>■ Job 123 - (MCU)</li> </ul> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>Depending on the entry in the Supply/Demand field, this field will be either the branch/plant receiving the items (the demand branch/plant) or the branch/plant producing the items (the supply branch/plant).</p>
Percent Markup	The percent markup is the percent the cost is to be marked up when the item is transferred from one branch to another.
Sales Catalog Section	One of ten category codes to be used for sales coding purposes. These codes can represent such things as color, material content, or use.
Effective From Date	<p>The default is the current system date. You can enter future effective dates so that the system plans for upcoming changes.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>On this form, this field shows, along with the Effective To field, the dates for which a branch relationship is effective. If the Effective From and Thru dates are no longer in effect, the relationship has expired, and the planning system plans for supply at one of the following alternate locations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The demand branch</li> <li>■ Another supply branch for which an effective from/through date has been defined</li> </ul>
Effective Thru Date	The default is December 31 of the default year defined in the Data Dictionary for Century Change Year. You can enter future effective dates so that the system plans for upcoming changes. Some forms display data based on the affectivity dates you enter.

## 42.1.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Marking up items for a demand branch	The procedure for marking up items for a demand branch is identical to that for marking up items for a supply branch. The variation is that the "from" and "to" fields are reversed.

**See Also:**

- [Chapter 16, "Enter an Interbranch Sales Order."](#)

## 42.1.3 Processing Options

See [Section 49.3, "Branch Relationship Revisions \(P3403\)."](#)



## Set Up Automatic Accounting Instructions

This chapter contains the topic:

- [Section 43.1, "Setting Up Automatic Accounting Instructions \(ECS\)."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 29

From ECS Sales Order Management Setup (G491041), choose Automatic Accounting Instructions

### 43.1 Setting Up Automatic Accounting Instructions (ECS)

Automatic accounting instructions (AAIs) are the user defined bridge between your day-to-day functions, chart of accounts, and financial reports. The system uses AAIs to determine how to distribute G/L entries that the system generates. For example, in the ECS Sales Order Management system, AAIs indicate how to record the transaction when you sell a stock item to a customer.

For distribution systems, you must create AAIs for each unique combination of company, transaction, document type, and G/L class that you anticipate using. Each AAI is associated to a specific G/L account that consists of a business unit, an object, and, optionally, a subsidiary.

The system stores AAIs in the Automatic Accounting Instructions Master table (F4095).

#### 43.1.1 AAIs Used in the ECS Sales Order Management System

AAI	Description
4220 (Revenue)	Provides the expense/cost amount to the cost of goods sold account. GL class code comes from Item/Branch/Location (P41024).
4221 (Deferred COGS)	Provides the journal entries for deferred COGS that were created during the Invoice Cycle Billing program. GL class code comes from Item/Branch/Location (P41024).
4230 (Revenue)	Provides the actual sales price of inventory in the sales revenue account. GL class code comes from Item/Branch/Location (P41024).

<b>AAI</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>4231 (Deferred Revenue)</b>	Provides the journal entries for deferred revenue that were created during the Invoice Cycle Billing program. GL class code comes from Item/Branch/Location.
<b>4232 (Unbilled A/R)</b>	Provides the journal entries for unbilled accounts receivable that were created during the Invoice Cycle Billing program. GL class code comes from Customer Master.
<b>4240 (Inventory)</b>	Credits the cost amount to an inventory account. GL class code comes from Item/Branch/Location.
<b>4241</b>	Specifies the inventory in transit account for entries created by the Load Confirm, Cycle Billing, and Update Customer Sales programs.
<b>4245 (A/R Trade)</b>	Debits the sales amount to an accounts receivable account. The system writes the accounts receivable offset entries to the general ledger only if the accounts receivable update option is turned off at sales update. GL class code comes from Customer Master.
<b>4250 (Tax Liability)</b>	Provides journal entries to tax liability accounts that were created during a sales update. GL class code comes from Tax Rate/ Area.
<b>4260 (Interbranch Revenue)</b>	Records interbranch revenue when processing options are set behind P4211 and P42800. GL class code comes from Item/Branch/Location.
<b>4270 (Price Adjustments)</b>	Provides the journal entries for individual price adjustments that were created during a sales update. GL class code comes from Price Adjustment Types definition.
<b>4280 (Rebates Payable)</b>	Provides the offset entries of accrued accounts. GL class code comes from price adjustment Types definition.
<b>4281</b>	Specifies the temperature gain/loss offset account.
<b>4282</b>	Specifies the temperature gain/loss account.

After you review and revise the existing AAIs for your business needs, you might need to set up additional AAI items.

The Distribution Automatic Account form shows each predefined AAI item and information about the document type, G/L class, and accounts that are affected by transactions.



**Figure 43–1 Distribution Automatic Account screen**

**40950 Distribution Automatic Account**

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
Write/View Memo  
Print AAI Tables  
Clear Screen

Action Code  
AAI Table Number: 4220  
Company  
Document Type

See Memo  
Cost of Goods Sold  
- SOC

Do G/L				Account Distribution		
Co.	Ty	Cls.	Description	Bus. Unit	Object	Sub
00000	SD	IN10	Direct Ship / Stock Inventor		6020	
00000	SD	IN20	Direct Ship / Inventory		6020	
00000	SD	IN30	Direct Ship / Components		6020	
00000	SD	FT60	Sales Order / Freight		6040	
00000	SD	IN10	Sales Order / Stock Inventor		6020	
00000	SD	IN20	Sales Order / Inventory		6020	
00000	SD	IN30	Sales Order / Components		6020	
00000	ST	IN10	Transfer Sale / Stock Inventor		6020	
00000	ST	IN20	Transfer Sale / Inventory		6020	
00000	ST	IN30	Transfer Sale / Components		6020	
00000	SZ	IN10	EDI Sales Orde / Stock Inventor	10	6020	STORE
00000	SZ	IN20	EDI Sales Orde / Inventory	20	6020	STORE
00000	SZ	IN30	EDI Sales Orde / Components	30	6020	STORE

F14=Memo    F21=Print    F24=More Keys

### 43.1.2 Before You Begin

- Set up address book numbers
- Set up companies
- Determine transaction types
- Set up document types
- Set up G/L class codes
- Determine the account numbers for recording transactions
- Set up Business Units
- Set up account master information

#### To set up AAIs

On Automatic Accounting Instructions.

Complete the following fields:

- Company
  - Document Type
  - General Ledger Class
  - Business Unit
  - Object
  - Subsidiary
1. Access the Distribution Automatic Account form for the AAI you want to set up. You may access via any set up Menu, Hidden Selection 29 to take you to a Set Up Menu, or Fast Path using DMAAI. Skip to or inquire on an AAI number and take option 1 or click to access AAI Revisions.

## 2. On Distribution Automatic Account (P40950), complete the following fields:

Field	Explanation
Company	<p>A code that identifies a specific organization, fund, entity, and so on. This code must already exist in the Company Constants table (F0010). It must identify a reporting entity that has a complete balance sheet. At this level, you can have intercompany transactions.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can use company 00000 for default values, such as dates and automatic accounting instructions (AAIs). You cannot use it for transaction entries.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>In the inquiry field at the top of the form, the asterisk (*) is the default value. It causes the system to display AAIs for all companies.</p>
Document Type	<p>A user defined code (system 00/type DT) that identifies the origin and purpose of the transaction.</p> <p>JD Edwards World reserves several prefixes for document types, such as vouchers, invoices, receipts, and timesheets.</p> <p>The reserved document type prefixes for codes are:</p> <p>P – Accounts payable documents</p> <p>R – Accounts receivable documents</p> <p>T – Payroll documents</p> <p>I – Inventory documents</p> <p>O – Order processing documents</p> <p>J – General ledger /joint interest billing documents</p> <p>The system creates offsetting entries as appropriate for these document types when you post batches.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>In the inquiry field at the top of the form, the asterisk (*) is the default and causes the system to display all document types.</p>
G/L Class	<p>A user defined code that identifies the G/L offset that you want the system to use when it searches for the account to which it will post the transaction. If you do not want to specify a class code, you can enter **** (four asterisks) in this field.</p> <p>The table of Automatic Accounting Instructions (AAIs) allows you to predefine classes of automatic offset accounts for the Inventory, Purchasing, and Sales Order Management systems.</p> <p>The system can generate accounting entries based upon a single transaction. As an example, a single sale of a stock item can trigger the generation of accounting entries similar to these:</p> <p>Sales-Stock (Debit) xxxxx.xx</p> <p>A/R Stock Sales (Credit) xxxxx.xx</p> <p>Stock Inventory (Debit) xxxxx.xx</p> <p>Stock COGS (Credit) xxxxx.xx</p>

Field	Explanation
Bus. Unit	<p>An alphanumeric field that identifies a separate entity within a business for which you want to track costs. For example, a business unit might be a warehouse location, job, project, work center, or branch/plant.</p> <p>You can assign a business unit to a voucher, invoice, fixed asset, and so on, for purposes of responsibility reporting. For example, the system provides reports of open accounts payable and accounts receivable by business units to track equipment by responsible department.</p> <p>Security for this field can prevent you from locating business units for which you have no authority.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The system uses this value for Journal Entries if you do not enter a value in the AAI table.</p>
Object Account	<p>The object account portion of a general ledger account. The term "object account" refers to the breakdown of the Cost Code (for example, labor, materials, and equipment) into subcategories (for example, dividing labor into regular time, premium time, and burden). The object account is a character field and is left justified when displayed in programs and on the database. Be aware that adding leading digits to a number creates a different entry. For example, entering 000456 is not the same as entering 456.</p>
Sub	<p>A subdivision of an object account. Subsidiary accounts include more detailed records of the accounting activity for an object account.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>If you leave this field blank, the system uses the value you entered on the work order in the Cost Code field.</p>

### 43.1.3 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Adding memo text	You can enter memo text for each AAI table on the AAI Number Text window.
Creating AAI record types	You use the Distribution AAI Record Types form to create new account lines to display on the Automatic Accounting Instructions form.
Directing freight amounts to the correct G/L accounts	To direct freight amounts from the confirmation process to the correct G/L account, you must set up the inventory, COGS, and revenue AAIs using the G/L class for freight and the document types to which you can apply freight. The result is a single entry to a revenue account for the amount of the freight.
Entering multi-currency transactions	<p>The system creates two records for each transaction:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Domestic cash ledger</li> <li>Currency ledger based on current exchange rate</li> </ul> <p>You can view the different transaction amounts for each currency by either changing the currency setting from "domestic" to "foreign" on applicable forms or by changing the processing options.</p>

Topic	Description
<b>System search sequence for locating AAI's</b>	<p>AAI's can be any unique combination of company number, document type and GL class code. When a specific AAI cannot be identified based on these three fields, defaults for company number (00000) and GL class code (****) will be used in a specific sequence to try and locate an AAI for the given document type.</p> <p>If the initial search for an AAI fails, the first step is to replace the G/L class code with **** and then repeat the search.</p> <p>If this fails, then the original G/L class code is restored and the company number is replaced with 00000 and the search is repeated.</p> <p>If this fails then both the original company number and G/L class code are replaced with 00000 and **** respectively and the search is repeated.</p> <p>Failure on this search results in an error being reported.</p>
<b>Business unit is allowed to be left blank during setup</b>	<p>The business unit is optional during AAI setup. If it is left blank it will usually be taken from the branch/plant on the transaction.</p> <p>The exceptions to this are:</p> <p>Sales Update (P42800) - Processing option 5 determines how the program will deal with an AAI with a blank business unit. It can either set it to the subsequent cost center (project number on the business unit), the branch/plant on the order or the sold-to address book number.</p> <p>Project number of business unit - A project number, also called a subsequent cost center can be assigned to a business unit in Revise Single Business Unit (Menu G09411, option 4). If this is populated, it will be used as the business unit portion of the account when the business unit on the AAI is blank.</p> <p>Revenue Business Unit Preference - This preference facility can be used to populate the Header Business Unit (EMCU) field in F4211. This field is used as the business unit portion of the account for AAIs 4220 and 4230.</p> <p>Flexible Sales Accounting - The business unit portion of the account number can be populated using flexible sales accounting, (P40296 on G4241).</p>

# Part IV

---

## Advanced & Technical

This part contains these chapters:

- [Chapter 44, "Overview to Advanced and Technical Operations,"](#)
- [Chapter 45, "Purge Data,"](#)
- [Chapter 46, "Work with the Subsystem."](#)



---

## Overview to Advanced and Technical Operations

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 44.1, "Objectives,"](#)
- [Section 44.2, "About Advanced and Technical Operations \(ECS\)."](#)

### 44.1 Objectives

- To use the advanced features of the ECS Sales Order Management system
- To maximize your system efficiency and performance by increasing storage space, updating information, and automating certain processes

### 44.2 About Advanced and Technical Operations (ECS)

Advanced and technical operations for the ECS Sales Order Management system include the following tasks:

- Purging data
- Working with the subsystem

When data becomes obsolete or you need more disk space, you can use purge programs to remove data from files.

You can automate some processes, such as printing documents or running required procedures, by setting up a subsystem to run them.





This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 45.1, "Purging Data for ECS Sales Order Management,"](#)
- [Section 45.2, "Running General Purges for ECS Sales Order Management,"](#)
- [Section 45.3, "Running Special Purges \(ECS\)."](#)

#### **Navigation**

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 27

From ECS Sales Order Advanced and Technical Ops (G491031), choose Data File Purges

From Data File Purges (G42312), choose an option

## **45.1 Purging Data for ECS Sales Order Management**

When data becomes obsolete or you need more disk space, you can use purge programs to remove data from files.

Purging data consists of:

- Specifying the information to delete
- Running the purge program
- Running the file reorganization program to rebuild the file structure

---

---

**Caution:** You must know the proper procedures and consequences of purging data to avoid serious damage to your system and data. Purging data is typically performed by a system administrator or operations personnel. It is important that only those employees who understand the purging process and its results are allowed access to this procedure.

---

---

You can run two types of purges:

- Run general purges
- Run special purges

General purges are DREAM Writer versions of the JD Edwards World general purge program that removes data from a specified file. You run these purges when you want to remove a large amount of data.

JD Edwards World provides special purges for removing data from files where the selection criteria needs to be more specific. Special purges are DREAM Writer programs that have predefined criteria that the system checks before removing any data so you avoid removing associated data located in other files.

You run these general and special purge programs in the ECS Sales Order Management system only if you want to manually purge the associated tables. You can instruct the system to automatically purge most of these tables during end of day processing. You can set the processing options for the Update Customer Sales program to automatically purge the following tables:

- Sales Order Header (F4201)
- Sales Order Detail (F4211)
- Sales Order Detail - Tag History (F49219)
- Text Detail Lines (F4314)
- Price Adjustment History (F4074)

### 45.1.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
<b>Customer Service Inquiry (P42045)</b>	To minimize the size of the Sales Order files, the concept of 'purging to history' may be implemented by either the Sales Update program (P42800) or by running Special purge programs. During this process, completed sales orders from the Sales Order Header and Detail files (F4201 and F4211) are moved to their respective history files (F42019 and F42119). The Customer Service Inquiry program reads both sets of files enabling both active and historical sales orders to be viewed in a single program.
<b>Customizing a purge</b>	You can create a customized purge by changing the data selection to fit your needs. For example, you could use a range of fiscal years rather than all dates.
<b>Processing options</b>	<p>All of the DREAM Writer versions of the P00PURGE program and many of the Special Purge programs have the following two processing options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Save Purged Records - This determines whether deleted records are copied to an archive file in a designated purge library. JD Edwards World strongly recommends that this option always be set to 1 so that there is an opportunity to recover the deleted records.</li><li>■ Reorganize File - This tells the purge program whether to reorganize the physical file that has just been purged. Since the space occupied by deleted records is not recovered until the file is reorganized, you can choose to let the purge program do the job or run the IBM command (RGZPFM) manually at a later date.</li></ul>

Topic	Description
Technical considerations	<p>The following technical considerations apply to both general and special purges:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If File Output Type on the DREAM Writer Additional Parameters form for the DREAM Writer version you are using is set to 1 (for OPNQRYF), you must also set the Open for Delete (Y/N) field to Y. Also, you must specify at least one field in Data Sequencing.</li> <li>■ If File Output Type on the DREAM Writer Additional Parameters form for the DREAM Writer version you are using is set to 2 (for logical file), the purge will reorganize the purged file based on the logical file that the system builds. This might increase the time that the system takes to perform the file reorganization.</li> </ul>
Restoring purged records	<p>If you have used the save purged records option you may in very exceptional circumstances restore purged data. Prior to copying the purged records back in to your data files ensure you have created a copy or backup of the specific data files.</p> <p>The purge library created by the purge program will have been named by the following convention: JD Edwards World followed by the purge date in MMDDYY format (e.g. for a purge run on April 15, 2017 would create a library named JDE041517.</p> <p>To identify purge libraries on your system, use the work library (WRKLIB) command with 'JD Edwards World*' as the library parameter. The Text Description for the library will also inform you whether the library was created to contain purged data.</p> <p>To copy the purged records back use the copy file (CPYF) command specifying '*ADD' in the 'Replace or add records' parameter.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> File restore operations should only be performed by experienced technical staff.</p>

### 45.1.2 Before You Begin

- Back up the files that will be affected
- Determine the data you want to purge
- Verify that no users are working with the data that you want to purge and reorganize

#### See Also:

- [Section 21.1, "Updating Customer Sales \(ECS\),"](#)
- Updating Customer Sales in the *JD Edwards World Sales Order Management Guide*.

## 45.2 Running General Purges for ECS Sales Order Management

General purges for the ECS Sales Order Management system include:

- Sales Order Detail purge
- Sales Order Detail History purge
- Sales Order Ledger purge

General purges are DREAM Writer versions of the JD Edwards World general purge program that removes data from a specified file. You run general purges when you want to remove a large amount of data.

You can create DREAM Writer versions of the general purge program to purge data from any JD Edwards World file. However, JD Edwards World recommends that you do not use general purges for files that have their own special purge programs. General purges are not designed for files that have associated data in other files. Running a general purge for such files could cause you to lose data.

The general purges remove records with a next status of 999, or closed, from the specified file.

## 45.2.1 Creating a New DREAM Writer Version for a Purge

Before creating a new DREAM Writer version to purge a file, verify that a special purge program does not exist for that file. The ledger and balances files require special processing to select records. Those that can be purged have their own specific purge programs.

To create a new DREAM Writer version to purge a file, access the Versions List for P00PURGE. In this example, a P00PURGE version is being created for the Item Location file (F41021) from an existing version that purges the Item History file (F4115).

### To Create a New DREAM Writer Version for a Purge

On Versions List.

**Figure 45–1** Version List screen

Version	Description	User	Chg Date
TEST	Commitment Audit Trail TEST (F43199)	RF77630	11/01/06
ZJOE0000	Purge JE Tax Batch File (F091121)	DEMO	02/01/01
ZJOE0001	Item History (F4115)	DEMO	10/11/95
ZJOE0002	S.O. Detail (F4211)	DEMO	03/05/93
ZJOE0003	S.O. Detail History (F42119)	DEMO	06/26/96
ZJOE0004	S.O. Ledger (F42199)	DEMO	06/26/96
ZJOE0005	P.O. Detail (F4311)	DEMO	08/12/93
ZJOE0006	P.O. Receiver Detail (F43121)	DEMO	01/05/93
ZJOE0007	P.O. Ledger (F43199)	DEMO	01/05/93
ZJOE0008	Purge Sales/Use/VAT Tax File (F0018)	DEMO	07/21/94
ZJOE0009	Purge R/R Batch Cash Application (F0312)	DEMO	07/21/94
ZJOE0010	Purge A/P Batch File (F041121)	DEMO	07/21/94
ZJOE0011	Purge Address Book Batch File (F010121)	DEMO	07/21/94
ZJOE0012	Purge Journal Entry Batch File (F091121)	DEMO	02/07/96
ZJOE0013	Purge R/R Batch File (F031121)	DEMO	02/07/96
ZJOE0014	Item Ledger Detail (F4111)	DEMO	07/21/94

1. Enter a 3 next to the DEMO version of Item History.

**Figure 45-2 DREAM Writer Version Copy screen**

2. Enter a version title that identifies the new purge being created.

**Figure 45-3 Additional Parameters screen**

3. Complete the following fields to reflect the new file:
  - Based on File
  - Format Name
4. Set Processing Options as desired.
5. Review the Data Selection.

**Figure 45–4 Data Selection screen**

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Return to Versions List  
More information  
Update with Redisplay  
Return to Previous Pane  
Display All Data Fields

98302 Data Selection Form ID P00PURGE  
Version F41021

Item Location (F41021)

I	Explanation	Rel.	Value
N	Item Number (Short)	EQ	00005947
Seq: 007 And/Or: R Name: IMITH Optional:		Y BU Edit: N Allow *ALL:	Y
And	Business Unit	EQ	*ALL
Seq: 008 And/Or: R Name: IMNCU Optional:		Y BU Edit: Y Allow *ALL:	Y

F4=Extra Data F5=Updt w/Redisplay F16=Display All Data Fields

6. Note that the existing selection criteria from the Item History has been retained. These fields can be removed by entering N in the Include in Selection field and then pressing F5 to update.
7. Press F16 to Display All Data Fields of the Based on File field you selected to create your data selection. Enter a Y against the specific fields you want to include.

**Figure 45–5 Data Selection (All Data Fields) screen**

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Return to Versions List  
More information  
Update with Redisplay  
Return to Previous Pane  
Display All Data Fields

98302 Data Selection Form ID P00PURGE  
Version F41021

Item Location (F41021)

I	Explanation	Rel.	Value
N	Item Number (Short)	EQ	*ALL
Seq: 009 And/Or: R Name: LIITH Optional:		Y BU Edit: N Allow *ALL:	Y
And	Business Unit	EQ	*ALL
Seq: 010 And/Or: R Name: LIMCU Optional:		Y BU Edit: Y Allow *ALL:	Y
And	Location	EQ	*ALL
Seq: 011 And/Or: R Name: LILOCN Optional:		Y BU Edit: N Allow *ALL:	Y
And	Lot/ON	EQ	*ALL
Seq: 012 And/Or: R Name: LILOTN Optional:		Y BU Edit: N Allow *ALL:	Y
And	Primary Location (P/S)	EQ	*ALL
Seq: 013 And/Or: R Name: LIPBIN Optional:		Y BU Edit: N Allow *ALL:	Y
And	U/L Category	EQ	*ALL
Seq: 014 And/Or: R Name: LILOPT Optional:		Y BU Edit: N Allow *ALL:	Y
And	Lot Status Code	EQ	*ALL
Seq: 015 And/Or: R Name: LILOTS Optional:		Y BU Edit: N Allow *ALL:	Y
And	Last Receipt Date	EQ	*ALL
Seq: 016 And/Or: R Name: LILRCJ Optional:		Y BU Edit: N Allow *ALL:	Y

F4=Extra Data F5=Updt w/Redisplay F16=Display All Data Fields

8. As with data selection, the sequence fields from the Item History version is retained. Remove these in a similar manner and then press F16 to Display All Data Fields of the Based on File field you selected to create your data sequencing criteria.



**Figure 45–6 Data Sequence Set-up screen**

Description	Seq
Item Number (Short)	001
Opt: <input type="checkbox"/> N Asc/Desc: A Name: IMETH	
Item Number (Short)	
Opt: <input type="checkbox"/> F Asc/Desc: R Name: LIITH	
Business Unit	
Opt: <input type="checkbox"/> Y Asc/Desc: R Name: LINC	
Location	
Opt: <input type="checkbox"/> Y Asc/Desc: R Name: LILOCN	
Lot/SN	
Opt: <input type="checkbox"/> Y Asc/Desc: R Name: LILOTN	
Primary Location (P/S)	
Opt: <input type="checkbox"/> Y Asc/Desc: R Name: LIPOIN	
U/L Category	
Opt: <input type="checkbox"/> Y Asc/Desc: R Name: LILOPT	
Lot Status Code	
Opt: <input type="checkbox"/> Y Asc/Desc: R Name: LILOTS	

- Enter the numerical sequence for the fields of your version. After you press Enter, your version is created and you are returned to the versions list display.

## 45.2.2 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Sales Order Detail purge	<p>You specify whether the system writes closed order lines to the Sales Order Detail History file and leaves only canceled order lines in the Sales Order Detail file when you run the Update Customer Sales program.</p> <p>You use the Sales Order Detail purge to remove records from the Sales Order Detail file. Optionally, you can move the records from the Sales Order Detail file to the Sales Order Detail History file.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 45.3.5, "Running Move Sales Order Detail to History (ECS)."</a></p>

## 45.2.3 Processing Options

See [Section 50.1, "Batch File Purge \(P00PURGE\)."](#)

## 45.3 Running Special Purges (ECS)

JD Edwards World provides special purges for removing data from files where the selection criteria needs to be more specific. Special purges are DREAM Writer programs that have predefined criteria that the system checks before removing any data so that you avoid removing associated data that is located in other files.

Running special purges includes:

- Running the Sales Order Header purge
- Running the Extended Text purge

- Running the Batch Order Files purge
- Running Move Sales Order Detail to History

### 45.3.1 Running the Sales Order Header Purge (ECS)

You use the Sales Order Header purge to purge sales order header records from the Sales Order Header file. The system purges records from the Sales Order Header file only if no open detail lines with a matching order type and order number combination exist in the Sales Order Detail file. In addition to purging records, you can optionally move information to the Sales Order Header History file (F42019). You specify in the processing options whether you want to move information. Since this program only selects header records without matching detail records, it is advisable to run it immediately after the corresponding detail purge program.

#### 45.3.1.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Purging header information during sales update	You can purge sales order header information from the Sales Order Header file and move it to the Sales Order Header History file during sales update (P42800). See <a href="#">Section 21.1, "Updating Customer Sales (ECS)."</a>

#### 45.3.1.2 Processing Options

See [Section 50.2, "Purge Sales Order Header File \(F4201\) \(P4201P\)."](#)

### 45.3.2 Running the Sales Order Text Line Purge (ECS)

This Sales Order Text Line program (P42960) is not exactly a purge program in that it does not delete any records. Specifically, the program reads through the Sales Order Detail file (F4211) looking for Text lines (Line type is equal to 'T') that do not have any associated non-text lines. Each record found that matches this criteria is set to closed by having its next status set to 999. These detail records can then be purged by either the general or special Sales Order Detail purges.

### 45.3.3 Running the Extended Text Purge (ECS)

You use the Extended Text purge to delete specific information from the Text Detail Lines file (F4314).

This purge checks the Sales Order Detail and the Purchase Order Detail files for open detail lines with matching order type and order number combinations. One of the following occurs:

- If the system does not find matching records, it deletes the extended text from the Text Detail Lines file.
- If the system finds matching records, it deletes the extended text from the Text Detail Lines file only if the matching detail files have a status of 999.



### 45.3.3.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Purging active order lines	<p>The Extended Text purge removes closed text lines only if all other lines on the order are closed. Order lines whose status is not 999 cannot be purged.</p> <p>You can use the Sales Order Text Lines program to change the status of text lines to 999 (closed) on orders with no open detail lines. You use this program only if you have not set up the processing options for the Update Customer Sales program to purge text lines for closed orders.</p>

### 45.3.3.2 Processing Options

See [Section 50.3, "Extended Text Line Deletion - F4314 \(P4314P\)."](#)

## 45.3.4 Running the Batch Order Files Purge (ECS)

You can delete processed sales orders from the batch receiver files by using the Batch Order Files purge. The system selects only records with Y in the Processed (Y/N) field of the batch receiver files.

The following files are purged by this program:

- Batch Receiver File - Order Headings (F4001Z)
- Batch Receiver File - Order Details (F4011Z)

This purge does not remove records from the Destination Quantity file (F4012Z) or the Unmappable Data file (F4014Z). Use the general purge program to remove data from these files.

### 45.3.4.1 Processing Options

See [Section 50.4, "Recurring Batch Order Entry \(P4001Z\)."](#)

## 45.3.5 Running Move Sales Order Detail to History (ECS)

You run the Move Sales Order Detail to History program to purge detail lines with a status of 999 from the Sales Order Detail file (F4211) and move them to the Sales Order Detail History file (F42119).

You can run this program when you run the Update Customer Sales program.

### 45.3.5.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Price Adjustment History (F4074)	If the processing option is set to purge the Price Adjustment History file, the data is lost since there is no archive file to receive its data.

#### See Also:

- [Section 21.1, "Updating Customer Sales \(ECS\)."](#)

### 45.3.5.2 Processing Options

See [Section 50.5, "Purge Details to History \(P42996\)."](#)



---

## Work with the Subsystem

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 46.1, "Working with the Subsystem \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 46.2, "Defining the Subsystem \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 46.3, "Starting Jobs in the Subsystem \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 46.4, "Stopping Jobs in the Subsystem \(ECS\),"](#)
- [Section 46.5, "Running the Subsystem in Sleeper."](#)

### Navigation

From ECS Sales Order Management (G4910), enter 27

From ECS Sales Order Advanced and Technical Ops (G491031), choose an option

## 46.1 Working with the Subsystem (ECS)

You can automate some processes, such as printing documents or running required procedures, by setting up a subsystem to run them.

Your system might comprise one or more subsystems. You use subsystems to run specific sets of jobs, such as a group of print jobs. Subsystems create a suitable environment in which those jobs can run. It is easier to control a group of jobs through subsystems because you can individually start and stop subsystems.

To define the subsystem, you specify:

- The version of the program you want to run
- The environment in which the system should run the program

You use the Start Subsystem program to begin running specified jobs in the subsystem.

You must stop the subsystem before you perform end-of-day processing. You can also stop one or more jobs in the subsystem at any time.

### 46.1.1 Before You Begin

- Define default output queues for print programs. See *Assigning Default Print Queues* in the *JD Edwards World Inventory Management Guide*.

## 46.2 Defining the Subsystem (ECS)

You define the subsystem to run specific sets of jobs, such as printing documents or running required procedures. To define the subsystem, you specify:

- The version of the program you want to run
- The environment in which the system should run the program

### To define the subsystem

On Define Subsystem

**Figure 46–1 Define Subsystem screen**

Program	Version	Description	Environment	Status
J425201	XJ0E0001		MASTER91	
J425655	ZJ0E0001		MASTER91	
J435062	XJ0E0001		MASTER91	
P492112	XJ0E0001	Batch Sales Order	MASTER91	
P42997	XJ0E0001	Batch Commitment -	MASTER91	
P49438	XJ0E0001	Picking Ticket - P	MASTER91	
P49448	XJ0E0001	Loading Ticket - P	MASTER91	
P49445	XJ0E0001	Packaged Loading M	MASTER91	

Opt: 1=Start 2=Stop 3=SVR 4=O/W F6=Start All F23=Stop All F24=More

1. For each program you want to run through the subsystem, complete the following fields:
  - Version
  - Environment
2. Access the detail fold area.

**Figure 46–2 Define Subsystem (Fold Area) screen**

3. To specify a library, complete the following optional field:

- Library

Field	Explanation
Program	<p>The RPG program name defined in the Software Versions Repository Master table. See <i>Work with the Software Versions Repository</i> in the <i>JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide</i>.</p> <p>T SS XXX</p> <p>T – Specific member ID number</p> <p>SS – System number (for example, 01 for Address Book)</p> <p>XXX – Member type (for example, P for Program, R for Report, and so on)</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>This code identifies the print program that you want to define within the subsystem.</p>
Version	<p>Identifies a group of items that the system can process together, such as reports, business units, or subledgers.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>The DREAM Writer version of the print control or gantry program identified in the program field.</p>
Environment	<p>The name associated with a specific list of libraries. The J98INITA initial program uses these library list names to control environments that a user can sign on to. These configurations of library lists are maintained in the Library List Master table (F0094).</p>

Field	Explanation
Parameter 1	<p>A generalized 10 character parameter value passed to a called program.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>For Gantry Subsystem:</p> <p>You must enter the name of the library where the Download Data Queue (DTAQGD) exists. For example, *LIBL.</p>
Length 1	<p>The length of the parameter which the called program is expecting.</p> <p><i>Form-specific information</i></p> <p>For Gantry Subsystem:</p> <p>You must enter a value of 10.</p>

### 46.2.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Displaying specific subsystems	The Define Subsystem form displays subsystem information about the subsystem you specified in the processing options. If you did not specify a subsystem, or if you want to display a different subsystem, enter the subsystem name in the Subsystem ID field.
Multiple environments	It is not recommended that you set up subsystems in multiple environments since they share the same data queue. This may cause data from one environment to be processed by the subsystem in a different environment.

## 46.3 Starting Jobs in the Subsystem (ECS)

You use the Start Subsystem program to begin running specified jobs.

You can start the subsystem for:

- A specific program
- All programs

### To start jobs in the subsystem

On Define Subsystem

For each job you want to start, complete the following field:

- Option

The status field displays \*ACTIVE for each program you started.

### 46.3.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Starting all jobs in the subsystem	<p>You can start all jobs in the subsystem:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ By choosing the function that starts all jobs in the subsystem from the Define Subsystem form.</li> <li>■ By choosing the Start Subsystem selection from the menu.</li> </ul>

## 46.4 Stopping Jobs in the Subsystem (ECS)

You must stop the subsystem before you perform end-of-day processing. You can also stop one or more jobs in the subsystem at any time.

You can stop jobs in the subsystem for:

- A specific program
- All programs

### To stop jobs in the subsystem

On Define Subsystem

For each job you want to stop, complete the following field:

- Option

This stops the job in the subsystem, but the subsystem is still active.

### 46.4.1 What You Should Know About

Topic	Description
Stopping all jobs	<p>You can stop all jobs in the subsystem:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ By choosing the function to stop all jobs from the Define Subsystem form</li> <li>■ By choosing the Stop Subsystem menu option</li> </ul> <p>Either method stops all jobs, but the subsystem remains active.</p>
Stopping the subsystem	<p>When you use the Stop All function on Define Subsystem, you stop all jobs, but you do not stop the subsystem. To stop the subsystem, use the Stop Subsystem menu option and verify that you run the version defined to both stop all jobs and stop the subsystem.</p>

### 46.4.2 Processing Options

See [Section 50.6, "Start/Stop Subsystem \(P40420\)."](#)

## 46.5 Running the Subsystem in Sleeper

You can set up the jobs to start and stop subsystems in Sleeper. First, identify the DREAM Writer versions of Start/Stop Subsystem (P40420) that you are going to use. Second, navigate to Unattended Operations Setup via menu G9643.

### To define a Sleeper Job

On Unattended Operations Setup.

**Figure 46–3 Unattended Operations Setup screen**

95101 Unattended Operations Set

Tools Help

ORACLE JD Edwards World

URL Document Email World Resources Support

Field Sensitive Help  
Display Error Message  
Display Functions  
Exit Program  
Detail Information  
Software Inventory Search  
Clear Screen

95101 Unattended Operations Setup

Job Type ☐

System Code

Job to Execute

Obj Library

User ID

Run Date

Run Time

.....To Execute.....Run.....

Program	Description	Library	Date	Time	SMTWIFS	F	O	Suspend
J40420		JDF00J91	07/13/10	00:00:00	YYYY	0		

System  Jobq  Outq  Priority: Job/Output

User  Libl  Form  Vers

Program Parameter 1  Length

Program Parameter 2  Length

Program Parameter 3  Length

Program Parameter 4  Length

Program Parameter 5  Length

Program Parameter 6  Length

Program Parameter 7  Length

Program Parameter 8  Length

F4=Details F5=Software Inventory Search

For each version of the Start/Stop Subsystem program you want to run complete the following fields:

- Program
- Library (the object library in your environment)
- Run Date & Time
- Days of the week if daily
- Frequency
- System
- User (the ID of the user who normally runs the Start/Stop Subsystem job)
- Libl (the environment name)
- Vers (the DREAM Writer version that is used for starting or stopping the subsystem)



# Part V

---

## Processing Options

This part contains these chapters:

- [Chapter 47, "Daily Processing Options,"](#)
- [Chapter 48, "Periodic Processing Options,"](#)
- [Chapter 49, "Setup Processing Options,"](#)
- [Chapter 50, "Advanced & Technical Processing Options."](#)



---

## Daily Processing Options

This chapter contains these topics:

- Section 47.1, "Sales Order Entry (P4211),"
- Section 47.2, "Recurring Batch Order Entry (P4001Z),"
- Section 47.3, "Batch Edit - Creation (P40211Z),"
- Section 47.4, "Check Price & Availability (P40721),"
- Section 47.5, "Item Availability (P41202),"
- Section 47.6, "Supply & Demand (P4021),"
- Section 47.7, "Repost Sales Orders & Release Future Commits (P42995),"
- Section 47.8, "Credit Check Processing (P42050),"
- Section 47.9, "Customer Service Inquiry (P42045),"
- Section 47.10, "Open Sales Orders by Customer (P42620),"
- Section 47.11, "Print Backorders to Fill (P42590),"
- Section 47.12, "Sales Ledger & Credit Orders from History (P42025),"
- Section 47.13, "Sales Ledger Detail (P42600),"
- Section 47.14, "Sales Analysis Summary (P42611),"
- Section 47.15, "Online Invoice (P42230),"
- Section 47.16, "Release Held Orders (P42070),"
- Section 47.17, "Release Backorders (P42117),"
- Section 47.18, "Release Backorders - Batch (P42118),"
- Section 47.19, "Order Release (P42011),"
- Section 47.20, "Direct Ship Order Entry (P4243),"
- Section 47.21, "Transfer Order Entry (P4242),"
- Section 47.22, "Bulk Load Confirmation - Manual Invoice (P49510),"
- Section 47.23, "Packaged Load Confirmation (P49530),"
- Section 47.24, "Sales Order Speed Release (P76A42040),"
- Section 47.25, "Cycle Billing - Final (P49700),"
- Section 47.26, "Periodic Invoice (P49870),"
- Section 47.27, "Daily/Periodic Invoice (P49880),"

- [Section 47.28, "Sales Update \(P42800\),"](#)
- [Section 47.29, "Print Sales Journal \(P42810\),"](#)
- [Section 47.30, "General Ledger Post \(P09800\),"](#)
- [Section 47.31, "General Journal By Batch \(P09301\)."](#)

## 47.1 Sales Order Entry (P4211)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
SALES ORDER DEFAULT VALUES:	
1. Document Type (Required)	Enter the document type relevant to this particular version of Sales Order Entry. You will likely have multiple versions of P4211 to accommodate each of the different document types you use, for example, sales orders, blanket orders, quote orders, ECS orders, and so on.
2. Line Type (Optional)	Enter the line type to default to all order lines; otherwise, the system retrieves the line type from Item Branch Information (P41026) or Item Master Information (P4101) set up for the item number. You can also manually enter a line type.
3. Beginning Status (Optional)	
4. Override Next Status (Optional)	
5. Unit of Measure (Optional)	
6. Line Number Increment (Optional)	
7. Reason Code (Optional)	
UNIT OF MEASURE DEFAULT VALUES:	
8. Enter '1' to use the Pricing UOM as the default Transaction UOM. If left blank, the Primary UOM will be used instead.	
WORK ORDER DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
Enter the version for each program. If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used:	
9. Work Order Entry (P48013)	
10. WO Server for Sale Order (X4201WO)	
ORDER DUPLICATION DEFAULT VALUES:	
11. Document Type	Enter the document type for new orders you create when you press F21 to copy an existing order.
12. Beginning Status	Enter the Last Status for new orders you create when you press F21 to copy an existing order.
13. Enter text duplication selection	
'1' to copy line text	
'2' to copy line and order text	
'3' to copy order text	
ADDRESS BOOK DEFAULT VALUES:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
14. Address Book default branch.	
'1' - Ship To Address	
'2' - Sold To Address	
' ' - User default location	
DOWNLOAD HEADER INFORMATION:	
15. Enter '1' to automatically load header values to the detail lines after a change.	
If left blank, it must be done manually.	
PROMPTING CONTROL:	
16. Enter the Screen Format:	
1 = Quantity, Item, Price	
2 = Quantity, Item, Description	
3 = Item, Quantity, Price	
4 = ECS format	
5 = Aggregates format (If left blank, format 1 is used.)	
Enter a '1' to:	
17. Display Headings first.	
18. Be prompted to accept the order.	Set this to blank if you enter configured items.
<b>Note:</b> Two-cycle order entry is not recommended for configured items.	Two-cycle order entry is not valid for configured items as the configuration is recorded on the first cycle.
19. Allow the addition of a Customer Master record, if not set up.	Set this to 1 to have the Customer Master screen (P01053) automatically appear when you enter a sold-to or ship-to address for which master information does not currently exist. If you don't set this option to 1, you can add an order without Customer Master information. However, the system will error on the order at Sales Update (P42800).
20. Load Online Invoice information before the order is accepted.	
21. Enter which Item Search screen is to be used to return items:	The option you choose determines the item search screen that displays when you press F1 on the Item Number field in the detail screen. A blank in this option prompts the P40ITM1 window. Option 1 prompts the P40ITM2 window, and option 2 prompts the P41200 screen.
1 = Item Search window allowing the return of multiple items	
2 = Full Item Search screen with Query capabilities	
(If left blank, the Item Search window allowing the return of a single item will be used.)	
ORDER HOLD CODES:	
22. Customer Credit Checking	
23. Order Margin Checking	
24. Order Line Margin Checking	
25. Order Minimum Value Checking	
26. Order Maximum Value Checking	
27. Partial Order Hold	
28. Product Allocation Hold	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
LINE CONTROL STATUS:	
29. Enter the next status code beyond which a detail line cannot be changed.	
If left blank, no restriction will be put on the changing of a line.	
FIELD DISPLAY CONTROL:	
Enter '1' to protect or '2' to suppress	
30. Cost Fields	
31. Price Fields	
Enter '1' to protect the following:	
32. Status Codes	
33. Price adjustment driver fields	Set this to 1 to protect the following fields: Branch, Adjustment Schedule, Trade Discount, Payment Terms, Payment Instructions, and Item Price Group. The value also protects freight charge related fields including Shipping Commodity Code, Shipping Condition, Rate Code, Route, Stop and Zone.
34. Sold To field on the header	
Enter a '1' to suppress the following:	
35. Closed Detail Lines	
36. Credit Card Information	
37. Freight and Carrier Information	
38. Commission Information	
CREDIT ORDER PROCESSING:	
39. Enter the status code to select when retrieving credit orders.	This option is relevant to the Credit Orders from History program (P42045).
40. Enter '1' if the previous status is the last status. If left blank it will be the Next Status.	This option is relevant to the Credit Orders from History program (P42045).
CROSS REFERENCE INFORMATION:	
41. Enter the Cross Reference Type for:	
- Substitute Items	
- Associated Items	
- Replacement Items	
42. Enter '1' to use the substitute item's Unit Price.	
If left blank, the original item's price will be used to order the substitutes.	
KIT PROCESSING:	
43. Enter '1' to suppress Kit Component lines.	
44. Enter the version of Kit Inquiry to call.	
If left blank, version ZJDE0001 will be called.	
45. Enter '1' to suppress availability information in the Kit Window.	
AVAILABILITY CHECKING:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
<p>46. Enter '1' to be notified of an automatic backorder or cancel.</p> <p>Enter '2' to be notified but not create the backorder or cancel.</p> <p>Enter '3' to create the backorder or cancel automatically and update the order without issuing the warning.</p> <p>If left blank, no availability checking will be done.</p>	
COMMITMENT CONTROL:	
<p>47. Enter '1' for commitment to Other Quantity 1.</p> <p>Enter '2' for commitment to Other Quantity 2.</p> <p>This option is typically used in conjunction with a Blanket or Quote Order. If this option is used, the commitment preference will be ignored.</p>	<p>This option applies to stock items only. You set the option to 1 or 2 if you do not want the items you enter on the order to affect availability. For example, you usually do not want items on blanket orders or quote orders to affect availability.</p> <p>If you leave this option blank, all stock items you enter on the order will accumulate to either the soft, hard, or future commitment buckets in the Item Balance file (F41021). If you set the option to 1 or 2, quantities accumulate to the SO Quantity 1 or SO Quantity 2 buckets. You can view cumulative quantities for an item in Detailed Availability (P41023).</p> <p>When you set this option to 1 or 2, the system also updates the Other Quantity 1 or 2 fields (SDOTQY) in the Sales Order Detail file (F4211). It also prevents the system from updating the Open Order Amount (SHOTOT) in the Sales Order Header file (F4201).</p> <p>If you release items from blanket or quote orders using the Release Orders program (P420111), the program assumes released orders were initially recorded to the other quantity 1 or 2 buckets.</p>
AUTOMATIC PROCESSING:	
<p>48. Enter '1' to automatically display the Supply and Demand screen when a new sales detail line is backordered.</p>	
<p>49. Enter '1' to print pick slips or a '2' to print invoices through the subsystem.</p> <p>Enter '3' for on-line commitment or a '4' for subsystem commitment.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If ECS is on, '1' will print order-based packed loading notes through a subsystem.</p>	<p>Set this option to 3 to have the system automatically hard commit orders, in which case P4211 calls the Batch Commitment program (P42997) to perform the hard commitment.</p>
<p>50. Enter '1' for auto order repricing.</p>	
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
<p>Enter the version for each program.</p> <p>If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used:</p>	
51. Pick Slip Print (P42520)	
52. Supply and Demand (P4021)	
53. Std Order/Basket Reprice (P421301) or Adv Order/Basket Reprice (P42750)	
54. Customer Service (P42045)	
55. Online Invoice (P42230)	
56. Preference Profile (P40400)	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
57. Check Price (Advanced) (P40721)	
58. Customer Master (P01053)	
59. TM Rate & Route server PSMR9100	
CONFIGURATOR PROCESSING:	
60. Enter one of the following for the mode of Specification Entry. If left blank, '2' will be used: '1' = Text Mode '2' = Assisted Mode '3' = Assisted Prompt Mode	
TRANSFER PRICE UPDATE:	
61. Enter the order type(s) that the system will use to invoke inter-branch updates. To specify more than one order type, type them one after the other along this field.	
62. Enter the transfer pricing method to be used. Default method is 1. 1 = Branch cost mark-up 2 = Transfer pricing	
63. Enter '1' to allow inter-branch invoicing. If left blank, no inter-branch invoice can be run.	
WAREHOUSE PROCESSING:	
64. Enter the request processing mode: ' ' = No pick requests '1' = Generate requests only '2' = Generate requests and process using the subsystem	
65. If processing pick requests using the subsystem, enter the DREAM Writer version to use. If blank, XJDE0002 is used. (See Form ID P46171.)	
66. Enter an override next status for sales order lines for which requests have been generated.	
ORDER TEMPLATE PROCESSING:	
67. Enter a '1' to use the Sold-to address number for order template. Enter a '2' to use the Ship-to address number. If left blank, no automatic order template processing will be performed.	
68. Enter the order template name.	
BLANKET/QUOTE PROCESSING:	



Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
<p>69. Enter '1' for automatic access to the blanket/quote release processing by Sold To address.</p> <p>Enter '2' for automatic access to the blanket/quote release processing by Ship To address.</p> <p>If left blank, no automatic access to the blanket/quote release processing will be performed.</p>	
PREFERENCE PROFILE PROCESSING:	
<p>70. Enter a '1' to use preference profile defaults.</p> <p>If left blank, no preference profile information will be defaulted.</p>	If you enter 1 in this field, you must also set up a corresponding version of the Preference Processing program (P40400) and attach it to processing option 56.
<p>71. Enter a '1' to use the Inventory Commitment Preference to source from multiple branches or to view grade or potent items in the commitment window.</p>	
CURRENCY PROCESSING:	
<p>72. Enter the tolerance limit percentage to warn you of currency rate changes. A 15.0 indicates a warning if the rate is 15 percent greater or less than the current rate.</p>	
LOAD CONFIRM PROCESSING: (ECS):	
<p>73. Enter '1' to automatically branch to load confirm when order are added.</p>	
<p>74. Enter the version of Bulk Load Confirm (P49510) to be used.</p>	
<p>75. Enter the version of Packaged Load Confirm (P49530) to be used.</p>	
AVIATION/MARINE PROCESSING: (ECS):	
<p>76. Enter the version of the Additional Parameters program (P49510A) to be used.</p>	
TRIP ASSIGNMENT WINDOW: (ECS):	
<p>77. Enter the version of the Trip Assignment window (P49200) to be used.</p>	
MARK-FOR ADDRESS PROCESSING:	
<p>78. Enter '1' to display Mark-for Address.</p>	
ADVANCED LOT MANAGEMENT:	
<p>79. Enter '1' to issue an error when the Ship Ascending Date Rule is violated.</p> <p>If left blank, only a warning will be issued.</p>	
<p>80. Enter '1' to issue a warning when an immature lot (one not yet in effect) is entered and to include immature lots in the calculation of availability.</p> <p>If left blank, an error will be issued and immature lots will not be counted as available.</p>	
SERVICE WARRANTY MANAGEMENT:	
<p>81. Enter '1' to submit a batch job upon exiting Sales Order Entry to automatically assign service warranties to sales order detail lines.</p>	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
82. Enter the DREAM Writer version for Batch Assign Service Warranty (P42404).	
If left blank, XJDE0001 is used.	

## 47.2 Recurring Batch Order Entry (P4001Z)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
ORDER ENTRY DEFAULT VALUES:	
1. Order Type	
2. Line Type	
3. Beginning Status	
4. Next Status	
5. Line Number Increment	
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
Enter the version for each program.	
If left blank, ZJDE0002 will be used.	
6. Order Edit and Creation (P40211Z)	
AUTOMATIC PROCESSING:	
7. Enter a '1' to edit/create order lines via the subsystem.	
If left blank, orders will be written to the Batch Receiver files only.	
FIELD DISPLAY CONTROL:	
8. Enter '1' to protect pricing driver fields.	
9. Enter '1' to suppress Mark-for address.	

## 47.3 Batch Edit - Creation (P40211Z)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
DEFAULT VALUES:	
1. Document Type	Enter the document type relevant to this particular version of Sales Order Entry. You'll likely have multiple versions of P4211 to accommodate each of the different document types you use, for example, sales orders, blanket orders, quote orders, ECS orders, and so on.
2. Line Type	Enter the line type to default to all order lines; otherwise, the system retrieves the line type from Item Branch Information (P41026) or Item Master Information (P4101) set up for the item number. You can also manually enter a line type.
3. Cost Center or Business Unit	
4. Last Status Code	
5. Override Next Status Code	
6. Line Number Increment	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
ADDRESS BOOK DEFAULT VALUE:	
7. Address Book Default Cost Center.	
'1' - Ship To Address	
'2' - Sold To Address	
If left blank, the Cost Center will default in from an EDI map or Processing Option 3.	
ORDER HOLD CODES:	
8. Product Allocation Hold	
9. Credit Check	
10. Order Margin Check	
11. Line Margin Check	
12. Maximum Order Value	
13. Minimum Order Value	
14. Partial Order Hold	
15. Customer Discrepancy Hold (Freight, Pymt Terms, Price Tol)	
AVAILABILITY CHECK AND COMMITMENT:	
16. '1' = Perform availability check and online commitment.	'1' = Perform availability check and online commitment via the Batch Commitment program (P42997) and perform hard commitment.
'2' = Perform availability check but bypass online commitment.	
' ' = Bypass availability check and online commitment.	
UPDATE OPTION:	
17. Enter '1' to use the override sales prices in the batch file (F4011Z) to create sales orders.	
If left blank, will use the Unit Price in the Base Price File (F4106).	
TRANSFER PRICE UPDATE:	
18. Specify the Order Type(s) used by the system to invoke transfer cost update (SDTCST).	
If more than one order type is required, type them one after the other along this field.	
19. Enter the transfer pricing method to be used.	
Default method is 1.	
1 = Branch cost mark-up.	
2 = Transfer pricing.	
20. Enter '1' to allow inter-branch invoicing.	
If left blank, no inter-branch invoice can be run.	
KIT PROCESSING:	
21. Enter '1' to prevent kit components from being written.	
If left blank kit component records will be written to the Sales Detail File.	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
WAREHOUSE PROCESSING:	
22. Enter a '1' to generate requests.	
23. Enter an override next status for sales order lines for which requests have been generated.	
PREFERENCE PROFILE PROCESSING:	
24. Enter a '1' to use preference profile defaults (P40400). If left blank, no preference profile information will be defaulted.	If you enter 1 in this field, you must also set up a corresponding version of the Preference Processing program (P40400) and attach it to processing option 31.
25. Enter a '1' to use the Inventory Commitment Preference to source from multiple branches. If left blank, the branch from the Sales Order detail line will be used.	
BLANKET/QUOTE PROCESSING:	
26. Enter a '1' for automatic blanket order release by sold-to address number.  Enter a '2' for automatic blanket order release by ship-to address number.  If left blank, automatic blanket release processing will not be performed.	
27. Enter a '1' to commit to Other Quantity 1. Enter a '2' to commit to Other Quantity 2.	
AUTOMATIC PROCESSING:	
28. Enter '1' for auto order repricing.	
ITEM CROSS-REFERENCE:	
29. Enter the cross-reference type for Replacement items.	
DREAM WRITER VERSION:	
Enter the version for each program. If left blank 'ZJDE0001' will be used.	
30. Preference Profiles (P40400)	
31. Std Order/Basket Reprice (P421301) or Adv Order/Basket Reprice (P42750)	
32. TM Rate and Route server PSMR9100	
33. WO Server for Sale Order (X4201WO)	
SDQ PROCESSING:	
34. Enter a '1' to consolidate the SDQ (F47013 records) into one Sales Order.  If left blank multiple Sales Orders will be generated.	
EDI PROCESSING:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
<p>35. Enter a '1' to perform Processing Control Edit to determine processing mode. If no Processing Control record is found, the EDI transaction will NOT be processed.</p> <p>Enter a '2' to perform Processing Control Edit. If no Processing Control record is found, the EDI transaction will be processed in the production mode.</p> <p>If left blank, all selected EDI transactions will be processed in the production mode.</p>	<p>Enter a '1' to check EDI Processing Control (P4770) to determine the processing mode. If no record is found the EDI transaction will NOT be processed.</p> <p>Enter a '2' to check EDI Processing Control (P4770) to determine the processing mode. If no record is found the EDI transaction WILL be processed in production mode.</p> <p>If left blank all EDI transactions will be processed in production mode.</p> <p>EDI Processing Control (P4770) is found using F15 from the Purchasing Instructions for Purchasing or Customer Billing Instructions for Sales.</p>
LOT PROCESSING:	
<p>36. Enter a '1' to commit from an immature lot (one not yet in effect).</p> <p>If left blank, immature lots will be skipped in the commitment process.</p>	

## 47.4 Check Price & Availability (P40721)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
PREFERENCE PROFILE PROCESSING: (for Advanced Price Adjustments only)	
<p>1. Enter a '1' to use preference profile defaults.</p> <p>If left blank, no preference profile information will be defaulted.</p>	
<p>2. Enter the version of the preference profile server (P40400).</p> <p>If left blank, version ZJDE0001 will be used.</p>	

## 47.5 Item Availability (P41202)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
PROCESS CONTROL:	
<p>1. Enter a '1' to omit locations with no quantity available.</p> <p>If left blank, all locations will display.</p>	
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
<p>Enter the version for each program.</p> <p>If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.</p>	
2. Item Master (P4101)	
3. Text Message Code Review (P40010)	
4. Item Search (P41200)	
5. Purchase Order Inquiry (P430301)	
6. Customer Service Inquiry (P42045)	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
7. Open Work Orders (P31225)	
8. Supply and Demand (P4021)	
9. Bill of Materials (P30200)	
10. Lot Availability (P41280)	
Enter the version for each program. If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.	
11. Item Ledger (P4111)	
12. Branch/Plant Item Info. (P41026)	
13. Availability by Location (P4190)	
14. Item / Location Information (P41024)	
GRADE AND POTENCY:	
15. Enter a '1' to display the grade range. If left blank, no grade will display for selection.	
16. Enter a '1' to display the potency range. If left blank, no potency will display for selection.	
PERCENTAGE OF LIFE REMAINING:	
17. Enter a '1' to calculate/display the Percentage of Life Remaining. If left blank, it will not be displayed.	
18. Enter a '1' to calculate/display Days Until Expiration. If left blank, it will not be displayed.	

## 47.6 Supply & Demand (P4021)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
DISPLAY OPTIONS:	
1. Enter a '1' to deduct Safety Stock from Availability.	
2. Enter a '1' by the following Routing Quantities to be considered on hand.  Any quantity not included will be displayed on the appropriate date. Quantity in Transit Quantity in Inspection User Defined Quantity 1 User Defined Quantity 2	
3. Enter a '1' to summarize all In Receipt Routing steps into one line.	
4. Enter a '1' to summarize Item Location records.	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
5. Enter one of the following: ' ' = No Available to Promise Line '1' = Available to Promise Line '2' = Cumulative ATP Line	
6. Enter the version of Supply/Demand Inclusion Rules to be used.	
7. Enter a '1' to display the window format if called from another program.	
8. Enter a '1' to use an alternate screen format which has long quantity fields.	
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS: Enter the DREAM Writer version to use for each program listed. If left blank, version ZJDE0001 will be used.	
9. Purchase Order Entry (P4311)	
10. Purchase Order Inquiry (P430301)	
11. Sales Order Entry (P4211)	
12. Sales Order Inquiry (P42045)	
13. Scheduling Workbench (P31225)	
14. MPS/MRP/DRP Pegging Inq. (P3412)	
15. MPS/MRP/DRP Time Series (P3413)	
16. MPS/MRP/DRP Message Detail(P3411)	
OPTIONAL RECORDS:	
17. Enter a '1' to include Planned Orders from MPS/MRP/DRP generations. If left blank, Planned Orders will not be displayed.	
18. Enter the Forecast Type to include Forecast Type Forecast Type Forecast Type Forecast Type Forecast Type	
19. Enter the number of days (+/-) from today's date that you wish to begin including Forecast records. A blank will use today's date to begin including Forecast records.	
20. Enter a '1' to omit 'Bulk' Stocking Type records from screen. If left blank, 'Bulk' items will be included.	
21. Enter the rate based Schedule Type to use. If left blank, no rate based schedules will be displayed.	
22. Enter a '1' to include Past Due Rates as a supply.	
POTENCY:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
23. Enter '1' to convert Quantities to Standard Potency.	
LOT EXPIRATION:	
24A. Enter '1' to reduce Quantity available due to lot expiration.	
<b>Note:</b> This option will not work with ATP. If you use this option, option 5 must be set to blank or 2.	
24B. Enter optional date to be used for expiration calculation when processing option 24A='1'.	
If left blank, Lot Expiration Date will be used.	
1=Sell By Date	
2=Best Before Date	
3=User Defined Date1	
4=User Defined Date2	
5=User Defined Date3	
6=User Defined Date4	
7=User Defined Date5	
8=Commitment Date Method from Item/ Branch Master.	
LOT HOLD CODES:	
25. Enter the lot hold codes (up to 5) to be considered on hand, or enter an '*' to consider all held lots as on hand.	
If left blank, held lots will not be considered on hand.	
WORK ORDER ENTRY:	
26. Enter the Dream Writer version to use for the Manufacturing Work Order Entry program.	
If left blank, version ZJDE0001 will be used.	
BILL AVAILABILITY:	
27. Enter the version of Bill Availability (P30205) to be called.	
If left blank, version ZJDE0001 will be used.	
OVER DUE SUPPLY CONTROL:	
28. Enter a '1' to leave past due supply out of available calculations (past due orders will be displayed but will not be included in quantity available or ATP).	
FORECAST DISPLAY OPTIONS:	
29. Enter a '1' to override the planning fence rule and just use actual customer demand for the available calculation.	
<b>Note:</b> forecast will still appear on the screen per processing option above.	
When left blank, the available calculation will be based on the planning fence and rule established in the item's branch plant manufacturing data.	



## 47.7 Repost Sales Orders & Release Future Commits (P42995)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
RE-COMMIT FUTURE ORDERS:	
1. Enter '1' to bypass re-committing future orders.	
If the option is left blank, the future orders will be committed and an audit report will print.	
2. Enter a '1' to hard commit future orders.	
If the option is left blank, the hard commit process will not occur.	
3. Enter the hold code to use for credit checking.	
If the option is left blank, no credit checking will occur.	
4. Enter the hold code to put all future orders on hold.	
If the option is left blank, future orders will not be available for review.	
5. Enter a '1' to do availability checking.	
If the option is left blank, no availability checking will occur.	
RESET ITEM COMMITMENTS:	
6. Enter a '1' to bypass the reset of the item commitment fields.	
If the option is left blank, the Item Location file (F41021) will be updated with the quantities from the Sales Order Detail (F4211).	
RESET ORDER TOTAL:	
7. Enter a '1' to bypass the reset of the order header total.	
If the option is left blank, the order header file (F4201) will be updated with the accumulated total from the Sales Order Detail (F4211).	
RESET OPEN ORDER AMOUNT:	
8. Enter a '1' to bypass the reset of the open order amount.	
If the option is left blank, the open order amount will be accumulated from the Sales Order Detail (F4211) and will update the Customer Master file (F0301).	
WAREHOUSE PROCESSING:	
10. Enter a '1' to generate requests.	
11. Enter an override next status for sales order lines for which requests have been generated.	

## 47.8 Credit Check Processing (P42050)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
SELECTION PROCESSING:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
1. You may specify up to 5 order types to be selected for credit check processing. If you enter an asterisk (*) in the first field, ALL order types will be selected.	Use this option to limit the types of open orders that display on the lower portion of the screen. For example, you might want to see sales orders and credit orders while excluding blanket orders and quote orders.

## 47.9 Customer Service Inquiry (P42045)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
DEFAULT VALUES:	
1. Order Type	
2. From Status Code	
3. Thru Status Code	
4. Currency Code	
PROCESSING CONTROL:	
5. Enter a '1' if the above Status Codes are based on Last Status. If left blank, the Next Status will be used.	
6. Enter the value to specify which date will be checked against the date range. If left blank, Requested Date is used.	
7. Enter a '1' to display the Amount format, or a '2' to display the Price format. If left blank, the Quantity format will be displayed.	Use this option to specify whether the seventh column that displays on the video represents Amount, Unit Price or Quantity. Regardless of which column heading you choose, you can press F15 to toggle between the three.
8. Enter a '1' to display the Status Code format. If left blank, the Customer format will be displayed.	Use this option to determine whether the fifth column that displays on the video represents the customer description or the next status description. Regardless of which column heading you choose, you can press F8 to toggle between the two.
9. Enter a '1' for text lines to be displayed. If left blank, text will be omitted.	
10. Enter a '1' to display Kit Component Lines. If left blank, Kit Components will not display.	
11. Enter a '1' to display backordered lines. Enter a '2' to display canceled lines. Enter a '3' to display both. Enter a '4' to display neither.	
12. Enter the cross reference type used for Substitute items.	
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
Enter the version for each program: If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.	
13. Sales Order Entry (P4211)	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
14. Check Credit (P42050)	
15. Supply /Demand Inquiry (P4021)	
16. Item Summary Availability (P41202)	
17. A/R Inquiry (P032002)	
18. Address Book Information (P01051)	
19. Online Invoice Inquiry (P42230)	
20. Sales Ledger Inquiry (P42025)	
21. Customer Master (P01053)	
INTER-BRANCH INVOICE:	
22. Enter the document type(s) that the system will use to inquire into inter-branch invoices. To specify more than one document type, type them one after the other along this field.	
MARK-FOR INQUIRY:	
23. Enter '1' to display the Mark-for Address in the place of Ticket Number.	
AS-IF CURRENCY DISPLAY:	
24. Enter the currency code for as-if currency display. This option allows for amounts to display in a currency other than the currency they are stored in. This option is activated by function key F18.	
Amounts will be translated and displayed in this as-if currency.	
If left blank, amounts will display in their database currency.	
24. Enter the "As-of" date for processing the current exchange rate for the as-if currency.	
If left blank, the Thru date will be used.	

## 47.10 Open Sales Orders by Customer (P42620)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
CURRENCY PROCESSING:	
1. Enter a '1' to print amounts in Foreign Currency.	
Enter a '2' to print amounts in both Foreign and Domestic Currency.	
If left blank, only Domestic Currency amounts will print.	

## 47.11 Print Backorders to Fill (P42590)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
DISPLAY OPTIONS:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
1. Enter a '1' to only print those Backorders that can be filled.  If left blank, all Backorders will be printed. (Kit Master lines will not print.)	
2. Enter a '1' to add back in Quantity on Backorder in Quantity Available calculations.  If left blank, Quantity on Backorder will not be added in.	When an order backorders, the quantity is logged as both a soft commitment and a backordered quantity in the Item Balance file (F41021). If you have set up your system to subtract soft committed quantities from on-hand quantities to determine availability, you will want to set this option to 1; otherwise, the system may not release backorders for which there is enough quantity available to release.  For example, if the on hand quantity for an item is 10 and the backordered/soft committed quantity is 10, then the availability equals zero. You will want the program to add the backordered quantity of 10 to availability so the system recognizes there's enough quantity available to release the order.  You can view quantity and commitment balances for an item in Detailed Availability (P41023).
3. If displaying a kit, enter a '1' to only display Kit Component lines.  If left blank, only Kit Master lines will display.	
4. Enter a '1' to display orders on hold.  If left blank, orders on hold will not display.	
LOT PROCESSING:	
5. Enter '1' to include immature lots (those not yet in effect) in the calculation of availability.  If left blank, an immature lot will not be counted as available.	

## 47.12 Sales Ledger & Credit Orders from History (P42025)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
DEFAULT VALUES:	
1. Order Type	
2. From Status Code	
3. Thru Status Code	
4. Currency Code	
PROCESSING CONTROL:	
5. Enter a '1' if the above Status Codes are based on Last Status.  If left blank, the Next Status will be used.	
6. Enter the value to specify which date will be checked against the date range. If left blank, Requested Date is used.	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
7. Enter a '1' to display the Amount format. If left blank, the Quantity format will be displayed.	
8. Enter a '1' to display the Status Code format. If left blank, the Customer format will be displayed.	
DREAMWRITER VERSIONS: Enter the version for each program: If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.	
9. Credit Order Entry (P4211)	If you use this program to create credit orders from history, you can specify the version of Order Entry that displays when you take option exit 6 to create a credit order, including the default order type and line type.  Processing option 39 behind the version of P4211 you specify must correspond to the status code on the ledger record from which you are creating a credit order.
10. Sales Order Entry (P4211)	
INTER-BRANCH INVOICES: 9. Enter the document type(s) that the system will use for inter-branch invoices.  To specify more than one document type, type them one after the other along this field.	

## 47.13 Sales Ledger Detail (P42600)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
1. Enter report starting date	
2. Enter report ending date	
3. Enter an override for report run date, if desired. If left blank, today's date will be used as the run date.	

## 47.14 Sales Analysis Summary (P42611)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
1. Enter requested period start date	
2. Enter requested period end date	

## 47.15 Online Invoice (P42230)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
DEFAULT VALUES:	
1. Order Type	
2. From Status Code	
3. Thru Status Code	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
PROCESSING CONTROL:	
4. Enter '1' if the above status codes are based on Last Status.	
If left blank, Next Status will be used.	
5. Enter the value to specify which date will be checked against the date range.	
If left blank, Requested Date will be used.	
INCLUDE/EXCLUDE BACKORDERS:	
6. Enter a '1' to INCLUDE backorders. but bypass extending their prices.	
Enter a '2' to INCLUDE backorders and extend prices for backorders.	
If left blank, backorders will be excluded.	
TAX INFORMATION:	
7. Enter a '1' to display by Tax Group.	
Enter a '2' to display by Tax Area.	
Enter a '3' to display by Tax Authority.	
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
Enter the version for each program:	
If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.	
8. Print Invoices (P42565)	
INTER-BRANCH INVOICES:	
9. Enter the document type(s) that the system will use for inter-branch invoices.	
To specify more than one document type, type them one after the other along this field.	
ESTIMATED FREIGHT CALCULATION:	
10. Enter a '1' if a freight line should be written for each type (distance, zone, fixed) of freight.	
Blank ' ' is the default and will summarize all types of freight in one line.	
11. Enter the Last Status at and beyond which Billable Freight estimates should not be computed.	
If left blank, Billable Freight will not be estimated.	
AS-IF CURRENCY DISPLAY:	
12. Enter the currency code for as-if currency display. This option allows for amounts to display in a currency other than the currency they are stored in. This option is activated by function key F19.	
Amounts will be translated and displayed in this as-if currency.	
If left blank, amounts will display in their database currency.	
13. Enter the "As-of" date for processing the current exchange rate for the as-if currency.	
If left blank, the current date will be used.	

## 47.16 Release Held Orders (P42070)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
PROCESS CONTROL:	
1. Enter the Document Type you wish to see displayed.	
2. Enter the release code you wish to see displayed. (This code will be entered in the hold code record (F4209))	
3. Enter a 'Y' to display previously released held orders.	
4. Enter a '1' for automatic printing of Pick Slips.	This option is specific to sales orders.
5. Enter the release status code of the work order.	This option is specific to sales orders for which work orders were automatically generated (line type W).
6. Enter a '1' to release purchase orders. If left blank, you will release sales orders. <b>Note:</b> If the option is set to release PO's, this will only release the hold, it will not perform any budget checking or maintaining. If you are using purchasing budgets, you need to use program P43070.	This program is used to release held orders in both the Purchasing and Sales systems. If you have set up this version for use in the Purchasing system, set this option to 1. If for use in the Sales system, leave this option blank.
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
Enter the version for each program: If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.	
7. Sales Order Entry (P4211)	
8. Purchase Order Entry (P4311)	
WAREHOUSE PROCESSING:	
9. Enter the request processing mode: ' ' = No pick requests '1' = Generate requests only '2' = Generate requests and process using the subsystem	
10. If processing pick requests using the subsystem, enter the DREAM Writer version to use. If blank, XJDE0002 is used. (See Form ID P46171.)	
11. Enter an override next status for sales order lines for which requests have been generated.	

## 47.17 Release Backorders (P42117)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
STATUS CODES:	
1. Next Status to Select (Optional)	
2. Override Next Status (Optional)	
DISPLAY OPTIONS:	
3. If inquiring by Item Number, enter a '1' to only display those Backorders that can be completely filled.	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
4. If inquiring by Item Number, enter a '1' to sequence by Priority Code. If left blank, sequence will be by Promised Ship Date.	
5. Enter a '1' to display kit component lines. If left blank, each kit component will be treated as a separate line.	
6. Enter a '1' to add back in the Quantity on Backorder in Quantity Available calculations. If left blank, the Quantity on Backorder will not be added in.	<p>When an order backorders, the quantity is logged as both a soft commitment and a backordered quantity in the Item Balance file (F41021). If you have set up your system to subtract soft committed quantities from on-hand quantities to determine availability, you'll want to set this option to 1; otherwise, the system may not release backorders for which there is enough quantity available to release.</p> <p>For example, if the on hand quantity for an item is 10 and the backordered/soft committed quantity is 10, then availability equals zero. You'll want the program to add the backordered quantity of 10 to availability so the system recognizes there's enough quantity available to release the order.</p> <p>You can view quantity and commitment balances for an item in Detailed Availability (P41023).</p>
7. Enter a '1' to display Customer Information. If left blank, Item Information will display.	
8. Enter a '1' to display orders on hold. If left blank, orders on hold will not display.	
RELEASING OPTIONS:	
9. Enter a '1' to only soft commit Released Backorders. If left blank, Released Backorders will be hard committed.	If you leave this option blank, the P42117 calls the P42997 to hard commit released order quantities.
10. Enter a '1' to allow Backorders to be released when Quantity to Ship is greater than Quantity on Backorder.	
11. Enter a '1' to allow Backorders to be released when Quantity on Hand is zero. If left blank, Backorders will not release when Quantity on Hand is zero.	
12. Enter a '1' to update Released Backorders with the most current cost of the item. If left blank the original cost of the item on the Sales Order will be used.	
CREDIT PROCESSING:	
13. Enter a code for credit checking. If left blank, no credit checking will be done.	
ORDER HOLD PROCESSING:	
14. Enter the partial order hold code that will be released when an order is completely filled.	
AUTOMATIC PROCESSING:	



Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
15. Enter a '1' to print pickslips or a '2' to print invoices through the subsystem.	
VERSION OPTIONS:	
Enter the version for each program.	
If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.	
16. Sales Order Entry (P4211)	
17. Customer Service Inquiry (P42045)	
18. Item Availability (P41202)	
WAREHOUSE PROCESSING:	
19. Enter the request processing mode:	
' ' - No pick requests	
'1' - Generate requests only	
'2' - Generate requests and process using the subsystem	
20. If processing pick requests using the subsystem, enter the DREAM Writer version to use.	
If blank, XJDE0002 is used.	
(See Form ID P46171.)	
21. Enter an override next status for sales order lines for which requests have been generated.	
LOT PROCESSING:	
22. Enter '1' to include immature lots (those not yet in effect) in the calculation of availability.	
If left blank, an immature lot will not be counted as available.	

## 47.18 Release Backorders - Batch (P42118)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
STATUS CODES:	
1. Override Next Status (Optional)	
SELECTION PROCESSING:	
2. Enter a '1' to process orders on hold.	
If left blank, orders on hold will not be processed.	
QUANTITY CALCULATIONS;	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
<p>3. Enter a '1' to add back in the Quantity on Backorder in Quantity Available calculations.</p> <p>If left blank, the Quantity on Backorder will not be added in.</p>	<p>When an order backorders, the quantity is logged as both a soft commitment and a backordered quantity in the Item Balance file (F41021). If you have set up your system to subtract soft committed quantities from on-hand quantities to determine availability, you'll want to set this option to 1; otherwise, the system may not release backorders for which there is enough quantity available to release.</p> <p>For example, if the on hand quantity for an item is 10 and the backordered/soft committed quantity is 10, then availability equals zero. You'll want the program to add the backordered quantity of 10 to availability so the system recognizes there's enough quantity available to release the order.</p> <p>You can view quantity and commitment balances for an item in Detailed Availability (P41023).</p>
CREDIT PROCESSING:	
<p>4. Enter a code for credit checking.</p> <p>If left blank, no credit checking will be done.</p>	
RELEASING OPTIONS:	
<p>5. Enter a '1' to only soft commit Released Backorders.</p> <p>If left blank, Released Backorders will be hard committed.</p>	<p>If you leave this option blank, the P42118 calls the P42997 to hard commit released order quantities.</p>
<p>6. Enter a '1' to release Backorders when Quantity on Hand is zero, assuming adequate availability.</p> <p>If left blank, no Backorders will be released when Quantity on Hand is zero.</p>	
<p>7. Enter a '1' to update Released Backorders with the most current item cost.</p> <p>If left blank the original Sales Order cost will be used.</p>	
UPDATE FILES:	
<p>8. Enter a '1' to update files.</p> <p>If left blank, no files will be updated.</p>	
ORDER HOLD PROCESSING:	
<p>9. Enter the partial order hold code that will be released when an order is completely filled.</p>	
WAREHOUSE PROCESSING:	
<p>10. Enter a '1' to generate pick requests.</p>	
<p>11. Enter an override next status for sales order lines for which requests have been generated.</p>	
LOT PROCESSING:	
<p>12. Enter '1' to include immature lots (those not yet in effect) in the calculation of availability.</p> <p>If left blank, an immature lot will not be counted as available.</p>	

## 47.19 Order Release (P420111)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
DEFAULT VALUES:	
1. Document Type to select (Required)	
2. Outgoing Document Type (Required)	
3. Override Next Status (Optional)	
4. Line Number Increment (Optional)	
ORDER HOLD CODES:	
5. Sales Order Credit Limit Checking	
6. Sales Order Margin Checking	
7. Sales Order Line Margin Checking	
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
Enter the version for each program:	
If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.	
8. Sales Order Entry (P4211)	<p>Use this option to specify the version of Sales Order Entry that displays when you press F6 on the Order Release screen.</p> <p>The version of P4211 you specify in this option does not apply to the creation of new orders. In other words, the release program (P420111) does not call P4211 to create new orders.</p> <p>The release program does not provide all the functionality accessible in the processing options behind Order Entry.</p>
9. Customer Service Inquiry (P42045)	
WAREHOUSE PROCESSING:	
10. Enter the request processing mode:	
' ' = No pick requests	
'1' = Generate pick requests only	
'2' = Generate pick requests and process using the subsystem	
11. If processing pick requests using the subsystem, enter the DREAM Writer version to use.	
If blank, XJDE0002 is used.	
(See Form ID P46171.)	
12. Enter an override next status for sales order lines for which requests have been generated.	
KIT PROCESSING:	
13. Enter '1' to display kit component lines.	
If left blank kit component lines will be suppressed and released with the parent item.	
LOT PROCESSING:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
14. Enter '1' to include immature lots (those not yet in effect) in the calculation of availability.	
If left blank, an immature lot will not be counted as available.	

## 47.20 Direct Ship Order Entry (P4243)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
DEFAULT VALUES:	
Common:	
1. Line Type (Required)	This program is designed to accommodate inventory items using a line type with an inventory interface of D. (Usually a D line type.)
2. Unit of Measure (Optional)	
Sales Order:	
3. Document Type (Required)	The most common document type for direct ship orders is SD, but you can define your own document types, as necessary.
4. Beginning Status (Optional)	
5. Override Next Status (Optional)	
Purchase Order:	
6. Document Type (Required)	The most common document type for direct ship orders is OD, but you can define your own document types, as necessary.
7. Beginning Status (Optional)	
8. Override Next Status (Optional)	
ORDER HOLD CODES:	
9. Sales Order Credit Checking	
10. Sales Order Margin Checking	
11. Sales Order Line Margin Checking	
12. Sales Order Minimum Order Value	
13. Purchase Order Minimum Order Value	
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
Enter the version for each program:	
If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.	
14 Supplier Master (P01054)	
15. Purchase Order Entry (P4311)	
16. Sales Order Entry (P4211)	
17. Preference Profile (P40400)	
18. Customer Master (P01053)	
PROMPTING CONTROL:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
19. Enter a '1' to display the Item Search Window with multiple return capability. If left blank the single item return window will display.	This option determines the search window that displays when you press F1 on the Item Number field. If you leave the option blank, P40ITM1 displays. If you select 1, P40ITM2 displays.
20. Enter a '1' to be prompted to accept the order.	
21. Enter a '1' to allow the addition of a Customer/Supplier Master record, if not setup.	Set this to 1 to have the Customer Master video (P01053) or Supplier Master video (P01054) automatically appear when you enter a sold-to, ship-to, or vendor address number for which master information does not currently exist. If you leave this option blank, you can add orders without master information; however, the system will error on the SD order at Sales Update (P42800) and the OD order at Voucher Match (P4314), and require that you enter the master information at that time.
22. Enter a '1' to display the ECS screen format. If left blank, the regular format will display.	
FIELD DISPLAY CONTROL:	
23. Enter a '1' to protect the cost or a '2' to make it not display.	
24. Enter a '1' to protect the price or a '2' to make it not display.	
25. Enter a '1' to protect all fields which can affect the price.	
26. Enter a '1' to protect the status codes.	
27. Enter a '1' to NOT display cancelled lines.	
28. Enter a '1' to default both the header branch and the detail branch from the Address Book.  Enter a '2' to default the header branch from the Address Book and the detail branch from the user default location.  If left blank, both the header branch and the detail branch will default from the user default location.	Set this option to 1 to have the header and detail branches on both the ST and OT default from the Responsible Business Unit attached to the sold-to address number in Address Book Revisions (P01051). Set the option to 2 to have just the header branch default from the sold-to address.
APPROVAL PROCESSING:	
29. Enter where the approval route code should be defaulted from, OR enter a specific route code value. If left blank, no approval processing will be performed.  1 = Originators Address Book Number 2 = Originators User Profile 3 =  4 = Default	
30. Enter the Awaiting Approval status.	
31. Enter the Approved status.	
LINE NUMBER INCREMENT:	
32. Enter the line number increment desired. If left blank the increment will be '1'.	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
BLANKET/QUOTE PROCESSING:	
33. Enter a '1' for automatic access to the blanket/quote release processing, by sold-to address.	
Enter a '2' for automatic access to the blanket/quote release processing, by ship-to address.	
If left blank, automatic access to blanket processing is not done.	
PREFERENCE PROFILE PROCESSING:	
34. Enter a '1' to use preference profile defaults.	If you set this option to 1, you must also enter a corresponding version of the Preference Profile program (P40400) in processing option 17.
If left blank, no preference profile information will be defaulted.	
CURRENCY PROCESSING:	
35. Enter the tolerance limit percentage which will be used to determine if a warning message will be issued for radical currency rate changes.	
A 15.0 indicates 15% plus or minus based on order exchange rate.	
CROSS REFERENCE INFORMATION:	
36. Enter the cross reference code for retrieving item replacements for obsolete items.	

## 47.21 Transfer Order Entry (P4242)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
DEFAULT VALUES:	
Common:	
1. Line Type (Required)	
2. Unit of Measure (Optional)	
Sales Order:	
3. Document Type (Required)	The most common document type for transfer orders is ST, but you can define your own document types, as necessary.
4. Beginning Status (Optional)	
5. Override Next Status (Optional)	
Purchase Order:	
6. Document Type (Required)	The most common document type for transfer orders is OT, but you can define your own document types, as necessary.
7. Beginning Status (Optional)	
8. Override Next Status (Optional)	
ORDER HOLD CODES:	
9. Sales Order Credit Checking	
10. Sales Order Margin Checking	
11. Sales Order Line Margin Checking	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
12. Sales Order Minimum Order Value	
13. Sales Order Maximum Order Value	
14. Sales Partial Order Hold	
15. Purchase Order Minimum Order Value	
INVENTORY PROCESSING:	
16. Enter a '1' to hard commit inventory. If left blank, the inventory commitment will not change.	If you set this option to 1, the system calls the Inventory Commitment program (P42997) for stock items to determine the physical location from which to relieve inventory.
PROMPTING CONTROL:	
17. Enter a '1' to display the Item Search Window w/ multiple return capability. If left blank the single item return window will display.	This option determines the search window that displays when you press F1 on the Item Number field. If you leave the option blank, P40ITM1 displays. If you select 1, P40ITM2 displays.
18. Enter a '1' to allow the addition of a Customer/Supplier Master record, if not set up.	Set this to 1 to have the Customer Master video (P01053) or Supplier Master video (P01054) automatically appear when you enter a from or to branch with corresponding address numbers for which master information does not currently exist. If you leave this option blank, you can add orders without master information; however, the system will error on the ST order at Sales Update (P42800) and the OT order at Voucher Match (P4314), and require that you enter master information at that time.
19. Enter a '1' to be prompted to accept the order.	
20. Enter a '1' to check availability. If left blank, no availability check will be done.	
21. Enter '1' to turn off all tax calculations for BOTH Sales and Purchase Order regardless of the setups in Line Type (F40205) and Item Locations (F4102). If left blank, tax processing will be conducted based on setups in the F40205 and F4102.	<p>If you set this option to 1, the Taxable Y/N field will be set to no for all lines generated on the sales order (ST) and purchase order (OT). If you leave this option blank, the Taxable Y/N value defaults from Branch Information (P41026) for inventory items or Line Types (P40205) for non-inventory lines.</p> <p>Regardless how you set this option, the tax explanation code and tax rate area will default to the ST and OT based on Customer Master (P01053) and Supplier Master (P01054) information for the corresponding address numbers.</p> <p>You can stop the tax explanation code and tax rate area from defaulting to the OT using UDC table 40/TX, by entering an N in the Description field for the purchase order (P).</p>
22. Enter '1' to display the ECS screen format. If left blank, the regular screen format will display.	
LINE NUMBER INCREMENT:	
23. Enter the line number increment desired. If left blank, the increment will be '1'.	
FIELD DISPLAY CONTROL:	
24. Enter '1' to suppress cost fields	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
25. Enter '1' to protect the price or '2' to make it non-display.	
26. Enter '1' to protect all the fields which affect the price.	
27. Enter '1' to protect the status code fields.	
LINE CONTROL STATUS:	
28. Enter the next status code beyond which a Sales Order detail line cannot be changed. If left blank, no restrictions will be put on the changing of a line.	If you relieve inventory at Shipment Confirmation (P4205), use this option to prevent users from changing lines that are ship confirmed.
29. Enter the next status code beyond which a Purchase Order detail line cannot be changed. If left blank, no restrictions will be put on the changing of a line.	Regardless of the next status code you enter in this option, you cannot change a line for which a purchase order receipt has taken place.
PREFERENCE PROFILE PROCESSING:	
30. Enter a '1' to use preference profile defaults. If left blank, no preference profile information will be defaulted.	If you set this option to 1, you must also enter a corresponding version of the Preference Profile program (P40400) in processing option 37.
APPROVAL PROCESSING:	
31. Enter where the approval route code should be defaulted from, OR enter a specific route code value. If left blank, no approval processing will be performed. 1 = Originators Address Book Number 2 = Originators User Profile 3 =  4 = Default	
32. Enter the Awaiting Approval status.	
33. Enter the Approved status.	
SALES ORDER PRICING:	
34. Enter a '1' to use the cost plus any transfer cost markups for the sales order price. Enter a '2' to use the Base Price file (F4106). If left blank, the cost alone will be used to price sales order lines.	
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
Enter the version for each program: If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.	
35. Purchase Order Entry (P4311)	
36. Sales Order Entry (P4211)	
37. Preference Profile (P40400)	
38. Supplier Master (P01054)	



Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
39. Customer Master (P01053)	
40. TM Rate & Route Server PSMR9100	
WAREHOUSE PROCESSING:	
41. Enter the request processing mode:	
' ' = No pick requests	
'1' = Generate requests only	
'2' = Generate requests and process using the subsystem	
42. If processing pick requests using the subsystem, enter the DREAM Writer version to use.	
If blank, XJDE0002 is used.	
(See Form ID P46171.)	
43. Enter an override next status for sales order lines for which requests have been generated.	
CURRENCY PROCESSING:	
44. Enter the tolerance limit percentage which will be used to determine if a warning message will be issued for radical currency rate changes.	
A 15.0 indicates 15% plus or minus based on order exchange rate.	
CROSS REFERENCE INFORMATION:	
45. Enter the cross reference code for retrieving item replacements for obsolete items.	
LOT PROCESSING:	
46. Enter '1' to issue a warning when an immature lot (one not yet in effect) is entered and to include immature lots in the calculation of availability.	
If left blank, a hard error will be issued and immature lots will not be counted as available.	
QUALITY MANAGEMENT:	
47. Enter '1' to copy the associated test results when a product is transferred from on Branch Plant into another.	
If left blank, the test results will not be copied.	

## 47.22 Bulk Load Confirmation - Manual Invoice (P49510)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
TRIP STATUS OPTIONS:	
1. Enter the incoming trip status range to process.	
From (Required)	
To (Required)	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
ORDER STATUS OPTIONS:	
2. Enter the incoming next order status range to process.	
From (Required)	
To (Required)	
<b>Note:</b> This range is for confirmation by order only.	
SCREEN DEFAULTS:	
3. Enter screen defaults for the following fields:	
Depot	
Delivery date	
Load date	
Sales order type	
TANK OWNER OPTIONS:	
4. Enter the owner number to be used as a default for tanks commingled for duty when the duty status indicates that duty is paid.	
5. Enter the owner number to be used as a default for tanks commingled for duty when the duty status indicates that duty is not paid.	
LOAD CONFIRMATION OPTIONS:	
6. Enter the tolerance that is allowed for the load quantity variances. The value entered here is treated as a percentage value of the loaded quantity to calculate the upper and lower limits.	
Example:	
Upper limit of 5 and lower of 5 Loaded qty = 1000, hence Upper = $1000 + (5\% \text{ of } 1000) = 1050$ Lower = $1000 - (5\% \text{ of } 1000) = 950$	
Enter 1.5% as 1.5.	
+ Upper Limit	
- Lower Limit	
7. Enter '1' to load confirm by order.	
Blank will default to confirmation by trip only.	
8. Enter '1' to pre-load the selection option for confirmation. Valid only in order confirmation mode.	
9. Enter '1' to display the Document Selection Window for delivery documents.	
10. Enter '1' to not display the contractor information.	
11. Enter '1' to not print delivery documents.	
Blank will automatically print the documents.	
12. Enter '1' to not check for the number of seals required.	
Blank will display the Seals Window if seals are required.	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
Enter the version for each program.	
If left blank, the system uses ZJDE0001.	
13. Bulk Delivery Confirmation P49710	
14. Transportation Trans. Server XT49799	
15. Vehicle Register Window P49310W	
16. Document Print Control P49545	
17. Bulk Disposition (Load and Deliver) P49715	
18. Download Data Queue Interface P49570	
19. Additional S/O Info-Aviation/Marine P49510A	
MANUAL INVOICE CONTROL:	
20. Enter one of the following:	
1 = To allow entry of an invoice number and/or delivery number.	
2 = To default the invoice number from the order number.	
3 = To default the delivery number from the order number.	
4 = To default the invoice number and delivery number from the order number.	
' ' = Leave blank if there is not a manual invoice or delivery document to enter.	
21. Enter the override manual invoice document type.	
If left blank, the order's document type will be used.	
AUTOMATED GANTRY:	
22. If you are using an automated gantry, enter '1'.	
If blank it means that you are not using an automated gantry.	
23. If you are using an automated gantry, leave blank to not download the next trip.	
A value of '1', '2', or '3' will automatically download the next trip with the following matching criteria of the confirmed trip:	
1 = Vehicle, load date, and shift must match.	
2 = Vehicle and load date must match.	
3 = Vehicle must match and the load date must be equal to or greater than the current date.	
DISPOSITION DEFAULT:	
24. Enter a Disposition Code to affect any remaining quantity not loaded.	
This Processing Option is only used for Load Confirmation of Actuals.	
S = Leave as shippable (Default)	
B = Backorder	
C = Cancel	
K = Cancel the entire line	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
AGREEMENT MANAGEMENT CONTROL:	
25. If the Agreement Management system is being used and the depot from which the load is being confirmed is defined as a foreign depot in the branch/plant constants, a borrow agreement is required and an Agreement Search will be performed.	
Specify which destination should be used by the search program.	
Enter the specific branch/plant to be used as the destination.	
OR	
Enter '1' to use *ANY or enter '2' to use the user's default branch/plant.	
QUALITY MANAGEMENT:	
26. Enter '1' to test based on vehicle compartment.	
Enter '2', testing will be for each different customer or item.	
If left blank, no Quality testing will be done.	
27. Enter the version of Test Results Revisions (P3711) to call.	
If left blank, version ZJDE0002 will be used when confirming load by order or ZJDE0003 will be used when confirming load by trip.	
28. Enter '1' to automatically print a Certificate of Analysis following completion of the confirmation.	
29. Enter the version of the Certificate Analysis Extract (P37900) to call.	
If left blank, version ZJDE0001 will be used.	

## 47.23 Packaged Load Confirmation (P49530)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
TRIP STATUS OPTIONS:	
1. Enter the incoming trip status range to process.	
From (Required)	
To (Required)	
ORDER STATUS OPTIONS:	
2. Enter the incoming next order status range to process.	
From (Required)	
To (Required)	
<b>Note:</b> This range is for confirmation by order only.	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
SCREEN DEFAULTS:	
3. Enter screen defaults for the following fields:	
Depot	
Delivery date	
Load date	
Sales order type	
Disposition code	
LOAD CONFIRMATION OPTIONS:	
4. Enter '1' to load confirm by order.	
A blank will default to confirmation by trip only.	
5. Enter '1' to pre-load the selection option for confirmation. Valid only in order confirmation mode.	
6. Enter '1' to receive an error if the item location is on hold.	
Blank will only issue a warning.	
7. Enter '1' to display the Document.	
Control window for delivery documents Valid only if option 9 is blank.	
8. Enter '1' to not display the contractor information.	
9. Enter '1' to not print delivery documents.	
Blank will automatically print the documents.	
CALLED PROGRAMS VERSION CONTROL:	
In the following options, if a     version is not entered for a     program, the default is: ZJDE0001	
10. Enter the version of the Transportation Transaction Server to call.	
XT49799	
11. Enter the version of the Vehicle Register window to call.	
P49301W	
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
12. Enter the version of the Document Control program to call for delivery documents.	
P49545	
13. Enter the version of the additional information program to call for S/Os for Aviation/Marine.	
P49510A	
MANUAL INVOICE CONTROL:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
14. Enter one of the following: 1 = Allow entry of an invoice number and/or delivery number. 2 = Default the invoice number from the order number. 3 = Default the delivery number from the order number. 4 = Default the invoice number and the delivery number from the order number. ' ' = Leave blank if there is not a manual invoice or delivery document to enter.	
15. Enter the override manual invoice document type. If left blank, the document type will default to the order's document type.	
AGREEMENT MANAGEMENT CONTROL: 16. If the Agreement Management system is being used and the depot from which the load is being confirmed is defined as a foreign depot in the branch/plant constants, a borrow agreement is required and an Agreement Search will be performed. Specify which destination should be used by the search program. Enter the specific branch/plant to be used as the destination. OR Enter '1' to use *ANY or enter '2' to use the user's default branch/plant.	
QUALITY MANAGEMENT: 17. Enter '1' for Quality testing. If left blank, no Quality testing will be done. 18. Enter the version of Test Results Revisions (P3711) to call. If left blank, version ZJDE0002 will be used when confirming load by order or ZJDE0003 will be used when confirming load by trip.	
19. Enter '1' to automatically print a Certificate of Analysis following completion of the confirmation. 20. Enter the version of the Certificate of Analysis Extract (P37900) to call. If left blank, version ZJDE0001 will be used.	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
PROMPTING CONTROL:	
21. Enter '1' to check availability and receive a warning if lack of availability.	
If left blank, no warning will be given.	
22. Enter '1' to allow the item to be confirmed regardless of the On Hand Quantity.	
If left blank, the location which currently has zero or negative On Hand Quantity, or if the result of the shipment will produce negative On Hand Quantity will be prevented.	
23. Enter '1' to allow the shipping of a quantity that is greater than the quantity on the sales order.	
If left blank, you must change the sales order and trip before shipping.	
24. Enter '1' to allow load confirmation of zero quantity. The sales order line will be closed and a new line will be written according to the disposition code (order-based only).	
25. Enter '1' to use 15 character lot, leave blank to default to 12 chars. (This is used when calling the Multiple Location Window.)	

## 47.24 Sales Order Speed Release (P76A42040)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
Enter the default Status Codes to be selected for processing:	
- Status Code (Last)	
- Status Code (Next)	
Enter the "Next Status" value to be used for update.	
Enter a '1' to protect the Update to Next Status field.	
Enter the Order Type you wish to see.	
(Default of blanks will display all Order Types.)	
Enter the version of Sales Order Entry you wish to execute from the selection exit. If left blank, version 'ZJDE0001' will be called.	
Enter a '1' to preload the update option.	
Enter the request processing mode:	
If processing pick requests using the	
Enter an override next status for LOCAL PROCESSING OPTIONS:	
80. Enter '1' to see all lines including lines with number.	
Default of blanks will display only lines without number.	
81. Enter '1' to prevent updating the Next Status Code from the Order Activity Rules. If left blank, the Next Status Code will be updated	

## 47.25 Cycle Billing - Final (P49700)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
DEFAULT VALUES:	
1. Enter the value of the override next status to be used for an order that is already invoiced. (Required)	
2. Enter the value of the override next status for processing orders.	
If nothing is entered, the value of the next status from the Order Status Flow will be used.	
3. Enter the value of the version of Sales Order Update to retrieve processing options from.	
4. Enter a '1' to run the program in final mode.	
A blank will indicate proof mode.	
5. Enter the value of the default invoice cycle to be used for those lines for which a preference is not found.	

## 47.26 Periodic Invoice (P49870)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
PERIODIC INVOICE SUBMIT PROCESSING OPT.:	
1. Enter the date to be used as the invoice date. This date is also used to retrieve document next number information.	
Leave blank if using processing option no. 2 below.	
OR	
2. Select the date or date hierarchy to determine the invoice date.	
Leave blank if date entered on processing option no. 1.	
'1' = System Date	
'2' = Promised Delivery Date	
'3' = Actual Delivery Confirmation Date Promised Delivery Date	
'4' = Trip Load Date Order Load Date	
'5' = Actual Load Confirmation Date Trip Load Date Order Load Date	
3. Enter the document code to be used for periodic invoice.	
4. Enter the desired Print Control MCU (Cost Center).	
5. Enter the Output Queue number for periodic invoice.	
6. Enter a '1' to run this job interactively.	
If a blank is entered, the job will be submitted to batch.	
7. Enter the DREAM Writer version of the batch creation program to run (X49580A).	



## 47.27 Daily/Periodic Invoice (P49880)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
<b>STATUS CODES:</b>	
1. Enter the range of status codes to be selected for processing.	
Next Status Code From (Required)	
Next Status Code To (Required)	
2. Override Next Status (Optional)	
3. Enter a '1' to prevent updating the Next Status Code from the Order Activity Rules.	
If left blank, the Next Status Code will be updated.	
<b>TAX INFORMATION:</b>	
4. Enter a '1' to print by Tax Group.	
Enter a '2' to print by Tax Area.	
Enter a '3' to print by Tax Authority.	
If left blank, no tax information will print.	
<b>REPORT DISPLAY:</b>	
5. Enter a '1' to prevent A/R number from being assigned (used when creating a consolidated proof).	
6. Enter the global print message to print on each invoice.	
7. Enter a '1' to print sales order associated text.	
If left blank, no associated text will print.	
<b>LINE DISPLAY:</b>	
8. Enter a '1' to print kit component lines.	
If left blank, no kit component lines will print.	
9. Enter '1' to print lot number.	
Blank will not print lot number.	
<b>ITEM NUMBER DISPLAY:</b>	
10. Enter a '1' to print only our item number.	
Enter a '2' to print both our item number and the customer item number.	
If left blank, only our item number will print.	
11. If you wish to print the customer item number, enter the type of cross reference to retrieve.	
12. Enter a '1' to summarize by item.	
Enter a '2' to summarize items within each whole line number (Kit Grouping).	
<b>CURRENCY PROCESSING:</b>	
13. Enter a '1' to print amounts in foreign currency.	
If left blank, only domestic currency amounts will print.	
<b>INVOICE PRINTING OPTIONS:</b>	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
14. Enter the program name that translates total amounts from numbers to words. (See User Defined Codes, system code 98, type "CT" for program numbers.)	
PRICE ADJUSTMENT OPTION:	
15. Enter '1' to print unit price and type 1 adjustments separately. Leave blank to not break out type 1 adjustments from the net price.	
QUALITY RESULTS/SEAL NUMBER LINES:	
16. Enter a '1' if the Quality Management Test Results should be printed. Otherwise default is ' '.	
17. Enter a '1' if the Vehicle Seal information should be printed. Otherwise, the default is ' '.	
AVIATION/MARINE:	
18. Enter '1' to print meter readings. If left blank, no meter readings will print.	
VERSIONS OF PROGRAMS:	
19. Enter the version of the preference processor (P40400) to be called to retrieve the document distribution preference. If left blank, version ZJDE0001 will be used.	
PROCESSING CONTROL EDIT:	
20. Specify one of the following:  Enter '1' to perform Processing Control Edit to determine which customers to process.  Enter '2' to perform Processing Control Edit to determine which customers to process, but default to EDI, PRINT, and FAX setup listed below if not found.  If left blank, Processing Control Edit will not be performed to determine which customers to process. EDI, PRINT, and FAX options listed below will be used.	
PROCESING CONTROL & EDI PROCESSING:	
21. Select the type of transaction being processed by this program.  This option is used by document control processing.  An entry of '1' = P49880-1 from UDC table 00/DP. This option is also used by EDI processing to determine which EDI files to update. This option is MANDATORY for EDI or Processing Control Editing.  1 = Invoice 2 = Order Acknowledgment 3 = Response to Quote 4 = Change Order Acknowledgment	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
EDI PROCESSING:	
22. Enter the following EDI defaults:	
EDI Document Type (EDCT)	
EDI Transaction Set (EDST)	
EDI Translation Format (EDFT)	
Trading Partner ID (PNID)	
Transaction Set Purpose (TPUR)	
Acknowledgment Type Code (ACKT)	
Lines Status Code (LSTS)	
Change Code (CHGC)	
23. Enter '1' to create outbound EDI Unutilized Information records.	
If left blank, Unutilized Information records will not be created.	
24. Enter '1' to extract advanced pricing history information from F4074. (Valid for Invoices, Order Acknowledgments, and Change Order Acknowledgments.)	
If left blank, pricing history will not be extracted.	
DOCUMENT PROCESSING CONTROL "DEFAULTS":	
EDI PROCESSING:	
25. Enter '1' to generate EDI data.	
If left blank, EDI data will not be generated.	
PRINT PROCESSING:	
26. Enter '1' to print the document.	
If left blank, the document will not be printed.	
FAX DOCUMENT PROCESSING:	
27. Enter '1' to fax the document.	
If left blank, the document will not be faxed.	
DOCUMENT PROCESSING "DEFAULTS":	
28. Enter the Fax Output Queue.	
If left blank, the fax will be written to the same output queue as printed documents.	

## 47.28 Sales Update (P42800)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
DEFAULT VALUES:	
1. Enter the specific date to be used as the A/R Invoice date OR	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
<p>2. Select the date to be used as the A/R Invoice date:</p> <p>'1' = Date of the Sales Invoice</p> <p>'2' = Actual Shipment date</p> <p>'3' = Sales Update execution date</p> <p>If both options 1 and 2 are blank, the Sales Invoice date will be used.</p> <p>If both options 1 and 2 are not blank, the date in option 1 will be used.</p>	<p>If you enter 1 in this option, all sales orders selected by the program must have a pre-assigned invoice date. If you enter 2 in this option all sales orders selected by the program must have an actual shipment date.</p> <p>You can view the dates applicable to an order in Customer Service Inquiry (P42045) by inquiring on the order, taking an option 5 to view the detail, and selecting F8 to view the dates.</p>
<p>3. Enter the specific date to be used as the General Ledger date OR</p>	
<p>4. Select the date to be used as the General Ledger date:</p> <p>'1' = Date of the Sales Invoice</p> <p>'2' = Actual Shipment date</p> <p>'3' = Sales Update execution date</p> <p>If both options 3 and 4 are blank, the sales update execution date will be used.</p> <p>If both options 3 and 4 are not blank, the date in option 3 will be used.</p>	<p>If you enter 1 in this option, all sales orders selected by the program must have a pre-assigned invoice date. If you enter 2 in this option all sales orders selected by the program must have an actual shipment date.</p> <p>You can view the dates applicable to an order in Customer Service Inquiry (P42045) by inquiring on the order, taking an option 5 to view the detail, and selecting F8 to view the dates.</p>
<p>5. Specify the G/L Account Cost Center (CC) if the AAI CC is blank.</p> <p>If left blank, the default is '3'.</p> <p>'1' = Use the Subsequent CC. If it is also blank, use the CC from the order detail.</p> <p>'2' = Sold to address number</p> <p>'3' = Use the Subsequent CC. If it is also blank, use the CC from the order header for sales entries and the CC in the detail for inventory entries.</p>	<p>The 'Subsequent Cost Center' refers to the Project Number attached to the cost center/branch in Revise Single Business Units (P0006).</p>
<p>6. Enter the override next status code for lines processed.</p> <p>If left blank, will use status code '999' to close out the line.</p>	
<p>7. Enter the 3 character code to be used to update the billing remarks in the G/L file (F0911).</p>	
<p>PRINT SALES JOURNAL:</p>	
<p>8. Enter '1' to print a Sales Journal.</p>	
<p>9. Enter the version of Sales Journal (P42810) to print.</p> <p>If left blank, version ZJDE0001 will be used.</p>	
<p>SUMMARIZATION:</p>	
<p>10. Enter '1' to summarize your A/R entries within the Invoice Number.</p> <p>If left blank, A/R entries will be written in detail.</p>	<p>Enter 1 to have the program summarize lines on a sales order into a single pay item on the invoice. The program will only summarize lines with identical tax and payment term information.</p> <p>If you include tax on sales orders, the value you enter in this processing option should correspond with the method by which you tax orders, that is, at the line level (detail) or the order total level (summary). You specify this method in Tax Rules by Company (P0022).</p>

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
<p>11. Enter '1' to summarize your G/L entries within the Invoice Number.</p> <p>If left blank, G/L entries will be written in detail.</p>	<p>Enter 1 in this option to have the program summarize journal entries by account number, subledger and subledger type.</p>
<p>12. Enter '1' to summarize your Cost of Goods and Inventory G/L entries to a separate batch. These entries will be summarized at the batch level. This option is not allowed in currency mode.</p>	<p>If you choose to summarize Inventory and COGs into a separate batch, the program creates a batch type 'G' for these entries.</p>
UPDATE OPTIONS:	
<p>13. Enter '1' to run this program in final mode.</p> <p>If left blank, this program will produce only the reports and will perform no file or status update.</p>	
<p>14. Enter '1' to bypass updating any or all of the following systems:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>. Accounts Receivables (F0311)</li> <li>. Inventory (F41021/F4115)</li> <li>. Commissions (F42005)</li> <li>. Sales History Summary (F4229)</li> <li>. Sales Rebate History (F4079)</li> <li>. Accounts Payable (F0411)</li> </ul>	<p>If you choose to bypass Accounts Receivable, the program still assigns an invoice number to each sales order, but it doesn't create an invoice record in the A/R system. Instead of writing a journal entry to the A/R trade account at the post (P09800), this program will pull the revenue offset account from AAI 4245.</p> <p>If you choose to bypass A/R the system will not write tax records to the Tax file (F0018). Also, instead of an I batch, the system creates a G batch.</p> <p>The option to bypass Accounts Payable only applies to interbranch orders, and your selection in processing option 26.</p>
<p>15. Enter '1' to purge all associated text lines in the Text Detail File (F4314). These are text lines entered through a selection exit from Sales Order Entry.</p>	
<p>16. Enter '1' to leave completed records in the F4211 file.</p> <p>If left blank, the F4211 record will be purged to the Sales History file (F42119).</p>	
<p>17. Enter '1' to leave Sales Header records in the F4201 file.</p> <p>If left blank, AND all associated detail records have been purged, the F4201 records will be purged to the Sales Header History file (F42019).</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If you have specified to update the order number to the Subledger field in the G/L, this option must be set to '1'.</p>	
<p>18. Enter '1' to purge all pricing history records (F4074).</p> <p>If left blank, pricing history will remain in file.</p>	
<p>19. Select the type of information to be updated to the Subledger field in the journal entries (F0911):</p> <p>'1' = Order Number</p> <p>'2' = Salesman Number</p> <p>'3' = Sold To Address Number</p> <p>'4' = Ship To Address Number</p> <p>'5' = Item Number (Short)</p>	
INVOICE NUMBER UPDATE:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
20. Enter an index number (1-10) used to assign the A/R Next Number. If left blank, index 01 will be used as the default.	If you use Sales Update to assign invoice numbers to sales orders, enter the next number bucket from which the program is to retrieve a beginning invoice number. You set up next numbers for invoices in the Next Numbers screen (P0002) under system code 03 (Accounts Receivable).
21. Enter the document type to be used for the invoice. If left blank, 'RI' will be used. <b>NOTE:</b> You will have to use the above options if you have not already assigned the A/R number at the time of invoice print.	
SALES COST UPDATE:	
22. Enter '1' to update the item cost with the current inventory cost by running the Sales Cost Update (P42950) prior to sales update.	The P42950 serves three purposes depending on the version you run. It will update sales order costs, prices, or exchanges rates (and the corresponding amounts).  You set this option to 1 to have the P42950 make updates to sales orders before they run through Sales Update. You specify the version of P42950 you want to run in processing option 23.  The P42950 will not change costs on sales order lines for which items have been relieved from inventory (via Ship Confirm). When inventory is relieved, the system writes a Cardex record (F4111) containing the cost; therefore, changing the costs afterwards could cause integrity problems.
23. Enter the version of Sales Cost Update to run. If left blank, will use version ZJDE0002.	Version ZJDE0002 is preset to update sales order costs.
SALES FLEX ACCOUNTING:	
24. Enter '1' to use sales flex accounting. If left blank, sales flex accounting will not be used.	Sales flex accounting allows you to define the business unit, subsidiary or subledger portion of an account number based on category codes and other variables that pertain to an item or address number on a sales order. You work with flexible sales accounting in P40296.
INTER-BRANCH SALES:	
25. Enter the Order Type used to record inter-branch sales. To specify more than one, type them one after the other along this field.	
26. Enter a '1' to create A/R (F0311) and A/P (F0411) batches. If left blank, an interbranch JE (F0911) batch will be created.	
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
Enter the version for each program. If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.	
27. A/R Functional Server (XT0311Z1)	The A/R server you specify here will have some affect on the invoices created by Sales Update. See processing options for XT0311Z1 for more details.
28. G/L Functional Server (XT0911Z1)	The G/L server you specify here will have some affect on the journal entries created by Sales Update. See processing options for XT0911Z1 for more details.

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
29. A/P Functional Server (XT0411Z1)	
BULK PRODUCT OPTIONS:	
30. Enter a '1' if the quantity shipped is at standard for sales lines without bulk quantities. Leave blank if the quantity shipped is at ambient.	
31. Enter the address book number to be used as the owner for duty paid when the tank is commingled for duty and the owner has not been specified.	
32. Enter the address book number to be used as the owner for duty free when the tank is commingled for duty and the owner has not been specified.	
33. Enter a '1' to record temperature gain/loss based on cost. Enter a '2' to record temperature gain/loss based on revenue. Leave blank if no temperature gain/loss is to be recorded.	
34. Enter a '1' to update quantities to the following files at ambient if the order was priced at ambient. Leave blank to update all quantities at standard. If this processing option is used, item quantities may not balance to the item ledger since the item ledger is updated at standard. . Sales History Summary (F4229) . Item History (F4115) . G/L Account Ledger (F0911) More ....	
AGREEMENT MANAGEMENT CONTROL:	
35. If the agreement management system is in use and the depot from which product will be relieved is a foreign depot, an agreement search will be performed to find a valid borrow agreement. Specify which destination should be used by the search program. Enter the specific branch/plant to be used as the destination. OR Enter '1' to use *ANY or enter '2' to use the user's default br/plt.	
INTERNAL SALES OPTION:	
36. Enter a '1' to use the Account number from the sales detail as the Revenue account or leave blank to use the account number as the Cost of Goods Sold account number.	

## 47.29 Print Sales Journal (P42810)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
RECORD SELECTIONS:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
1. Enter '1' to update the Status Codes of the Sales Order.  If left blank the Status Codes of the order will not be changed.	
2. Enter the override Next Status code for the sales order.  If left blank the next available status code from the Order Activity Rule (F40203) will be used. This option will only be in effect if processing option one is set to '1'.	
PRINT OPTION:	
3. Select the currency printing mode of this report:  ' ' - Print in Domestic Only '1' - Print in Foreign Only '2' - Print in Both Domestic and Foreign currencies.	

## 47.30 General Ledger Post (P09800)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
BATCH SELECTION:	
1. Enter Batch Number or Batch Date or Batch User ID	
PRINT SELECTION:	
2. Identify how to print amount fields on Post Journal:  '1' = to Millions (w/ commas) '2' = to Billions (w/o commas)  Blank (Default) = No Journal Printed.	
3. Identify which account number to print on report:  '1' = Account Number '2' = Short Account ID '3' = Unstructured Account '4' = (Default) Number Entered During Input	
FIXED ASSETS:	
4. Enter a '1' to post F/A entries to Fixed Assets.  <b>Note:</b> DREAM Writer version ZJDE0001 of Post G/L Entries to Assets (P12800) is executed when this option is selected. All transactions selected from that DREAM Writer will be posted rather than just the current entries being posted to G/L.	
5. Enter a 'Y' if you wish to explode parent item time down to the assembly component level. Component billing rates will be used. (This applies to batch type 'T' only.)	
CASH BASIS ACCOUNTING:	
6. Enter a '1' to create and post Cash Basis accounting entries. (Applies to batch type G, K, M, W, & R only.)	



Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
7. Enter units ledger type for Cash Basis Accounting entries. (Default of blank will use "ZU" ledger type.)	
ACCOUNTING FOR 52 PERIODS:	
8. Enter a '1' for 52 Period Post. <b>Note:</b> DREAM Writer data selection is used for 52 period posting ONLY. It is NOT used for the standard post to the F0902. Additionally, 52 period date patterns must be set up.	
TAX FILE UPDATE:	
9. Identify when to update the Tax Work file (F0018): '1' = V.A.T. or Use Tax only '2' = for All Tax Amounts '3' = for All Tax Explanation Codes Blank (Default) = No Update to File <b>Note:</b> When using Vertex Taxes the Vertex Tax Register file will be updated instead of the Tax Work file for methods '1', '2', and '3'.	
10. Adjust VAT Account for Cash Receipt Adjustments and Write Offs. Tax explanation must be a 'V'. '1' = update VAT amount only '2' = update VAT amount, extended price and taxable amount	
11. Adjust VAT Account for Discount Taken. The Tax Rules file must be set to Calculate Tax on Gross Amount, including Discount and Calculate Discount on Gross Amount, including Tax. Tax explanation must be a 'V'. '1' = update VAT amount only '2' = update VAT amount, extended price and taxable amount	
PROPERTY MANAGEMENT:	
12. Enter DREAM Writer version of Property Management G/L Transaction Creation to be executed. Default is version ZJDE0001. (This applies to batch types '2' and '/'.)	
UPDATE OPTION:	
13. Enter '1' to update short ID number, company, fiscal year/period number, century, and fiscal quarter in unposted transaction records selected for posting. (May be required for custom input programs.)	
REPORT FORMAT:	
14. Enter a '1' to print the Posting Journal in a 198 character format. The default of blank will print the format with 132 characters.	
DETAILED CURRENCY RESTATEMENT:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
15. Enter a '1' to create currency restatement entries. This creates records in the XA, YA, and/or ZA ledgers depending on the version you are running.	
16. Enter the version of the Detailed Currency Restatement (P11411) to execute. Default of blank will execute ZJDE0001.	
RECONCILIATION FILE PROCESSING:	
17. Enter a '1' to update the Cross-Environment Reconciliation file. Blank will not update the reconciliation file. <b>Note:</b> The Cross-Environment Reconciliation file can also be updated through the stand-alone Cross-Environment File Creation program.	
REVERSING JOURNAL ENTRIES:	
18. When normal number of periods = 12 or 13 and posting a reversing entry into period 12 or 13, enter a '1' to create reversing journal entries to the first period of the following year. This is to avoid posting reversing entries to an adjusting period.  Example: Normal number of periods = 12. Period 12 ends 12/30/xx and period 13 ends 12/31/xx. Journal Entry date of 12/30/xx will post reversing entry to period 01 of next year if processing option is set to '1'.	
BATCH TYPE SELECTION:	
<b>Note:</b> This option should NOT be changed by User.	

## 47.31 General Journal By Batch (P09301)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
PRINT OPTIONS:	
1. Select Account number to print: '1' = account number '2' = short account ID '3' = unstructured account '4' = number entered during input. If left blank, the number entered during input will be printed.	
2. Enter a '1' to print units. If left blank, units will not be printed.	
3. Enter a '1' to suppress commas when displaying amount fields. This will allow the printing of additional significant digits in each amount field.	
ALTERNATE CHART OF ACCOUNTS PRINT:	
4. Select which account category code (1 - 23) to print in place of the account number. Default of blank will print the account number specified in option number 1.	

---

**Processing Option****Processing Options Requiring Further Description**

---

## GENERIC TEXT:

5. Enter a '1' to print the generic text for journal entry lines in a 40-character width, a '2' to print text in an 80-character width.

If left blank, generic text will not be printed.

---



## Periodic Processing Options

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 48.1, "Customer Price Group Generation \(P40932\),"](#)
- [Section 48.2, "Item Price Group Generation \(P40931\),"](#)
- [Section 48.3, "Base Price Report \(P41830\),"](#)
- [Section 48.4, "Sales Price Level Conversion - Proof \(P41816\),"](#)
- [Section 48.5, "Order Repricing for Standard Pricing \(P421301\),"](#)
- [Section 48.6, "Update Sales Cost, Price, or Exchange Rate \(P42950\)."](#)

### 48.1 Customer Price Group Generation (P40932)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
GROUP CODES:	
1. Specify up to five customer group codes to be processed.	
If no customer group codes are specified, all group codes will be used.	
Customer Group Code 1	
Customer Group Code 2	
Customer Group Code 3	
Customer Group Code 4	
Customer Group Code 5	

### 48.2 Item Price Group Generation (P40931)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
GROUP CODES:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
1. Specify up to five item group codes to be processed. If no item group codes are specified, all group codes will be processed. Item Group Code 1 Item Group Code 2 Item Group Code 3 Item Group Code 4 Item Group Code 5	

## 48.3 Base Price Report (P41830)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
UPDATE OPTIONS:  1. Enter a '1' to perform updates to the Base Price file.	
ADJUSTMENT OPTIONS: If either option 2 or 3 is left blank, no price adjustments will take place.  2. Enter the base price adjustment type. 'A' - adjust price by amount '%' - adjust price by percentage '*' - adjust price to an override price	
3. Enter the amount used to add, multiply, or override the price. For 'A' (amount) adjustment: Enter 10 to increase price by 10 Enter -10 to decrease price by 10 For '%' (percentage) adjustment: Enter 10 to increase price by 10% Enter -10 to decrease price by 10% For '*' (price override) adjustment: Enter 10 to change price to 10	
PRICE ADDITIONS:  4. Enter the effective date and the expiration date for the creation of new base price records. If left blank, the selected price records will be changed. <b>Note:</b> The effective date must be less than the expiration date. Effective From Date Effective Thru Date	

## 48.4 Sales Price Level Conversion - Proof (P41816)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
PROCESS CONTROL:	
1. Enter the price level to update to.	
2. If updating to price level '1', enter the branch to default the price from.	
If updating from a price level '3', the price will default from the primary location.	
3. Enter a '1' to run in final mode and update files.	
If blank, no file updates will occur.	
4. Enter a '1' to print only exceptions on the edit report.	
A blank will print all items.	
5. Enter a '1' to delete expired records.	
If blank, expired records will not be deleted.	

## 48.5 Order Repricing for Standard Pricing (P421301)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
RECORD SELECTION:	
1. Enter the next status code to be selected for processing. Any sales detail records with a different Next Status will be bypassed.	
If option is left blank, will select all.	
DEFAULT VALUE:	
2. Enter the override next status code for the new sales detail records.	
If left blank, will default to the Order Activity Rule (F40203).	
UPDATE OPTIONS:	
3. Enter a '1' to make this program recognize the preset starting pricing category level associated with the corresponding Customer Pricing Group.	
If left blank, the default starting level will be the first pricing category level in the Inventory Pricing Rule.	
Enter a '2' to apply the price rule only if a level has been preset.	
4. Enter '1' to allow sales order detail records to be repriced repeatedly.	
If left blank, will only allow each detail line to be repriced once.	
<b>Note:</b> Please refer to the help instructions for more detail on this processing option.	
PRINT OPTION:	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
-------------------	--

5. Enter '1' to print amounts in foreign currency or '2' to print in both foreign and domestic currency.

If left blank, will print in domestic currency only.

## 48.6 Update Sales Cost, Price, or Exchange Rate (P42950)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
-------------------	--

UPDATE OPTIONS:

1. Enter '1' to update Sales Order with the most current unit cost.

If left blank, will not update cost.

2. Enter '1' to update the currency exchange rate. Please note that only the domestic amounts will be re-calculated, the foreign amounts will remain the same.

If left blank the currency exchange rate will remain the same.

3. Enter '1' to update the inter-company currency exchange rate. Foreign amounts will not be re-calculated.

If left blank, will not update the inter-company exchange rate.

UPDATE PRICE OPTIONS:

4. Enter '1' to recalculate the unit price of the sales order.

If left blank, the unit price will remain the same.

5. Enter '1' to recalculate the Transfer Price for inter-branch sales. The pricing method specified when the order was entered will be used.

6. Specify the date on which all base price and advanced price adjustment recalculations will be based:

' ' - Transaction/Order Date

'1' - Requested Ship Date

'2' - Promised Ship Date

'3' - Original Promised Date

'4' - Actual Ship Date

'5' - System Date

'6' - Invoice Date

'\*' - Use System Constants value

'P' - Use Based-on Date Preference

**NOTE:** Processing options 7 thru 9 are supported only by the Advanced Price Adjustment Module (45).

7. Enter the Line Type of the new sales detail line item. This line item will contain the difference between the old sales price and the newly recalculated price.

If left blank, will update the new price directly to the item. This must be a non-inventory Line Type.



---

**Processing Option****Processing Options Requiring Further Description**

---

8. If you have specified in the last processing option to create a sales detail record to record the price difference, enter the override next status of the detail line.

If left blank, will use the original detail line's next status.

---

9. Enter '1' to base recalculation on the original order quantity.

If left blank, the system will recalculate based on the current quantities of the order.

---



## Setup Processing Options

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 49.1, "Order/Supplier Template Revisions \(P4015\),"](#)
- [Section 49.2, "Customer Template Rebuild \(P42815\),"](#)
- [Section 49.3, "Branch Relationship Revisions \(P3403\)."](#)

### 49.1 Order/Supplier Template Revisions (P4015)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
PROCESSING CONTROL:	
1. Select the format for order template processing.	
If left blank, '1' will be used:	
1 = Sold-to Number (Sales)	
2 = Ship-to Number (Sales)	
3 = Supplier Number (Purchasing)	
4 = User Number (Purchasing)	
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS:	
Enter the version of each program:	
If left blank, ZJDE0001 will be used.	
2. Customer Service Inquiry (P42045)	
3. Open Purchase Orders (P430301)	

### 49.2 Customer Template Rebuild (P42815)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
PROCESSING CONTROL:	
1. Enter the Order Template Type to be created.	Enter the name of the template, which you must set up in UDC 40/OT prior to having the program create the template.

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
2. Enter how the order template lines should be sequenced. If left blank, '1' will be used: 1 = DREAM Writer Data Sequencing 2 = Most frequently ordered	
3. Enter the maximum number of lines to be included on the template. If left blank, all items will be included.	
4. Enter the minimum times an item must be ordered to be included on the template. If left blank, all items will be included.	
5. Enter the effective dates to be used on the order template lines. Effective From Date Effective Thru Date	

## 49.3 Branch Relationship Revisions (P3403)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
SUPPLY OR DEMAND MODE: 1. Enter the default mode for entry of Branch Relationships. D = Demand branch in header S = Supply branch in header	
DISPLAY FORMAT: 2. Enter a '1' to display the sales transfer format. If left blank, the branch relationship format will be displayed.	
LEVEL UPDATE: 3. Enter a '1' to automatically update the Branch Level field.	

## Advanced & Technical Processing Options

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Section 50.1, "Batch File Purge \(P00PURGE\),"](#)
- [Section 50.2, "Purge Sales Order Header File \(F4201\) \(P4201P\),"](#)
- [Section 50.3, "Extended Text Line Deletion - F4314 \(P4314P\),"](#)
- [Section 50.4, "Recurring Batch Order Entry \(P4001Z\),"](#)
- [Section 50.5, "Purge Details to History \(P42996\),"](#)
- [Section 50.6, "Start/Stop Subsystem \(P40420\)."](#)

### 50.1 Batch File Purge (P00PURGE)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
SAVE PURGED RECORDS:	
1. Enter a '1' to save the purged records to a special purge library. (Default of blanks will NOT save any purged records.)	
REORGANIZE FILE:	
2. Enter a '1' to reorganize the purged file. (Default of blanks will NOT reorganize the file.)	

### 50.2 Purge Sales Order Header File (F4201) (P4201P)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
PURGE OPTIONS:	
1. Enter a '1' to save purged records to a special purge library. If left blank, will not save any purged records.	<b>Note:</b> Detail records (F4211) should be purged prior to header records.
2. Enter a '1' to reorganize the purged file. If left blank, will not reorganize.	
3. Enter a '1' to purge header records to the Sales Header History File (F42019).	<b>Note:</b> Detail records (F42119) should be purged prior to header records.

## 50.3 Extended Text Line Deletion - F4314 (P4314P)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
1. Enter a '1' to save the purged records to a special purge library. (Default of blanks will NOT save any purged records.)	
2. Enter a '1' to reorganize the purged file. (Default of blanks will NOT reorganize the file.)	

## 50.4 Recurring Batch Order Entry (P4001Z)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
ORDER ENTRY DEFAULT VALUES:	
1. Order Type	
2. Line Type	
3. Beginning Status	
4. Next Status	
5. Line Number Increment	
DREAM WRITER VERSIONS: Enter the version for each program. If left blank, ZJDE0002 will be used.	
6. Order Edit and Creation (P40211Z)	
AUTOMATIC PROCESSING:	
7. Enter a '1' to edit/create order lines via the subsystem. If left blank, orders will be written to the Batch Receiver files only.	
FIELD DISPLAY CONTROL:	
8. Enter '1' to protect pricing driver fields.	
9. Enter '1' to suppress Mark-for address.	

## 50.5 Purge Details to History (P42996)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
UPDATE OPTION:	
1. Enter '1' to purge detail records (F4211) to history only if ALL of the detail lines of an order have been closed.  If left blank, all DREAM Writer selected records at a status of "999" will be purged.	
2. Enter '1' to purge all associated pricing history (F4074). If left blank, pricing history will remain in file.	

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
3. Enter a '1' to purge detail tag records (F49211) to history only if ALL of the detail tag lines of an order have been closed.	
If left blank all DREAM Writer selected records at a status of "999" will be purged.	

## 50.6 Start/Stop Subsystem (P40420)

Processing Option	Processing Options Requiring Further Description
SUBSYSTEM MODE:	
1. Enter one of the following:	
'1' - to Start the Job/Subsystem	
'2' - to Stop the Job	
'3' - Stop all Jobs and Terminate the Subsystem	





---

## Understand Preference Fields (ECS)

This appendix contains the topic:

- [Section A.1, "Understanding Preference Fields \(ECS\)."](#)

### A.1 Understanding Preference Fields (ECS)

This appendix describes the preference fields and provides a set of cross-reference tables. Preference fields are generally categorized as:

- Key fields
- Search fields
- Definition fields

Key fields are shared by all preferences. You use these fields to enter standard preference information. Key fields are optional. You can use key fields as search criteria to have the system match preferences to sales orders. These fields are found in the header portion of the Preference Profiles Revisions form.

Search fields are marked with a greater than (>) sign next to the field name. The system uses these fields in the same way as it uses key fields. Each preference has search fields unique to its requirements. These fields are found in the detail portion of each preference's Preference Profiles Revisions form. Search fields are optional. You use these fields to further narrow the search criteria specified by key fields. For example, if you indicate that the search field called Branch/Plant should be used as additional selection criteria, the system selects sales orders that match the unique combination of customer, item, and branch/plant criteria.

Preference definition fields are the fields that the system uses to resolve the preferences. Each preference has one or more definition fields unique to its requirements. These fields are found in the detail portion of each preference's Preference Profiles Revisions form. Definition fields are required, although in some cases a valid value can be a blank. Typically, the system uses the values you input in these fields to override or add information on a sales order.

Three sets of tables presented in this appendix include all the fields found on the Preference Profile Revisions form for all of the ECS preferences. These tables are provided to logically group preferences according to:

- Key field
- Common group (search and definition fields)
- Selective group (search and definition fields)

The first table shows a complete list of preferences and their key fields. The preferences are listed alphabetically from top to bottom. The key fields are listed from left to right in the order they appear on the Preference Profiles Revisions form.

The second table shows a matrix of the search and definition fields that are common among selected preferences. The preferences are listed alphabetically from top to bottom. The fields are listed alphabetically from left to right.

The third table shows the search and definition fields that are unique to selected preferences not already listed in the second table. The preferences are listed alphabetically from top to bottom. The fields are listed from left to right in the order they appear on each preference's Preference Profile Revisions form.

**Figure A-1 Preferences and Key Fields**

Key Fields								
Field →	Customer Number	Customer Group	Item Number	Item Group	Effective From	Effective Through	Quantity From	Quantity Through
Preference ↓								
Container Deposit/Rental	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Customer Currency (ECS)	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Document Distribution (ECS)	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Document Set (ECS)	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
End Use	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Freight (ECS)	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Grade & Potency	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Inventory Commitment	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Invoice Cycle	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Line of Business	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Load/Promise Date (ECS)	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Next Order Status (ECS)	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Payment Terms (ECS)	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Price Adjustment Schedule	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS)	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Print Message (ECS)	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Product Allocation (ECS)	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Quality (ECS)	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Revenue Cost Center (ECS)	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
Sales Commission (ECS)	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key
User Defined Price Codes 1, 2, and 3	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key	Key

Figure A-2 Common Search and Definition Fields (1 of 3)

Common Group – Search and Definition (DEF) Fields									
Field →	Adjustment Schedule	Branch/ Plant	Carrier	Currency Code	Document Set	Duty Status	End Use	Invoice Cycle	Lag Days
Preference ↓									
Container Deposit/Rental†		Search							
Customer Currency (ECS)		Search		DEF					
Document Distribution (ECS)									
Document Set (ECS)		Search			DEF				
End Use						DEF	DEF		
Freight (ECS)†		Search	Search						
Grade & Potency									
Inventory Commitment		DEF	DEF						
Invoice Cycle		Search						DEF	
Line of Business									
Load/Promise Date (ECS)		Search	Search						DEF
Next Order Status (ECS)†		Search							
Payment Terms (ECS)		Search							
Price Adjustment Schedule	DEF	Search							
Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS)†		Search							
Print Message (ECS)		Search	Search			Search	Search		
Product Allocation (ECS)†		Search							
Quality (ECS)		Search							
Revenue Cost Center (ECS)		Search							
Sales Commission (ECS)		Search							
User Defined Price Codes 1, 2, and 3									
Shaded cells indicate fields that are used in only one preference.									
† Also refer to the following Selective Group table for additional search and definition fields for this preference.									

**Figure A–3 Common Search and Definition Fields (2 of 3)**

Common Group – Search and Definition (DEF) Fields									
Field → Preference ↓	Leadtime Transit	Line of Business	Line Type	Mode of Transport	Order Type	Payment Instrument	Payment Terms	Percent to Fill	Price Codes
Container Deposit/Rental									
Customer Currency (ECS)									
Document Distribution (ECS)†				Search					
Document Set (ECS)									
End Use									
Freight (ECS)†				Search					
Grade & Potency									
Inventory Commitment				DEF				DEF	
Invoice Cycle									
Line of Business		DEF							
Load/Promise Date (ECS)	DEF			Search					
Next Order Status (ECS)			Search		Search				
Payment Terms (ECS)						DEF	DEF		
Price Adjustment Schedule									
Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS)									
Print Message (ECS)		Search		Search		Search			
Product Allocation (ECS)									
Quality (ECS)				Search					
Revenue Cost Center (ECS)		Search							
Sales Commission (ECS)		Search							
User Defined Price Codes 1, 2, and 3									DEF
Shaded cells indicate fields that are used in only one preference.									
† Also refer to the following Selective Group table for additional search and definition fields for this preference.									

**Figure A-4 Common Search and Definition Fields (3 of 3)**

Common Group – Search and Definition (DEF) Fields								
Field → Preference ↓	Print Message	Quality Test Required	Revenue Cost Center	Route Code	Sales- person Code 01	Salesperson Commission 01	Sales- person Code 02	Salesperson Commission 02
Container Deposit/Rental								
Customer Currency (ECS)								
Document Distribution (ECS)								
Document Set (ECS)								
End Use								
Freight (ECS)								
Grade & Potency								
Inventory Commitment				DEF				
Invoice Cycle								
Line of Business								
Load/Promise Date (ECS)				Search				
Next Order Status (ECS)								
Payment Terms (ECS)								
Price Adjustment Schedule								
Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS)								
Print Message (ECS)	DEF							
Product Allocation (ECS)								
Quality (ECS)		DEF						
Revenue Cost Center (ECS)			DEF		Search			
Sales Commission (ECS)					DEF	DEF	DEF	DEF
User Defined Price Codes 1, 2, and 3								
Shaded cells indicate fields that are used in only one preference.								

**Figure A–5 Selective Search and Definition Fields (1 of 5)**

Selective Group – Search and Definition (DEF) Fields										
Field → Preference ↓	Deposit / Rental	Transaction / Summary	G/L Offset	Tip Depot	Mode of Transport	Document Code	Address Number	Descrip- tion	Output Queue	Copy
Container Deposit/Rental†	DEF	DEF	DEF							
Customer Currency (ECS)										
Document Distribution (ECS)‡				Search	Search	Search	DEF	DEF	DEF	DEF
Document Set (ECS)										
End Use										
Freight (ECS)										
Grade & Potency										
Inventory Commitment										
Invoice Cycle										
Line of Business										
Load/Promise Date (ECS)										
Next Order Status (ECS)										
Payment Terms (ECS)										
Price Adjustment Schedule										
Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS)										
Print Message (ECS)										
Product Allocation (ECS)										
Quality (ECS)										
Revenue Cost Center (ECS)										
Sales Commission (ECS)										
User Defined Price Codes 1, 2, and 3										
Shaded cells indicate fields that are used in only one preference.										
‡ Also refer to the previous Common Group table for additional search and definition fields for this preference.										

**Figure A-6 Selective Search and Definition Fields (2 of 5)**

Selective Group – Search and Definition (DEF) Fields									
Field →	Billable/ Payable	Delivery/ Line/ Trip Level	Distance Based	Preference/ Trip Sheet Distance	Distance	Unit of Measure	Zone Based	Fixed Fee	Tariff Code
Preference ↓									
Container Deposit/Rental									
Customer Currency (ECS)									
Document Distribution (ECS)									
Document Set (ECS)									
End Use									
Freight (ECS)‡	Search	DEF	DEF	DEF	DEF	DEF	DEF	DEF	DEF
Grade & Potency									
Inventory Commitment									
Invoice Cycle									
Line of Business									
Load/Promise Date (ECS)									
Next Order Status (ECS)									
Payment Terms (ECS)									
Price Adjustment Schedule									
Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS)									
Print Message (ECS)									
Product Allocation (ECS)									
Quality (ECS)									
Revenue Cost Center (ECS)									
Sales Commission (ECS)									
User Defined Price Codes 1, 2, and 3									
Shaded cells indicate fields that are used in only one preference.									
‡ Also refer to the previous Common Group table for additional search and definition fields for this preference.									



**Figure A-7 Selective Search and Definition Fields (3 of 5)**

Selective Group – Search and Definition (DEF) Fields					
Field →	From Grade	Thru Grade	From Potency	Thru Potency	Days Before Expire
Preference ↓					
Container Deposit/Rental					
Customer Currency (ECS)					
Document Distribution (ECS)					
Document Set (ECS)					
End Use					
Freight (ECS)					
Grade & Potency	DEF	DEF	DEF	DEF	DEF
Inventory Commitment					
Invoice Cycle					
Line of Business					
Load/Promise Date (ECS)					
Next Order Status (ECS)					
Payment Terms (ECS)					
Price Adjustment Schedule					
Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS)					
Print Message (ECS)					
Product Allocation (ECS)					
Quality (ECS)					
Revenue Cost Center (ECS)					
Sales Commission (ECS)					
User Defined Price Codes 1, 2, and 3					
Shaded cells indicate fields that are used in only one preference.					



**Figure A-8 Selective Search and Definition Fields (4 of 5)**

<b>Selective Group – Search and Definition (DEF) Fields</b>					
<b>Field →</b>	<b>Status Code Last</b>	<b>Status Code Next</b>	<b>Pricing Unit of Measure</b>	<b>Price at Ambient/ Standard/ Weight</b>	<b>Price Based on Date</b>
<b>Preference ↓</b>					
Container Deposit/Rental					
Customer Currency (ECS)					
Document Distribution (ECS)					
Document Set (ECS)					
End Use					
Freight (ECS)					
Grade & Potency					
Inventory Commitment					
Invoice Cycle					
Line of Business					
Load/Promise Date (ECS)					
Next Order Status (ECS)‡	Search	DEF			
Payment Terms (ECS)					
Price Adjustment Schedule					
Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS)‡			DEF	DEF	DEF
Print Message (ECS)					
Product Allocation (ECS)					
Quality (ECS)					
Revenue Cost Center (ECS)					
Sales Commission (ECS)					
User Defined Price Codes 1, 2, and 3					
Shaded cells indicate fields that are used in only one preference.					
‡ Also refer to the previous Common Group table for additional search and definition fields for this preference.					

**Figure A–9 Selective Search and Definition Fields (5 of 5)**

Selective Group – Search and Definition (DEF) Fields						
Field → Preference ↓	Allocation Method	Base Unit of Measure	Quantity Limit	Percentage of Pool	Quantity Pool Size	Quantity Sold
Container Deposit/Rental						
Customer Currency (ECS)						
Document Distribution (ECS)						
Document Set (ECS)						
End Use						
Freight (ECS)						
Grade & Potency						
Inventory Commitment						
Invoice Cycle						
Line of Business						
Load/Promise Date (ECS)						
Next Order Status (ECS)						
Payment Terms (ECS)						
Price Adjustment Schedule						
Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS)						
Print Message (ECS)						
Product Allocation (ECS)‡	DEF	DEF	DEF	DEF	DEF	DEF
Quality (ECS)						
Revenue Cost Center (ECS)						
Sales Commission (ECS)						
User Defined Price Codes 1, 2, and 3						
Shaded cells indicate fields that are used in only one preference.						
‡ Also refer to the previous Common Group table for additional search and definition fields for this preference.						

---

## Functional Servers

This appendix contains the topic:

- [Section B.1, "About Functional Servers."](#)

### B.1 About Functional Servers

Several JD Edwards World programs access functional servers. The purpose of functional servers is to provide a central location for standard business rules about entering documents, such as vouchers, invoices, and journal entries. These business rules establish the following:

- Data dictionary default values
- Field edits and valid values
- Error processing
- Relationships between fields or applications

The advantages of a functional server are:

- It reduces maintenance of entry programs because edit rules reside in one central location.
- You can standardize documents across all applications because you create them using the same business rules.
- Generally, the user interface (appearance and interaction) of a form is now separate from how a program works.

#### **To set up business rules for an entry program**

The steps for setting up business rules for an entry program are:

1. Create a DREAM Writer version for a specific functional server program (for example, XT0411Z1 for voucher entry).
2. Set the processing options within the version according to your company requirements.
3. Specify the version you want the entry program to use in the processing options for that entry program.

You can have all your entry programs use the same DREAM Writer version (and thus, use the same rules) or you can set up different DREAM Writer versions. JD Edwards World provides DREAM Writer version ZJDE0001 as the default functional server version for your entry programs.

---

---

**Caution:** Only the person responsible for system-wide setup should make changes to the functional server version. For more information about how to set up DREAM Writer versions, see the *JD Edwards World Technical Foundation Guide*.

---

---

### **B.1.1 Example: Voucher Processing Functional Server**

The following programs use the voucher processing functional server. JD Edwards World provides two demo versions of the functional server, ZJDE0001 and ZJDE0002.

- Speed Voucher Entry (P040015)
- Standard Voucher Entry (P04105)
- Void Payment Entry (P4704103)
- Credit Tied to Debit Bill (P041010)
- Multi-Voucher (P041017)
- Calculate Withholding (P04580)

## A

---

Account Number  
    defined, 3-7  
Accounting Branch/Plant  
    defined, 3-13  
Accounts receivable information  
    enter, 3-6  
Activating preferences, 31-2  
actor Value - Numeric  
    defined, 25-5  
Additional orders  
    overview, 1-6, 10-1  
Address Book Information, 33-2  
Address Book Information form, 33-2  
Address Book-Additional Information form, 33-2  
Address types  
    defining defaults, 33-5, 37-10  
Advanced and technical operations  
    overview, 1-8  
Age From  
    defined, 40-8  
Allowable  
    defined, 40-8  
Amount - Credit Price  
    defined, 24-5  
Amount - Extended Price  
    defined, 3-13  
Amount - Override List Price  
    defined, 25-5  
Amount - Price per Unit  
    defined, 24-4  
A/P Interface Y/N - Distribution  
    defined, 38-4  
Application Constants form, 36-12  
Apply Commission (Y/N)  
    defined, 3-20  
Apply Freight - Y/N  
    defined, 38-5  
Apply Retainage - Y/N  
    defined, 38-5  
Applying markup costs for interbranch sales, 16-2  
    example, 16-2  
Approved  
    defined, 21-8  
Approving journal entries, 21-7

A/R Interface Y/N - Distribution  
    defined, 38-4  
Arranging the preference hierarchy, 31-12  
Assigning an item to an item group, 31-11  
Assigning commission information, 41-5  
Assigning customer and items to groups, 31-10  
Assigning invoice numbers, 21-2  
Assigning rules to customers and customer  
    groups, 25-6  
Authorization Number  
    defined, 3-8  
Automatic accounting instructions  
    adding memo text, 43-5  
    record types, 43-5  
    setup, 43-1  
    used in ecs sales order management, 43-1  
Automatic Accounting Instructions form, 43-3  
Availability  
    defining item availability, 36-8  
Available  
    defined, 6-14  
Available Templates form, 28-7  
Available to promise, 6-14

## B

---

Backorders  
    releasing, 7-9, 11-3  
    releasing in batch, 11-5  
    releasing online, 11-3  
Backorders to fill  
    run report, 11-4  
Backorders to Fill report, 7-9  
Base Price Revisions form, 24-2, 24-3  
    fold area, 24-4  
    viewing category codes, 24-5  
Base Price Revisions/Adjustments report, 24-6  
Base pricing, 24-1  
    credits, 24-5  
    defining, 24-2  
    generating reports, 24-5  
    multi-currency, 24-5  
    preference hierarchy, 23-9  
    setup, 23-1  
    updating, 24-6  
        changing existing prices, 24-6

- creating future prices, 24-7
- Based On Date Name
  - defined, 34-5
- Based-on-date invoicing, 34-2
- Basic sales order entry, 2-1
- Batch Control Required (Y/N) - Inv
  - defined, 36-13
- Batch Date From
  - defined, 21-7
- Batch Date Thrur
  - defined, 21-7
- Batch Management Approval Required - Inv
  - defined, 36-13
- Batch Number
  - defined, 21-7
- Batch Order Activity Register, 4-7
- Batch Order Additional Detail window, 4-2
- Batch Order Creation Exception report, 4-7
- Batch orders, 2-1
  - entering, 4-2
  - processing, 4-6
  - processing individually, 4-3
- Batch Status
  - defined, 21-7
- Batch types
  - for interbranch orders, 16-8
- Billing Address Type
  - defined, 33-7, 37-8
- Billing cycles, 20-1
- Billing information
  - reviewing, 7-14
- Bi-weekly invoicing, 34-2
- Blanket orders, 13-1
  - controlling inventory commitment, 12-1, 13-1
  - creating, 13-1
  - creating a sales order from, 13-2
  - defined, 10-2
  - if sales order quantity exceeds blanket
    - quantity, 13-3
  - multiple, 13-4
  - releasing, 11-3, 13-5
- Blanket Orders form, 13-2
- Blanket Release form, 13-3
- Branch sales markups
  - for a demand branch, 42-5
  - setup, 42-1
- Branch Sales Markups form, 42-2
  - fold area, 42-2
- Branch/Plant
  - defined, 3-5, 42-4
- Branch/plant constants
  - setting up constants
    - defining batch control constants, 36-12
    - defining branch/plant constants, 36-2
    - defining item availability, 36-8
    - defining system constants, 36-10
    - defining the location format, 36-13
- Branch/Plant Constants form, 36-2
- Branch/Plant Constants-Pg 1 form, 36-2
- Branch/Plant Constants-Pg 2 form, 36-14

- Bulk Load Confirmation form, 17-3
- Bulk product
  - pricing, 30-23
- Bulk product gain/loss, 21-2

## C

---

- Calculation Rule
  - defined, 34-4
- Calculation rules, 20-3, 34-2
- Cancel Date
  - defined, 3-5
- Carrier Number
  - defined, 3-8
- Cash Discount
  - defined, 3-18
- Category - G/L
  - defined, 38-5
- Changing existing prices, 24-6
- Check Credit form, 7-2
- Check Price & Availability form, 6-3
- Check Price and Availability form
  - access from sales order, 6-4
- Column to Include on Sales Journal
  - defined, 38-5
- Commission and royalty information
  - enter, 3-9
- Commission Code 1
  - defined, 3-9
- Commission Code 2
  - defined, 3-10
- Commission Code Type
  - defined, 41-9
- Commission/Royalty Information form, 41-8
  - fold area, 41-9
- Commissions
  - fixed percentages, 41-7
    - additional variables, 41-12
  - locating on, 41-2
  - order detail line, 41-2
  - order entry, 41-2
  - passwords, 41-15
  - reports, 41-2
  - setup, 41-1
    - additional commission information, 41-7
    - assigning commission information, 41-5
    - passwords, 41-11
    - setting up a sales group, 41-2
    - variable commission percentages, 41-11
- Commit field on the Sales Order Detail file
  - (F4211), 6-7
- Commitment information
  - reviewing, 3-25
- Complex customer price groups
  - setup, 23-4
- Complex item price groups
  - setup, 23-7
- Consolidated invoices, 30-18
- Constants
  - setup, 36-1

- Container Billing report, 30-8
- Container Deposit/Rental preference, 29-4, 30-8
  - Container Billing report, 30-8
  - using default information, 30-8
- Contract pricing, 25-2
- Converting a quote order into a sales order, 12-3
- Converting price levels, 24-8
- Copying a quote order to create a sales order, 12-3
- Copying item information to sales orders, 6-1
- Creating a blanket order, 13-2
- Creating a customer-specific template, 28-5
- Creating a recurring order, 4-4
- Creating a sales order from a blanket order, 13-2
- Creating a standard template, 28-2
- Creating a system-generated credit order, 9-4
- Creating a system-generated template, 28-8
- Creating future prices, 24-7
- Creating invoice cycle preferences, 20-1, 34-5
- Credit order
  - creating from history, 7-12
- Credit orders, 8-1
  - entering, 9-1
  - entering manually, 9-2
  - overview, 1-5
  - system generated
    - retrieving load confirm invoice amounts, 9-6
  - system-generated, 9-4
    - retrieving correct data, 9-5
- Credit Orders form, 9-3
- Credit Orders from History form, 9-4
- Customer billing instructions
  - freight, 37-6, 37-7
  - item restrictions, 37-4
  - setup, 37-1
- Customer Billing Instructions form, 23-2, 33-6, 40-5, 41-5
- Customer Billing Instructions-Page 2 form, 37-4, 41-6
- Customer Currency (ECS) preference, 29-4, 30-8
- Customer groups
  - assigning pricing rules, 25-6
  - creating new for pricing, 25-7
  - for repricing, 26-2
- Customer information
  - account information, 7-1
  - billing information, 7-14
  - credit check, 7-2
  - held orders, 7-8
  - locating invoices, 7-16
  - open orders by customer, 7-7
  - open orders by item, 7-6
  - order status reports, 7-6
  - sales ledger detail, 7-13
  - sales orders by customer, 7-2
- Customer Master Information form, 33-4
- Customer Number
  - defined, 30-4
- Customer P.O.
  - defined, 3-6
- Customer Preference Groups form, 31-10
- Customer Price Group
  - defined, 6-4
- Customer price groups
  - complex, 23-4
  - setup, 23-2
  - simple, 23-2
- Customer Service form, 7-3
  - different formats, 7-5
  - fold area, 7-4
- Customer/Supplier Name
  - defined, 6-14
- Cycle billing
  - calculation rules and scheduled invoice
    - dates, 30-18
  - running, 20-7
  - when to run, 19-2
- Cycle Billing Exception report, 20-13
- Cycle billing journal entries, 20-9
- Cycle billing requirements
  - and Document Set (ECS) preference, 30-12
- Cycle Billing Transaction report, 20-12

## D

---

- Daily invoicing, 34-2
- Data sequence values
  - backorders to fill, 7-10
  - open orders by customer, 7-8
- Date - Effective
  - defined, 28-4, 34-5
- Date - Effective (Julian)
  - defined, 41-4
- Date - Expiration (Julian)
  - defined, 41-4
- Date - Expired
  - defined, 28-4, 34-5
- Date - Invoice
  - defined, 34-5
- Date - Invoice Cycle Test 1
  - defined, 34-5
- Date - Next Order
  - defined, 4-5
- Date - Order/Transaction
  - defined, 3-5
- Date - Promised Shipment
  - defined, 3-13
- Date - Requested
  - defined, 3-5
- Date - Suspend
  - defined, 4-6
- Date Range - Based On
  - defined, 7-16
- Day of Week
  - defined, 34-5
- Default address types, 33-5
  - customer billing instructions, 33-6
- Define Customer Price Groups form, 23-5
- Define Item Price Groups form, 23-7
- Define Subsystem form, 46-2, 46-5
  - fold area, 46-2

- Defining base prices, 24-2
- Defining batch control constants, 36-12
- Defining default address types, 33-6
- Defining item availability, 36-8
- Defining locations, 36-13
- Defining order hold codes, 40-2
- Defining price adjustments, 25-1
- Defining related addresses, 33-1
- Defining repricing groups, 26-2
- Defining system constants, 36-10
- Defining the base price preference hierarchy, 23-9
- Defining the display of specific preference fields, 31-8
- Defining the display of specific preferences, 31-6
- Defining the invoicing address, 33-4
- Defining the order of preferences, 31-4
- Delivery documents
  - for periodic invoicing, 20-15
- Delivery Instructions Line 1
  - defined, 37-6
- Delivery Note
  - defined, 37-5
- Demand
  - defined, 6-13
- Description
  - defined, 31-6
- Description 1
  - defined, 3-13
- Description\_---\_Line Type
  - defined, 38-3
- Detail information
  - entering, 3-10
- Detail Invoice Journal, 21-4
- Direct orders
  - defined, 10-2
- Direct ship orders
  - entering, 15-1
  - identifying sales and purchase orders, 15-3
  - line type, 15-2
  - non-stock and kit items, 15-2
- Direct Ship Orders form, 15-1
- Distribution Automatic Account form, 43-4
- Division
  - defined, 41-10
- Document
  - defined, 7-4
- Document Distribution (ECS) preference, 29-4, 30-9
  - example, 30-10
- Document Print Batch Inquiry form, 20-16
- Document Print Control Confirm window, 20-14, 20-17
- Document Print Control form, 20-16
- Document set
  - and Invoice Cycle preference, 20-3, 34-8
- Document Set (ECS) preference, 29-4, 30-11
  - and cycle billing, 30-12
  - example, 30-11
- Document types
  - searching for, 28-6
- Duty Status

- defined, 3-13

## E

---

- Effective From
  - defined, 24-4, 30-4
- Effective Thru
  - defined, 30-4
- Enable Effective Dates
  - defined, 31-9
- Enable Effective Quantity
  - defined, 31-9
- End of day processing, 19-1
  - overview, 1-6
  - running cycle billing, 20-7
- End Use preference, 29-4, 30-12
- End-of-month invoicing, 34-2
- Enter Orders (Page Mode) form, 3-4
  - for interbranch sales orders, 16-5
- Entering a credit order, 9-1
- Entering a credit order manually, 9-2
- Entering a direct ship order, 15-1
- Entering a kit item, 3-21
- Entering a quote order, 12-2
- Entering a sales order from a blanket order, 13-3
- Entering a sales order with manual invoice, 17-1
- Entering a transfer order, 14-1
- Entering additional order information, 3-15
- Entering an interbranch sales order, 16-1
- Entering an order from a template, 3-22
- Entering batch orders, 4-2
- Entering detail information, 3-10
- Entering header information, 3-3
- Entering related addresses, 33-2
- Entering specific preference information, 30-6
  - Preference Profile Revisions (ECS), 30-7
- Entering standard preference information, 30-2
- Entering substitute and associated items, 3-24
- Expiration Date
  - defined, 3-8
- Extended Volume
  - defined, 3-20
- Extended Weight
  - defined, 3-20

## F

---

- Factor Value - Type
  - defined, 25-5
- Fields
  - Account Number, 3-7
  - Accounting Branch/Plant, 3-13
  - Age From, 40-8
  - Allowable, 40-8
  - Amount - Credit Price, 24-5
  - Amount - Extended Price, 3-13
  - Amount - Override List Price, 25-5
  - Amount - Price per Unit, 24-4
  - A/P Interface Y/N - Distribution, 38-4
  - Apply Commission (Y/N), 3-20



Apply Freight - Y/N, 38-5  
 Apply Retainage - Y/N, 38-5  
 Approved, 21-8  
 A/R Interface Y/N - Distribution, 38-4  
 Authorization Number, 3-8  
 Available, 6-14  
 Based On Date Name, 34-5  
 Basis For Cost or Price, 25-5  
 Batch Control Required (Y/N) - Inv, 36-13  
 Batch Date From, 21-7  
 Batch Date Thru, 21-7  
 Batch Management Approval Required -  
     Inv, 36-13  
 Batch Number, 21-7  
 Batch Status, 21-7  
 Billing Address Type, 33-7, 37-8  
 Branch/Plant, 3-5, 42-4  
 Calculation Rule, 34-4  
 Cancel Date, 3-5  
 Carrier Number, 3-8  
 Cash Discount, 3-18  
 Category - G/L, 38-5  
 Column to Include on Sales Journal, 38-5  
 Commission Code 1, 3-9  
 Commission Code 2, 3-10  
 Commission Code Type, 41-9  
 Customer Number, 30-4  
 Customer P.O., 3-6  
 Customer Price Group, 6-4  
 Customer/Supplier Name, 6-14  
 Date - Effective, 28-4, 34-5  
 Date - Effective (Julian), 41-4  
 Date - Expiration (Julian), 41-4  
 Date - Expired, 28-4, 34-5  
 Date - Invoice, 34-5  
 Date - Invoice Cycle Test 1, 34-5  
 Date - Next Order, 4-5  
 Date - Order/Transaction, 3-5  
 Date - Promised Shipment, 3-13  
 Date - Requested, 3-5  
 Date - Suspend, 4-6  
 Date Range - Based On, 7-16  
 Day of Week, 34-5  
 Delivery Instructions Line 1, 37-6  
 Delivery Note, 37-5  
 Demand, 6-13  
 Description, 31-6  
 Description 1, 3-13  
 Description\_---\_Line Type, 38-3  
 Division, 41-10  
 Document, 7-4  
 Duty Status, 3-13  
 Effective From, 24-4, 30-4  
 Effective Thru, 30-4  
 Effective Thru Effective Thru  
     defined, 24-5  
 Enable Effective Dates, 31-9  
 Enable Effective Quantity, 31-9  
 Expiration Date, 3-8  
 Extended Volume, 3-20

Extended Weight, 3-20  
 Factor Value - Numeric, 25-5  
 Factor Value - Type, 25-5  
 Frequency - Order, 4-5  
 From Grade, 6-10  
 From Potency, 6-11  
 Generate Workorder, 38-5  
 G/L Interface Y/N - Distribution, 38-3  
 G/L Offset, 3-18  
 Group Code Sequence Number, 23-5  
 Hold Code, 3-5, 11-2, 40-4  
 Hold Orders Code, 37-6  
 Include Backorders, 7-16  
 Include in Cash Discount Calculation, 38-4  
 Include in Tax 1, 38-4  
 Include Sales/COGS for Gross Profit, 38-4  
 Inventory Interface Y/N - Distribution, 38-4  
 Invoice Consolidation, 37-9  
 Invoice Copies, 3-6  
 Invoice Cycle, 34-4, 34-7  
 Item, 3-12  
 Item Number, 30-4  
 Last Status, 3-14  
 Ledger, 39-4  
 Length, 36-14  
 Limit - Quantity, 25-6  
 Line of Business, 3-13  
 Line Type, 38-3, 39-3  
 Load Date, 3-14  
 Load Factor, 41-10  
 Location, 3-13  
 Lot, 3-13  
 L/R, 36-15  
 Maximum Order Value, 40-5  
 Minimum Order Value, 40-5  
 Mode of Transport, 3-13, 3-17  
 Next Number, 39-3  
 Next Status, 3-14  
 Next Status Code, 39-3  
 Number of Days Increment, 34-4  
 Order Template, 28-4  
 Order Type, 3-5, 39-3, 41-10  
 Ordered By, 3-6  
 Original Order, 3-19  
 Original Order Line Number, 3-19  
 Original Order Number, 7-5  
 Original Order Type, 3-19, 7-5  
 Other Allowed Status Codes, 39-4  
 Partial Line Shipments Allowed (Y/N), 37-5  
 Partial Order Shipments Allowed (Y/N), 37-6  
 Password, 11-3, 40-4  
 Payment Instrument, 3-7  
 Payment Terms, 3-7  
 Percent Markup, 42-4  
 Person Responsible, 11-2, 40-4  
 Preference Classification, 31-6  
 Preference Type, 31-6  
 Price Code 1, 3-14  
 Price Group, 23-5  
 Price Pickslip, 3-6

- Pricing Category Level, 25-4
- Pricing Method, 25-4
- Pricing Rule, 25-4
- Pricing Unit of Measure, 3-13
- Print Message, 3-6
- Priority - Processing, 37-6
- Priority Code, 3-18
- Quantity, 3-12, 9-3
- Quantity - Hard Committed, 6-11
- Quantity - Work Order Hard Commit, 6-11
- Quantity From, 30-5, 34-7
- Quantity on Backorder, 6-11
- Quantity on Future Commit, 6-11
- Quantity on Purchase Order-primary units, 6-11
- Quantity on Work Order Receipt, 6-11
- Quantity Soft Committed, 6-11
- Quantity Thru, 30-5, 34-7
- Quantity Type, 25-5
- Rate - Commission 1, 3-9, 41-7
- Rate - Commission 2, 3-10, 41-7
- Rate Code, 3-17
- Reason Code, 3-18
- Record Variance (Y/N), 38-6
- Reference, 25-6
- Related - Price, 25-5
- Related Order, 3-19
- Related Order Line Number, 3-19
- Related Order Type, 3-19
- Reprice Line or Order, 26-4
- Reverse Sign, 38-4
- Route, 3-8
- Sales Catalog Section, 3-19, 42-4
- Sales Code, 41-4
- Salesperson Code 1, 3-20
- Salesperson Code 1 Commission Rate, 3-20
- Salesperson Code 2, 3-20
- Salesperson Code 2 Commission Rate, 3-20
- Separator Character, 36-15
- Sequence Number, 28-5, 30-5, 31-6, 34-7
- Ship Ascending Date, 6-4
- Ship Method, 41-10
- Ship To, 3-5
- Shipping Commodity, 3-17
- Shipping Condition, 3-17
- Sold To, 3-5
- Special Handling Code, 31-8
- Status Code, 39-3
- Stop, 3-9
- Subledger - G/L, 3-18
- Subledger Type, 3-18
- Supply, 6-14
- Supply or Demand Plant, 42-3
- Tax Certificate Number, 3-7
- Tax Expl Code 1, 3-7
- Tax Rate/Area, 3-7
- Taxable, 3-14
- Trade Discount, 3-7
- Unit of Measure, 3-12, 24-4, 28-5
- Unit of Measure as Input, 30-5
- Unit Price, 3-13
- Units - Over, 25-5
- Units - Usual Ordered, 28-5
- Volume Unit of Measure, 3-21
- Weight Unit of Measure, 3-20
- Zone, 3-9
- fining inventory pricing rules, 25-3
- Flash messages
  - viewing, 3-15
- Foreign currency transactions
  - entering, 43-5
- Forms
  - Address Book-Additional Information Related addresses, 33-2
  - Application Constants, 36-12
  - Automatic Accounting Instructions, 43-3
  - Available Templates, 28-7
  - Base Price Revisions, 24-2, 24-3
  - Batch Order Additional Detail window, 4-2
  - Billing Instructions-Page 2, 37-4, 41-6
  - Blanket Orders, 13-2
  - Blanket Release, 13-3
  - Branch Sales Markups, 42-2
  - Branch/Plant Constants, 36-2
  - Branch/Plant Constants-Pg 1, 36-2
  - Branch/Plant Constants-Pg 2, 36-14
  - Bulk Load Confirmation, 17-3
  - Check Credit, 7-2
  - Check Price & Availability, 6-3
  - Commission/Royalty Information, 41-8
  - Credit Orders, 9-3
  - Credit Orders from History, 9-4
  - Customer Billing Instructions, 23-2, 33-6, 40-5, 41-5
  - Customer Master Information, 33-4
  - Customer Preference Groups, 31-10
  - Customer Service, 7-3
  - Define Customer Price Groups, 23-5
  - Define Item Price Groups, 23-7
  - Define Subsystem, 46-2, 46-5
  - Direct Ship Orders, 15-1
  - Distribution Automatic Account, 43-4
  - Document Print Batch Inquiry, 20-16
  - Document Print Control, 20-16
  - Document Print Control Confirm, 20-14
  - Document Print Control Confirm window, 20-17
  - Enter Orders (Page Mode), 3-4
  - Inventory Pricing Rules, 25-3, 26-3
  - Invoice Cycle (ECS) preference, 20-2
  - Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule, 34-3
  - Invoice Cycle preference, 34-5
  - Item Availability Definition, 36-9
  - Item Master Information, 23-6
  - Item Preference Groups, 31-11
  - Item Search window, 6-2
  - Manual Invoices, 17-1
  - Online Invoice, 7-15
  - Order Activity Rules, 39-2
  - Order Detail Information, 3-15
  - Order Heading Information, 4-5
  - Order History Inquiry, 28-6

- Order Hold Information, 40-2
- Order Line Types, 38-1
- Order Template, 3-23
- Order Template Revisions, 28-2
- Packaged Load Confirmation, 17-3
- Preference Hierarchy, 23-9, 31-13
- Preference Inquiry (ECS), 30-3, 30-7
- Preference Master, 31-5
- Preference Profile Revisions (ECS), 30-3, 30-7
- Preference Profiles, 31-4, 31-13
- Preference Selection, 31-2
- Print Messages (ECS), 30-3
- Print Periodic Invoices, 20-14
- Quote Orders, 12-2
- Recurring and Batch Order Entry, 4-2
- Recurring Order Information, 4-5
- Related Salesperson, 41-3, 41-12
- Release Backorders-Online, 11-3
- Release Blanket Orders, 13-5
- Release Held Orders, 11-2
- Release Quote Orders, 12-4
- Sales Ledger Detail window, 7-12
- Sales Ledger Inquiry, 7-11
- Sales Order Entry, 3-11, 6-2, 16-3
- Scheduled Invoice Dates, 20-5, 34-4
- Status Code Update, 18-1
- Substitute/Associated Items window, 3-24
- Summary Availability, 6-9
- Supply/Demand Inquiry, 6-12
- Transfer Orders, 14-6
- User Defined Code Revisions, 23-4, 28-3, 31-7
- User Defined Codes Window, 23-3, 28-2, 31-6
- Freight
  - customer billing instructions, 37-6, 37-7
  - information on general ledger accounts, 43-5
- Freight (ECS) preference, 29-4, 30-12
  - dispatch group, 30-14
  - example, 30-13
- Frequency - Order
  - defined, 4-5
- From Grade
  - defined, 6-10
- From Potency
  - defined, 6-11
- Future Price Additions report, 24-7

## G

---

- Gain/loss
  - recording for bulk product, 21-2
- Generate Workorder
  - defined, 38-5
- Generating order status reports, 7-6
- Generating price group relationships, 23-8
- Generating sales history reports, 7-12
- Generating the Backorders to Fill report, 7-9
- Generating the Held Orders report, 7-8
- Generating the Open Orders by Customer report, 7-7
- Generating the Open Orders by Item report, 7-6

- Generating the Sales Analysis Summary report, 7-14
- Generating the Sales Ledger Detail report, 7-13
- G/L Interface Y/N - Distribution
  - defined, 38-3
- G/L Offset
  - defined, 3-18
- Grade and Potency preference, 29-4, 30-14
  - grade example, 30-15
  - potency example, 30-15
  - sales order updates, 30-15
- Group Code Sequence Number
  - defined, 23-5

## H

---

- Header information
  - changing, 3-3
  - entering, 3-3
  - purging, 45-8
- Held orders
  - batch, 40-3
  - printing, 11-3
  - releasing, 11-1
- Held Sales Orders report, 7-9
- Hold Code
  - defined, 3-5, 11-2, 40-4
- Hold Orders Code
  - defined, 37-6

## I

---

- Include Backorders
  - defined, 7-16
- Include in Cash Discount Calculation
  - defined, 38-4
- Include in Tax 1
  - defined, 38-4
- Include Sales/COGS for Gross Profit
  - defined, 38-4
- Interactive sales orders, 2-1
- Interbranch orders
  - batch types for, 16-8
  - invoices
    - limitations of, 16-8
    - printing, 16-7
    - viewing online, 16-8
- Interbranch sales
  - applying markup costs, 16-2
- Interbranch sales orders
  - by line item, 16-5
  - creating a version, 16-5
  - document types, 16-11
  - entering, 16-1
  - overview, 10-3
- Inventory Commitment preference, 29-4, 30-15
  - example, 30-16
- Inventory Commitments, 6-4
- Inventory Interface Y/N - Distribution
  - defined, 38-4
- Inventory pricing rules

- defining, 25-2
- Inventory Pricing Rules form, 25-3, 26-3
  - fold area, 25-4, 26-4
- Invoice batches
  - printing when interrupted, 20-15
- Invoice Consolidation
  - defined, 37-9
- Invoice Copies
  - defined, 3-6
- Invoice Cycle
  - defined, 34-4, 34-7
- Invoice Cycle Calculation Rule form, 34-3
- Invoice cycle calculation rules, 20-3, 34-2
  - scheduled invoice date example, 20-4, 34-2
- Invoice Cycle preference, 29-4, 30-17
  - and document sets, 20-3, 30-18, 34-8
  - calculation rules and scheduled invoice dates, 30-18
- Invoice cycle preference
  - and primary invoice, 20-3, 34-8
- Invoice cycles
  - preference, 20-1, 34-5
  - setting up, 34-1
- invoice information
  - enter, 3-6
- Invoice journal
  - reviewing, 21-3
- Invoice numbers
  - assigning, 21-2
- Invoice setup, 32-1
  - address book information, 33-2
  - customer master information, 33-4
  - default address types, 33-5
  - invoice cycle calculation rules, 20-3, 34-2
  - invoice cycle preference, 20-1, 34-5
  - overview, 1-8
  - related addresses, 33-1
  - scheduled date calculation, 20-4, 34-2
  - scheduled invoice dates, 20-5, 34-4
- Invoices
  - consolidated, 30-18
  - cycle calculation rule, 20-3
  - for interbranch orders, 16-7
    - reviewing online, 16-8
  - Invoice cycle preference, 20-1
- Item
  - defined, 3-12
- Item Availability Definition form, 36-9
- Item groups
  - creating new for pricing, 25-6
  - for repricing, 26-2
- Item information
  - available to promise, 6-14
  - backorders to fill, 7-9
  - copying to sales orders, 6-1
  - detailed quantity information, 6-11
  - open orders by item, 7-6
  - price and availability, 6-3
  - quantity information, 6-8
  - repost, 6-14

- repost future commitments, 6-15
- summary availability, 6-9
- supply and demand, 6-12
  - supply and demand inclusion rules, 6-14
- Item Master Information form, 23-6
- Item Number
  - defined, 30-4
- Item Preference Groups form, 31-11
- Item price groups
  - complex, 23-7
  - setup, 23-6
  - simple, 23-6
- Item Search window, 6-2
- Items
  - commitment information, 3-25
  - entering kits, 3-21
  - flash messages, 3-15
  - locating numbers, 3-2
  - substitute and associated
    - entering, 3-23
  - substituting partial quantities, 3-25

## J

---

- Journal entries
  - approving, 21-6
  - cycle and non-cycle billing, 20-9
  - posting, 21-8
  - reviewing, 21-6
  - revising an unposted batch, 21-8
  - summarizing, 21-3

## K

---

- Kit items
  - changing on sales orders, 3-22
  - entering, 3-21

## L

---

- Lag day calculation, 30-21
- Last Status
  - defined, 3-14
- Leadtime calculation, 30-21
- Ledger
  - defined, 39-4
- Length
  - defined, 36-14
- Limit - Quantity
  - defined, 25-6
- Line of Business
  - defined, 3-13
- Line of Business preference, 29-4, 30-18
- Line Type
  - defined, 38-3, 39-3
- Load Date
  - defined, 3-14
- Load Factor
  - defined, 41-10
- Load/Promise Date (ECS) preference, 29-4, 30-18
  - example, 30-19

- lag day and lead time, 30-21
- Locating quantity information, 6-8
- Location
  - defined, 3-13
- Locations
  - defining the location format, 36-13
  - length, 36-15
- Lot
  - defined, 3-13
- L/R
  - defined, 36-15

## M

---

- Manual invoice
  - defined, 10-3
  - entering, 17-1
  - load confirmation, 17-3
- Manual Invoices form, 17-1
- Maximum Order Value
  - defined, 40-5
- Messages
  - adding to an order line, 3-14
  - adding to sales orders, 3-3
  - flash
    - viewing, 3-15
- Minimum Order Value
  - defined, 40-5
- Mode of Transport
  - defined, 3-13, 3-17

## N

---

- Next Number
  - defined, 39-3
- Next Order Status (ECS) preference, 29-4, 30-21
- Next Status
  - defined, 3-14
- Next Status Code
  - defined, 39-3
- Non-cycle billing journal entries, 20-9
- Number of Days Increment
  - defined, 34-4
- nvoice setup
  - invoicing address, 33-4

## O

---

- ograms and IDs
  - P42100 (related salesperson), 41-12
- Online Invoice form, 7-15
  - different formats, 7-16
  - printing invoices, 7-16
- Open Sales Orders by Customer report, 7-7
- Open Sales Orders by Item report, 7-7
- Order activity rules, 39-1
  - copying, 39-4
  - sales ledger detail, 7-13
  - status codes, 1-5
- Order Activity Rules form, 39-2
- Order entry

- overview, 1-4
- Order Heading Information form
  - Recurring orders, 4-5
- Order History Inquiry form, 28-6
  - searching for specific documents, 28-6
  - to create customer-specific templates, 28-6
- Order Hold Information form, 40-2
  - fold area, 40-2
- Order holds
  - credit checking setup, 40-5
  - customer billing instructions, 40-9
  - locating, 40-3
  - margin checking setup, 40-8
  - minimum and maximum order amounts, 40-4
  - order entry, 40-9
  - releasing, 11-1
  - setup, 40-1
  - updating, 40-3
- Order Line Types form, 38-1
  - fold area, 38-2
- Order release, 11-1
  - overview, 1-6, 10-2
- Order Repricing report, 26-4
- Order status reports, 7-6
  - backorders to fill, 7-9
  - held orders, 7-9
  - open sales orders by customer, 7-7
  - open sales orders by item, 7-7
- Order Template
  - defined, 28-4
- Order Template Revisions form, 28-2
- Order Template window, 3-23
- Order Type
  - defined, 3-5, 39-3, 41-10
- Ordered By
  - defined, 3-6
- Original Order
  - defined, 3-19
- Original Order Line Number
  - defined, 3-19
- Original Order Number
  - defined, 7-5
- Original Order Type
  - defined, 3-19, 7-5
- Other Allowed Status Codes
  - defined, 39-4

## P

---

- Packaged Load Confirmation form, 17-3
- Partial Line Shipments Allowed (Y/N)
  - defined, 37-5
- Partial Order Shipments Allowed (Y/N)
  - defined, 37-6
- Password
  - defined, 11-3, 40-4
- Payment Instrument
  - defined, 3-7
- Payment Terms
  - defined, 3-7

- Payment Terms (ECS) preference, 29-4, 30-21
- Percent Markup
  - defined, 42-4
- Periodic invoices
  - printing, 20-13
- Periodic invoicing, 19-2
- Person Responsible
  - defined, 11-2, 40-4
- Posting journal entries, 21-8
- Preference Classification
  - defined, 31-6
- Preference Hierarchy form, 23-9, 31-13
- Preference Inquiry (ECS) form, 30-3, 30-7
- Preference Master form, 31-5
- Preference Profile Revisions (ECS) form, 30-3, 30-7
- Preference Profiles form
  - to arrange hierarchy, 31-13
  - to define order of, 31-4
- Preference Selection form, 31-2
- Preference Type
  - defined, 31-6
- Preferences
  - about, 29-1
  - adding notes and informational text, 30-2
  - alternate entry, 30-2
  - applying a preference example, 29-3
  - Container Deposit/Rental, 30-8
    - Container Billing report, 30-8
    - using default information, 30-8
  - Customer Currency (ECS), 30-8
  - customer groups, 31-10
  - definition fields, 29-3
  - dispatch group field, 30-14
  - Document Distribution (ECS), 30-9
    - example, 30-10
  - Document Set (ECS), 30-11
    - and cycle billing, 30-12
    - example, 30-11
  - End Use, 30-12
  - entering specific preference information, 30-6
    - key field definitions, 30-6
  - entering standard information, 30-2
    - group fields, 30-5
  - fields, A-1
  - Freight (ECS), 30-12
    - dispatch group, 30-14
    - example, 30-13
  - Grade and Potency, 30-14
    - grade example, 30-15
    - potency example, 30-15
    - sales order updates, 30-15
  - group fields, 30-5
  - hierarchy, 31-12
  - how the system uses, 29-2
  - Inventory Commitment, 30-15
    - example, 30-16, 30-17
  - Invoice Cycle, 30-17
    - and document sets, 30-18
    - calculation rules and scheduled invoice dates, 30-18
    - consolidated invoices, 30-18
    - invoice cycle, 20-1, 34-5
    - item groups, 31-11
    - key field table, 29-4, 30-6, A-1
    - Line of Business, 30-18
    - Load/Promise Date (ECS), 30-18
      - example, 30-19
      - lag day and leadtime, 30-21
    - Next Order Status (ECS), 30-21
    - overview, 1-7, 29-4
    - Payment Terms (ECS), 30-21
    - Price Adjustment Schedule, 30-22
    - Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS), 30-22
      - bulk product pricing, 30-23
      - override Pricing UOM field, 30-22
      - override Sales Price Based on Date field, 30-22
    - Print Messages (ECS), 30-23
    - Product Allocation (ECS), 30-24
      - quantity sold and balance calculations, 30-25
    - Quality (ECS), 30-25
    - Revenue Cost Center (ECS), 30-25
    - Sales Commission (ECS), 30-26
      - setup, 31-1
        - activate display, 31-6
        - activate effective date and quantity fields, 31-8
        - activating, 31-1
        - customer and item groups, 31-9
        - define order, 31-4
        - hierarchy, 31-12
        - hierarchy example, 31-14
        - preference master, 31-4
      - status, 31-4
      - understanding, 30-1
      - used by programs, 29-2
    - User Defined Price Code, 30-26
    - variable field table, 29-4, 30-6, A-1
  - Preprinted invoice forms
    - using, 20-15
  - Price Adjustment Schedule preference, 29-4, 30-22
  - Price adjustments, 25-1
  - Price Code 1
    - defined, 3-14
  - Price Group
    - defined, 23-5
  - Price group relationships
    - generating, 23-8
  - Price groups
    - complex customer, 23-4
    - complex item, 23-7
    - customer, 23-2
    - item, 23-6
    - simple customer, 23-2
    - simple item, 23-6
  - Price information, 3-15
  - Price Pickslip
    - defined, 3-6
  - Pricing, 22-1
    - adjustments, 25-1
    - ambient, standard, or by weight, 30-23
    - assigning rules to customers, 25-6

- cash discount pricing, 25-2
- changing existing, 24-6
- define customer price groups, 23-5
- define item price groups, 23-7
- defining inventory rules, 25-2
- future, 24-7
- item master information, 23-6
- overview, 1-7
- preference hierarchy, 23-9, 24-1
- repricing, 26-1
- trade discount and contract pricing
  - setting up, 25-2
- updating
  - by customer, 26-5
  - during customer sales update, 26-6
  - for items, 26-1
- user defined code revisions, 23-4
- Pricing Category Level
  - defined, 25-4
- Pricing Method
  - defined, 25-4
- Pricing Rule
  - defined, 25-4
- Pricing structure, 23-1
- Pricing Unit of Measure
  - defined, 3-13
- Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS) preference, 29-4, 30-22
  - bulk product pricing, 30-23
  - override Pricing UOM field, 30-22
  - override Sales Price Based on Date field, 30-22
- Pricing Unit of Measure field
  - and Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS)
    - preference, 30-22
- Primary invoice
  - and invoice cycle preference, 20-3, 34-8
- Print Message
  - defined, 3-6
- Print Messages (ECS) form, 30-3, 30-7
- Print Messages (ECS) preference, 29-4, 30-23
- Print Periodic Invoices form, 20-14
- Printing
  - invoices
    - for interbranch orders, 16-7
- Printing an interbranch invoice, 16-7
- Printing interrupted invoice batches, 20-16
- Printing invoices
  - from online invoice, 7-16
- Printing periodic invoices, 20-13
- Printing problems
  - troubleshooting on sales reports, 7-13
- Printing unposted transaction reports, 21-9
- Priority - Processing
  - defined, 37-6
- Priority Code
  - defined, 3-18
- Processing basket and order repricing, 26-4
- Processing batch orders, 4-6
- Processing Options Revisions form, 31-2
- Product Allocation (ECS) preference, 29-4, 30-24

- quantity sold and balance calculations, 30-25
- Programs and IDs
  - P00051 (user defined code revisions), 23-4, 28-3, 31-7
  - P010513 (address book-additional information), 33-2
  - P01053 (customer master information), 33-4
  - P01501 (address book information), 33-2
  - P3403 (branch sales markups), 42-2
  - P4001Z (recurring and batch order entry), 4-2
  - P4006 (base price revisions), 24-2
  - P4007 (preference profiles), 31-4, 31-13
  - P40070 (preference master), 31-5
  - P40071 (customer preference groups), 31-10
  - P40072 (item preference groups), 31-11
  - P40073 (preference hierarchy), 23-9, 31-13
  - P40105 (define subsystem), 46-2, 46-5
  - P4014 (order template revisions), 28-2
  - P40200 (invoice cycle), 34-5
  - P40200EC (invoice cycle ECS), 20-2
  - P40200EC (preference inquiry (ECS)), 30-3, 30-7
  - P40204 (order activity rules), 39-2
  - P40205 (order line types), 38-1
  - P4021 (supply/demand inquiry), 6-12
  - P40214 (order history inquiry), 28-6
  - P40215 (order template), 3-23
  - P40215W (available templates), 28-7
  - P40216 (blanket release), 13-3
  - P40300 (invoice cycle), 34-6
  - P40300EC (invoice cycle ECS), 20-2
  - P40300EC (preference profile revisions (ECS)), 30-3, 30-7
  - P40400EC (preference selection), 31-2
  - P40901 (automatic accounting instructions), 43-3
  - P4092 (define customer price groups), 23-5
  - P4092 (define item price groups), 23-7
  - P40950 (distribution automatic account), 43-4
  - P40ITM2 (item search), 6-2
  - P41001 (branch/plant constants-pg 1), 36-2
  - P410011 (item availability definition), 36-9
  - P410012 (branch/plant constants-pg 2), 36-14
  - P41001S (application constants), 36-12
  - P4101 (item master information), 23-6
  - P4106 (base price revisions), 24-3
  - P4106 (customer billing instructions), 33-6
  - P41202 (summary availability), 6-9
  - P41204 (branch/plant constants), 36-2
  - P41261 (check price & availability), 6-3
  - P41816 (sales price level conversion), 24-8
  - P41830 (base price maintenance), 24-6
  - P420111 (release blanket orders), 13-5
  - P420111 (release quote orders), 12-4
  - P420120 (order detail information), 3-15
  - P4201P (sales order header purge), 45-8
  - P42025 (credit orders from history), 9-4
  - P42025 (sales ledger inquiry), 7-11
  - P42025W (sales ledger detail), 7-12
  - P42040 (status code update), 18-1
  - P42045 (customer service), 7-3
  - P42050 (check credit), 7-2

- P4206 (customer billing instructions), 23-2
- P4206 (customer billing instructions), 40-5, 41-5
- P42061 (billing instructions-page 2), 37-4, 41-6
- P42070 (release held orders), 11-2
- P42090 (order hold information), 40-2
- P4210 (enter orders (page mode), 3-4
- P42100 (related salesperson), 41-3
- P42110 (commission and royalty information), 41-8
- P42117 (release backorders - online), 11-3
- P4211EC (blanket orders), 13-2
- P4211EC (credit orders), 9-3
- P4211EC (manual invoices), 17-1
- P4211EC (quote orders), 12-2
- P4211EC (sales order entry), 3-11, 6-2, 16-3
- P42230 (online invoice), 7-15
- P4242EC (transfer orders), 14-6
- P4243EC (direct ship orders), 15-1
- P4271 (inventory pricing rules), 25-3, 26-3
- P4281 (customer pricing rules), 25-6
- P4314P (extended text purge), 45-8
- P49080 (invoice cycle calculation rule), 34-3
- P49085 (scheduled invoice dates), 20-5, 34-4
- P49510 (bulk load confirmation), 17-3
- P49530 (packaged load confirmation), 17-3
- P49580 (document print batch inquiry), 20-16
- P49582 (document print control), 20-16
- P49582 (print periodic invoices), 20-14
- P49586 (document print control confirm), 20-14, 20-17
- P81QM (user defined codes window), 28-2, 31-6
- Purging data, 45-1
  - active order lines, 45-9
  - batch order files, 45-9
  - customizing, 45-2
  - extended text, 45-8
  - general purges, 45-3
  - processing options and technical considerations, 45-2
  - sales order detail, 45-7
  - sales order detail to history, 45-9
  - sales order header, 45-8
    - during sales update, 45-8
  - special purges, 45-7

## Q

---

- Quality (ECS) preference, 29-4
- Quantities
  - substituting on sales orders, 3-25
- Quantity
  - defined, 3-12, 9-3
- Quantity - Hard Committed
  - defined, 6-11
- Quantity - Work Order Hard Commit
  - defined, 6-11
- Quantity From
  - defined, 30-5, 34-7
- Quantity information
  - reviewing, 3-15

- Quantity on Backorder
  - defined, 6-11
- Quantity on Future Commit
  - defined, 6-11
- Quantity on Purchase Order-primary units
  - defined, 6-11
- Quantity on Work Order Receipt
  - defined, 6-11
- Quantity Soft Committed
  - defined, 6-11
- Quantity Thru
  - defined, 30-5, 34-7
- Quantity Type
  - defined, 25-5
- Quote orders, 12-1
  - converting into a sales order, 12-3
  - copying to create a sales order, 12-3
  - defined, 10-2
  - entering, 12-2
  - how to locate, 12-4
  - line types for duplicates, 12-4
  - releasing, 11-3, 12-4
    - during sales order entry, 12-5
- Quote Orders form, 12-2

## R

---

- Rate - Commission 1
  - defined, 3-9, 41-7
- Rate - Commission 2
  - defined, 3-10, 41-7
- Rate Code
  - defined, 3-17
- Reason Code
  - defined, 3-18
- Re-commit future orders, 6-15
- Record Variance (Y/N)
  - defined, 38-6
- Recurring and Batch Order Entry form, 4-2
- Recurring Order Information window, 4-5
- Recurring orders
  - entering, 4-4
- Reference
  - defined, 25-6
- Related - Price
  - defined, 25-5
- Related addresses, 33-1
  - assigning address numbers, 33-3, 33-4
- Related Order
  - defined, 3-19
- Related Order Line Number
  - defined, 3-19
- Related Order Type
  - defined, 3-19
- Related Salesperson form, 41-3, 41-12
- Release Backorders-Online form, 11-3
- Release Blanket Orders form, 13-5
- Release Held Orders form, 11-2
- Release Quote Orders form, 12-4
- Releasing a blanket order, 13-5



- Releasing a quote order, 12-4
- Releasing backorders, 7-9, 11-3
- Releasing backorders in a batch, 11-5
- Releasing backorders online, 11-3
- Releasing orders on hold, 11-1
- Reports
  - Backorders to Fill, 7-9
  - Base Price Revisions/Adjustments, 24-6
  - Batch Order Activity Register, 4-7
  - Batch Order Creation Exception, 4-7
  - Cycle Billing Exception, 20-13
  - Cycle Billing Transaction, 20-12
  - Detail Invoice Journal, 21-4
  - Future Price Additions, 24-7
  - Held Sales Orders, 7-9
  - Open Sales Orders by Customer, 7-7
  - Open Sales Orders by Item, 7-7
  - Order Repricing, 26-4
  - Sales Analysis Summary, 7-14
  - Sales Journal, 21-5
  - Sales Ledger Detail, 7-13
  - Sales Price Level Conversion, 24-8
  - Sales Update Error, 21-5
  - Summarized Invoice Journal, 21-4
  - Unposted Transactions G/L Account, 21-9
- Reposting sales order information, 6-15
- Reprice Line or Order
  - defined, 26-4
- Repricing, 26-1
  - at month-end, 26-6
  - basket and order processing, 26-4
  - defining groups, 26-2
  - during order entry, 26-2
  - limitations, 26-2
  - repeating, 26-2
  - updating prices, 26-1
- Repricing sales orders, 20-6, 20-10
- Revenue Cost Center (ECS) preference, 29-4, 30-25
- Reverse Sign
  - defined, 38-4
- Reviewing billing information, 7-14
- Reviewing customer account information, 7-1
- Reviewing journal entries, 21-6
- Reviewing price and availability information, 6-3
- Reviewing sales history information, 7-10
- Reviewing sales orders by customer, 7-2
- Reviewing supply and demand information, 6-12
- Reviewing the Batch Order Activity Register, 4-7
- Reviewing the Batch Order Creation Exception report, 4-7
- Reviewing the Cycle Billing Exception report, 20-13
- Reviewing the Cycle Billing Transaction report, 20-12
- Reviewing the Sales Journal, 21-5
- Reviewing the Sales Update Error report, 21-4
- Reviewing the Summarized/Detail Invoice Journal, 21-3
- ricing
  - converting levels, 24-8
- Route

- defined, 3-8
- Running cycle billing, 20-7
- Running general purges, 45-3
- Running move sales order detail to history, 45-9, 46-1
- Running special purges, 45-7
- Running the extended text purge, 45-8
- Running the sales order header purge, 45-8
- Running the sales update, 21-2

## S

---

- Sales Analysis Summary report, 7-14
- Sales Catalog Section
  - defined, 3-19, 42-4
- Sales Code
  - defined, 41-4
- Sales Commission (ECS) preference, 29-4, 30-26
- Sales history reports, 7-12
  - sales analysis summary, 7-14
  - sales ledger detail, 7-13
- Sales Journal report, 21-5
- Sales Ledger Detail form
  - different formats, 7-12
- Sales Ledger Detail report, 7-13
  - specifying information, 7-13
- Sales Ledger Detail window, 7-12
- Sales Ledger Inquiry form, 7-11
  - different formats, 7-12
- Sales order
  - adding a message, 3-14
- Sales Order Entry form, 3-11, 6-2
  - fold area, 3-11
  - for interbranch sales orders, 16-3
- Sales order information, 5-1
  - backorders to fill, 7-9
  - billing information, 7-14
  - customer account, 7-1
  - customer information, 7-1
  - held orders, 7-8
  - item information, 6-1
  - locating invoices, 7-16
  - open orders by customer, 7-7
  - open orders by item, 7-6
  - order status reports, 7-6
  - price and availability, 6-3
  - quantity information, 6-8
  - repost, 6-14
  - review, 7-2
  - sales analysis summary, 7-14
  - sales history, 7-10
  - sales history reports, 7-12
  - sales ledger detail, 7-12
  - supply and demand, 6-12
- Sales order management
  - integration with accounting and distribution systems, 1-3, 1-4
  - integration with load and delivery, 1-2
- Sales order management system
  - automatic accounting instructions, 43-1

## Sales orders

- accounts receivable information, 3-6
- adding a message, 3-3
- additional information, 3-15
- batch, 2-1
- canceling and deleting, 3-2
- changing header information, 3-3
- changing kit items, 3-22
- commission information, 3-9
- commissions, 41-5
- converted from a quote order, 12-3
- creating from a blanket order, 13-2
- duplicating, 3-2
- entering detail information, 3-10
- entering from a blanket order, 13-3
- entering from a template, 3-22
- entering from other systems, 4-1
- entering header information, 3-3
- entering kit items, 3-21
- entering shipping information, 3-8
- hold information setup, 40-1
  - minimum and maximum order amounts, 40-4
- how to enter, 2-1
- if quantity exceeds blanket order quantity, 13-3
- interactive, 2-1, 3-1
- invoice information, 3-6
- line type setup, 38-1
- locating an item, 3-2
- overview, 1-5
- price and quantity information, 3-15
- purge, 45-7
- purge header, 45-8
- purge header during update, 45-8
- purging active order lines, 45-9
- purging data, 45-1
- recurring orders, 4-1, 4-4
- repricing, 20-6, 20-10
- repricing during order entry, 26-2
- reviewing by customer, 7-2
- substituting partial quantities, 3-25
- update, 21-1
- using additional templates, 3-23
- with manual invoice, 17-1
  - defined, 10-3

Sales Price Based on Date field  
and Pricing Unit of Measure (ECS)  
preference, 30-22

Sales Price Level Conversion report, 24-8

Sales Update Error Report, 21-5

Salesperson Code 1

- defined, 3-20

Salesperson Code 1 Commission Rate

- defined, 3-20

Salesperson Code 2

- defined, 3-20

Salesperson Code 2 Commission Rate

- defined, 3-20

Scheduled invoice date calculation  
example, 20-4, 34-2

Scheduled Invoice Dates form, 20-5, 34-4

## Searching

- asterisk wildcard, 7-5

Semi-monthly invoicing, 34-2

Separator Character

- defined, 36-15

Sequence Number

- defined, 28-5, 30-5, 31-6, 34-7

Setting up a base pricing structure, 23-1

Setting up a sales group, 41-3

Setting up additional commission information, 41-7

Setting up automatic accounting instructions, 43-1

Setting up branch sales markups, 42-1

Setting up commission information, 41-1

Setting up constants, 36-1

Setting up customer price groups, 23-2

Setting up invoice cycle calculation rules, 20-3, 34-2

Setting up invoice cycles, 34-1

Setting up item price groups, 23-6

Setting up minimum and maximum order  
amounts, 40-4

Setting up order activity rules, 39-1

Setting up order hold codes for credit checking, 40-5

Setting up order hold codes for margin  
checking, 40-8

Setting up order hold information, 40-1

Setting up order line types, 38-1

Setting up preferences, 31-1

Setting up the preference master, 31-4

Setting up variable commission percentages within a  
group, 41-11

Setting up variable commissions within a  
group, 41-5

- calculating additional information, 41-5

Setup

- base pricing, 23-1
- commissions
  - passwords, 41-15
- complex customer price groups, 23-4
- complex item price groups, 23-7
- customer billing instructions
  - commissions, 37-8
  - standard freight rates, 37-8
- customer price groups, 23-2
- invoice cycles, 34-1
- Invoices, 32-1
- item price groups, 23-6
- preferences, 31-1
- pricing
  - cash discount, 25-2
- simple customer price groups, 23-2
- simple item price groups, 23-6
- system, 35-1
- trade discount and contract pricing, 25-2

Ship Ascending Date

- defined, 6-4

Ship Method

- defined, 41-10

Ship To

- defined, 3-5

Shipping Commodity

- defined, 3-17
- Shipping Condition
  - defined, 3-17
- Shipping information
  - enter, 3-8
- Simple customer price groups
  - setup, 23-2
- Simple item price groups
  - setup, 23-6
- Sold To
  - defined, 3-5
- Sold To and Ship To addresses, 3-2
- Special Handling Code
  - defined, 31-8
- Starting jobs in the subsystem, 46-4
- Status Code
  - defined, 39-3
- Status Code Update form, 18-1
  - fold area, 18-3
- Status codes
  - and processing steps, 1-5
  - sales ledger detail, 7-14
  - updating, 18-1
- Stop
  - defined, 3-9
- Stopping jobs in the subsystem, 46-5
- Subledger - G/L
  - defined, 3-18
- Subledger Type
  - defined, 3-18
- Substitute and associated items
  - entering, 3-23
- Substitute/Associated Items window, 3-24
- Substituting partial quantities, 3-25
- Subsystem, 46-1
  - defining, 46-2
  - starting all jobs, 46-4
  - starting jobs, 46-4
  - stopping, 46-5
  - stopping all jobs, 46-5
  - stopping jobs, 46-5
- Subsystems
  - defining, 46-5
  - displaying specific information, 46-4
- Summarized Invoice Journal report, 21-4
- Summary Availability form, 6-9
  - fold area, 6-10
- Supply
  - defined, 6-14
- Supply and demand inclusion rules, 6-14
- Supply or Demand Plant
  - defined, 42-3
- Supply/Demand Inquiry form, 6-12
  - fold area, 6-13
- System setup, 35-1
  - automatic accounting instructions, 43-1
  - branch sales markups, 42-1
  - commission information, 41-1, 41-2, 41-5, 41-7, 41-11
  - credit checking, 40-5

- customer billing instructions, 37-1
- delivery documents for periodic invoicing, 20-15
- margin checking, 40-8
- order activity rules, 39-1
- order hold information, 40-1
- order line types, 38-1
- overview, 1-8
- setting up constants, 36-1
  - defining batch control constants, 36-12
  - defining branch/plant constants, 36-2
  - defining item availability, 36-8
  - defining system constants, 36-10
  - defining the location format, 36-13

## T

---

- Tax Certificate Number
  - defined, 3-7
- Tax Expl Code 1
  - defined, 3-7
- Tax Rate/Area
  - defined, 3-7
- Taxable
  - defined, 3-14
- Templates, 27-1
  - additional templates, 3-23
  - Available Templates window, 28-7
  - customer-specific, 27-1, 28-1
    - assigning default, 28-6
    - creating, 28-5
  - deleting, 28-2
  - entering an order from, 3-22
  - order history inquiry, 28-6
  - overview, 1-7
  - standard, 27-1, 28-1
    - assigning, 28-4
    - creating, 28-2
  - system-generated, 28-7
  - updating, 28-7
  - user defined code revisions, 28-3
- Trade Discount
  - defined, 3-7
- Trade discount pricing, 25-2
- Transaction reports
  - unposted, 21-9
- Transfer orders
  - changing, 14-7
  - defined, 10-3
  - entering, 14-1
  - identifying sales and purchase orders, 14-9
  - kit items, 14-7
- Transfer Orders form, 14-6

## U

---

- Understanding Inventory Commitments, 6-4
- Understanding preference fields, A-1
- Unit of Measure
  - defined, 3-12, 24-4, 28-5
- Unit of Measure as Input

- defined, 30-5
- Unit Price
  - defined, 3-13
- Units - Over
  - defined, 25-5
- Units - Usual Ordered
  - defined, 28-5
- Unposted batch
  - revising, 21-8
- Unposted transaction reports
  - printing, 21-9
- Unposted Transactions G/L Account report, 21-9
- Update customer sales
  - assigning invoice numbers, 21-2
  - bulk gain/loss, 21-2
  - posting journal entries, 21-8
  - reviewing and approving journal entries, 21-6
  - summarizing journal entries, 21-3
  - updating inventory, 21-2
  - when to run, 19-2
- Updating an existing template, 28-7
- Updating base prices, 24-6
- Updating customer sales, 21-1
- Updating interbranch sales information, 16-8
- Updating inventory, 20-10, 21-2
- Updating prices for a customer, 26-5
- Updating prices for an item, 26-1
- Updating status codes, 18-1
- User Defined Code Revisions form, 23-4, 28-3, 31-7
  - fold area, 28-4, 31-8
- User Defined Codes Window, 23-3, 31-6
- User Defined Codes Window form, 28-2
- User Defined Price Code preferences, 29-4, 30-26

## V

---

- Valid order templates
  - from sales order entry, 3-23
- Volume Unit of Measure
  - defined, 3-21

## W

---

- Weekly invoicing, 34-2
- Weight Unit of Measure
  - defined, 3-20
- Working with base pricing, 24-1
- Working with batch sales orders, 4-1
- Working with billing cycles, 20-1
- Working with blanket orders, 13-1
- Working with customer and sales information, 7-1
- Working with interactive sales orders, 3-1
- Working with item information, 6-1
- Working with order release, 11-1
- Working with order templates, 28-1
- Working with quote orders, 12-1
- Working with repricing, 26-1
- Working with the subsystem, 46-1

## Z

---

- Zone
  - defined, 3-9